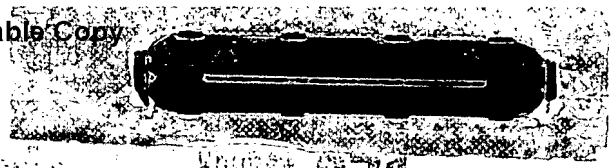


6407213

6407213

ISSUE CLASSIFICATION

Class

...ITY ...RIAL ...MBER	PATENT DATE	PATENT NUMBER
08/146206	JUN 18 2002	[redacted]

SERIAL NUMBER	FILING DATE	CLASS	SUBCLASS	GROUP ART UNIT	EXAMINER

APPLICANTS

Foreign priority claimed 35 USC 119 conditions met	☐ yes ☐ no ☐ yes ☐ no	AS FILED	STATE OR COUNTRY	SHEETS DRWGS.	TOTAL CLAIMS	INDEP. CLAIMS	FILING FEE RECEIVED	ATTORNEY'S DOCKET NO.
Verified and Acknowledged Examiner's Initials		→			52	8		

ADDRESS

TITLE

U.S. DEPT. OF COMM./ PAT. & TM—PTO-436L (Rev.12-94)

PARTS OF APPLICATION FILED SEPARATELY

Applications Examiner

NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE MAILED

12/19/01

Assistant Examiner

CLAIMS ALLOWED

Total Claims	Print Claim
52	1

ISSUE FEE

Amount Due	Date Paid
	3/8/02

DRAWING

Sheets Drwg.	Figs. Drwg.	P. Fig.
4	8	1

Primary Examiner

ISSUE BATCH NUMBER

Label Area

PREPARED FOR ISSUE

Form PTO-436A (Rev. 8/92)

(FACE)

PATENT NUMBER

APPLICATION SERIAL NUMBER
08/146 206

APPLICANT'S NAME (PLEASE PRINT)
CARTER et al

RE-ISSUE, ORIGINAL PATENT NUMBER

INTERNATIONAL CLASSIFICATION
C07K 16/00

ORIGINAL CLASSIFICATION

CLASS	SUBCLASS
530	387.3

CROSS REFERENCE(S)

CLASS	SUBCLASS (ONE SUBCLASS PER BLOCK)			
435	69.6	69.7	70.21	91
536	23.53			
424	133.1			

GROUP ART UNIT: 1642

ASSISTANT EXAMINER (PLEASE STAMP OR PRINT FULL NAME)
MINH-TAM DAVIS

PRIMARY EXAMINER (PLEASE STAMP OR PRINT FULL NAME)
Anthony C. Caputa

PTO 270
(REV. 5-91)

ISSUE CLASSIFICATION SLIP

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Best Available

34. Amdt. 10/8/92
35. 12/2
36. Change of Address
37. Int. Summary 8-13-98
38. Appeal Br (3) 8-10-98
39. Amdt H (Rule 1.129(a)) 08-26-98
40. Declarations Supp. DS 08-26-98
41. Interview Summary 11/16/98
42. Suppl. Amdmt I 11/16/98
43. Interview Summary 1/7/99
44. Supp. Amdt J 1/15/99
45. Req. for PTE Application (156) 8-25-06
46. PTO Eligibility Ltr 6-11-07

SEARCHED

Class	Sub.	Date	Exmr.
435	69.6	12/5/94	
	69.7		
	70.21		
	91		
	172.2		
	240.1		
	240.27		
	252.3		
	320.1		
536	23.53		
updated		11/13/95	
updated		12-16-96	PN
updated		12-20-97	PN
updated		3/25/99	JR
424	133.1		
435	328		
530	387.3		
updated		10/13/00	
updated		12/10/01	

INTERFERENCE SEARCHED

Class	Sub.	Date	Exmr.
530	387.3	12/10/01	
435	69.6		
	69.7		
	70.21		
	91		
536	23.53		
424	133.1		
435	328		

SEARCH NOTES

	Date	Exmr.
UPDATED	12/16/96	P.N.
updated	12/20/97	PN
Reviewed 07/715,272 updated	3/25/99	JR
discussed case w/ Lila Feisee + SPE Paula Hutzell	17 Nov 99	JB
updated	10/13/00	
consultation with Paula Hutzell, Technical specialist on 112, 101 and 103 issues, and Toni Caputa, SPE	07/19/01	
updated	12/10/01	

Staple Issue Slip Here

POSITION		ID NO.	DATE
CLASSIFIER			
EXAMINER		112	1.21.1
TYPIST		339	5/9/94
VERIFIER			
CORPS CORR.			
SPEC. HAND			
FILE MAINT.			
DRAFTING			

ISSUE CLASSIFICATION
Class
SERIAL NUMBER 08/14620

APPLICANTS

Foreign priority claimed ☐
35 USC 119 conditions met ☐
Verified and Acknowledged Exa

ADDRESS

PARTS OF APPLICATION FILED SEPARATELY

NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE MAILED
12/8/94

ISSUE FEE
Amount Due | Date Paid

Label Area

Form PTO-436A (Rev. 8/92)

INDEX OF CLAIMS

Claim Final	Claim Original	Date
	1	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
	2	
	3	
	4	
	5	
	6	
	7	
	8	✓
	9	
	10	✓
	11	✓
	12	✓
	13	
	14	
	15	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
	16	
	17	
	18	
	19	✓ ✓
	20	
	21	
	22	✓
	23	✓
	24	✓
	25	✓
	26	
	27	
	28	
	29	
	30	
	31	
	32	
	33	
	34	
	35	
	36	
	37	
	38	
	39	
	40	
	41	✓
	42	O
1	43	✓ ✓ =
2	44	=
3	45	=
4	46	=
5	47	-
6	48	-
7	49	-
8	50	-

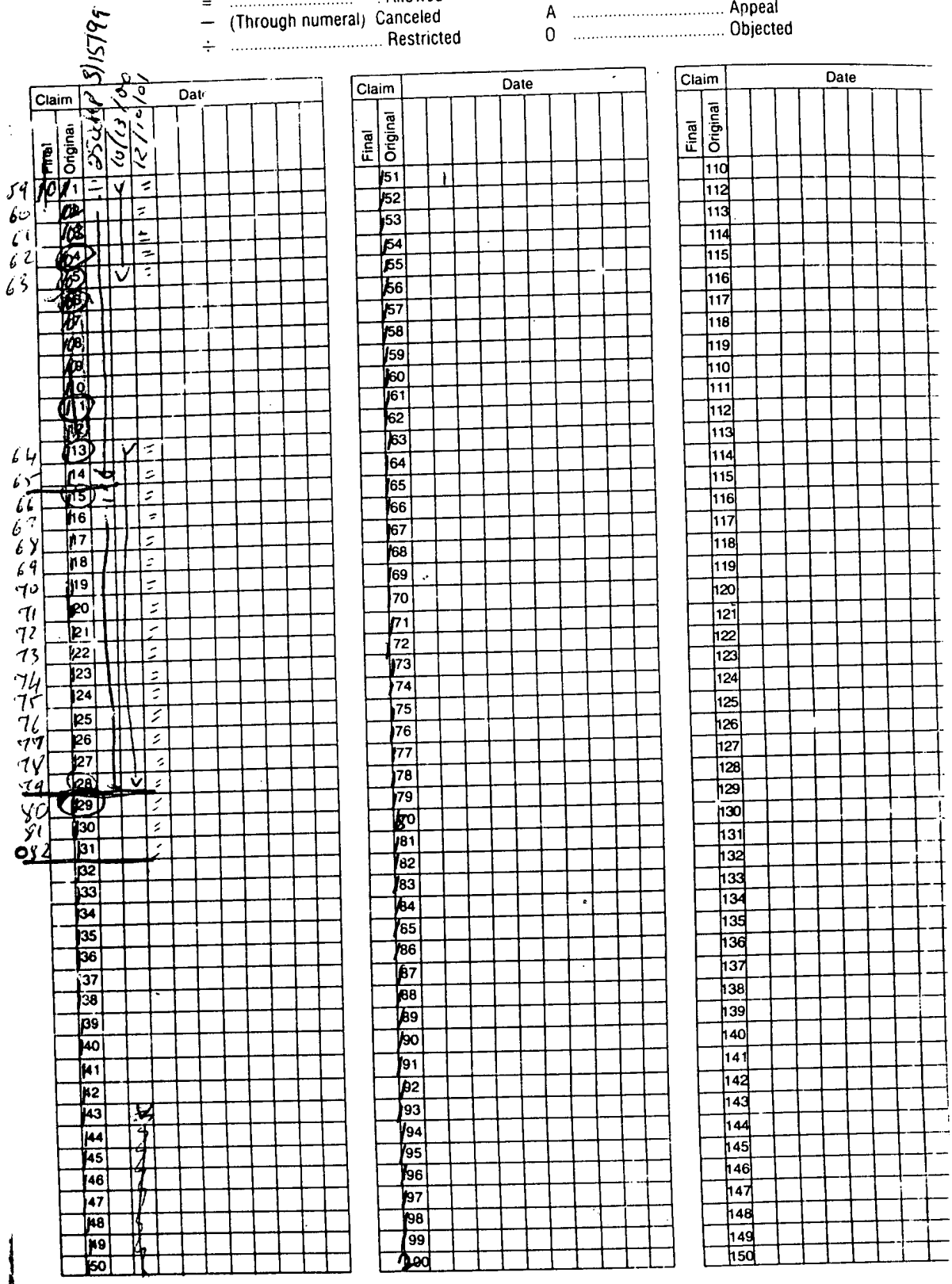
SYMBOLS
✓ ..... Rejected
= ..... Allowed
- (Through numberal) Canceled
+ ..... Restricted
N ..... Non-elected
I ..... Interference
A ..... Appeal
O ..... Objected

Claim Final	Claim Original	Date
	51	
	52	
	53	
	54	
	55	
	56	
	57	
	58	
	59	
	60	
	61	
	62	
	63	
	64	
	65	
	66	
	67	
	68	
	69	
	70	
	71	
	72	
	73	
	74	
	75	
	76	
	77	
	78	
	79	
	80	
	81	
	82	
	83	
	84	
	85	
	86	
	87	
	88	
	89	
	90	
	91	
	92	
	93	
	94	
	95	
	96	
	97	
	98	
	99	
	100	

(LEFT INSIDE)

INDEX OF CLAIMS

✓ ..... Rejected
= ..... Allowed
— (Through numeral) Canceled
÷ ..... Restricted
N ..... Non-elected
I ..... Interference
A ..... Appeal
O ..... Objected



If more than 150 claims or 10 actions staple additional sheet here

(LEFT INSIDE)

08/146206 US

11 Rec'd PCT/PTO 17 NOV 1993

EXPRESS MAIL: HB214759358US
MAILED: 17 NOVEMBER 1993

FORM PTO-1390 (REV 11-92) U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

ATTORNEY'S DOCKET NUMBER: 709P1

TRANSMITTAL LETTER TO THE UNITED STATES DESIGNATED/ELECTED OFFICE (DO/EO/US)

INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION NO.	INTERNATIONAL FILING DATE	PRIORITY DATE CLAIMED
PCT/US92/05126	15 June 1992 (15.06.92)	14 June 1991 (14.06.91)

TITLE OF INVENTION: METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES

APPLICANT(S) FOR DO/EO/US: Paul J. CARTER, Leonard G. PRESTA

Applicant herewith submits to the United States Designated/Elected Office (DO/EO/US) the following items under 35 U.S.C. 371:

1. ☒ This express request to immediately begin national examination procedures (35 U.S.C. 371(f)).
2. ☒ The U.S. National Fee (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(1)) and other fees as follows:

CLAIMS	(1) FOR	(2) NUMBER FILED	(3) NUMBER EXTRA	(4) RATE	(5) CALCULATIONS
	TOTAL CLAIMS	23 -20 =	3	X $22.00	$ 66.00
	INDEPENDENT CLAIMS	10 -3 =	7	X $74.00	518.00
	MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM(S) (if applicable)			+ $230.00	230.00

BASIC NATIONAL FEE (37 CFR 1.492(a)(1)-(5)):

- ☐ For filing with EPO or JPO search report (37CFR 1.492(a)(5)..... $830.00
- ☐ International preliminary examination fee paid to USPTO (37 CFR 1.482) $640.00
- ☐ No international preliminary examination fee paid to USPTO (37 CFR 1.482) but international search fee paid to USPTO (37 CFR 1.445(a)(2))..$710.00
- ☒ Neither international preliminary examination fee (37 CFR 1.482) nor international search fee (37CFR 1.445(a)(2)) paid to USPTO..... $950.00 — 950.00
- ☐ International preliminary examination fee paid to USPTO (37 CFR 1.482) and all claims satisfied provisions of PCT Articles 33(2)-33(4)... $90.00

Surcharge of $130.00 for furnishing the National fee or oath or declaration later than ☐ 20 ☐ 30 months from the earliest claimed priority date (37 CFR 1.492(e)).

[redacted] **TOTAL OF ABOVE CALCULATIONS** = 1,764.00

Reduction by 1/2 for filing by small entity, if applicable. Affidavit must be filed also. (Note 37 CFR 1.9, 1.27, 1.28).

[redacted] **SUBTOTAL** +

Processing fee of $130.00 for furnishing the English translation later the ☐ 20 ☐ 30 months from the earliest claimed priority date (37 CFR 1.492(f)).

[redacted] **TOTAL NATIONAL FEE** $1,764.00

Fee for recording the enclosed assignment (37 CFR 1.21(h)). + 40.00

[redacted] **TOTAL FEES ENCLOSED** $1,804.00

a. ☐ A check in the amount of $_____ to cover the above fees is enclosed.
b. ☒ Please charge my Deposit Account No. 07-0630 in the amount of $1,804.00 to cover the above fees. A duplicate copy of this sheet is enclosed.
c. ☒ The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge any additional fees which may be required, or credit any overpayment to Deposit Account No. 07-0630. A duplicate copy of this sheet is enclosed.

(January 1993)

ATTORNEY'S DOCKET NUMBER
709P1

3. A copy of the International Application as filed (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(2))
   a. ☐ is transmitted herewith (required only if not transmitted by the International bureau).
   b. ☒ is not required, as the application was filed in the United States receiving Office (RO/US).
   c. ☐ has been transmitted by the International Bureau.

4. ☐ A translation of the International Application into English (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(2)).

5. Amendments to the claims of the International Application under PCT Article 19 (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(3))
   a. ☐ are transmitted herewith (required only if not transmitted by the International Bureau).
   b. ☐ have been transmitted by the International Bureau.

6. ☐ A translation of the amendments to the claims under PCT Article 19 (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(3)).

7. ☒ An oath or declaration of the inventor (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(4)).

8. ☐ A translation of the annexes to the International Preliminary Examination Report under PCT Article 36 (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(5)).

Other document(s) or information included:

9. ☐ An Information Disclosure Statement under 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98.

10. ☒ An assignment document for recording.
    PLEASE MAIL THE RECORDED ASSIGNMENT DOCUMENT TO :
    a. ☒ the person whose signature, name and address appears at the bottom of this page.
    b. ☐ the following:

11. The above checked items are being transmited:
    a. ☐ before the eighteenth (18) month publication.
    b. ☐ after publication of the Article 20 communication but before twenty (20) months from the priority date.
    c. ☐ after twenty (20) months but before twenty-two (22) months (surcharge and/or processing fee included).
    d. ☐ after twenty-two (22) months (surcharge and /or processing fee included).
    NOTE: Petition to revive (37 CFR 1.137(a) or (b)) is necessary if 35 U.S.C. 371 requirements submitted after 22 months *and NO proper demand for International Preliminary Examination was made by 19 months from the earliest claimed priority date.*
    e. ☒ by thirty (30) months and a proper demand for International Preliminary Examination was made by the 19th month from the earliest claimed priority date.
    f. ☐ after thirty (30) months but before thirty-two (32) months and a proper demand for International Preliminary Examination was made by the 19th month from the earliest claimed priority date (surcharge and/or processing fee included).
    g. ☐ after thirty-two (32) months (surcharge and/or processing fee included).
    NOTE: Petition to revive (37 CFR 1.137(a) or (b)) is necessary if 35 U.S.C. 371 requirements submitted after 32 months *and a proper demand for International Preliminary Examination was made by 19 months from the earliest claimed priority date.*

12. At the time of transmittal, the time limit for amending claims under Article 19:
    a. ☒ has expired and no amendments were made.
    b. ☐ has not yet expired.

13. ☐ Certain requirements under 35 U.S.C. 371 were previously submitted by the applicant on _____, namely:

14. Submitted herewith are: Sequence Diskette, Sequence Listing, Preliminary Amendment

NAME Janet E. Hasak
ADDRESS Genentech, Inc.
460 Point San Bruno Boulevard
South San Francisco, CA 94080-4990

SIGNATURE Janet E. Hasak

REGISTRATION NUMBER
28,616

Form PTO-1390 (REV 11-92)

CERTIFICATION UNDER 37 CFR 1.10

HB214759358US : Express Mail Number **17 NOVEMBER 1993** : Date of Deposit

I hereby certify that this request to initial national processing, including: TRANSMITTAL LETTER, PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT, SEQUENCE LISTING & DISKETTE, COMBINED DECLARATION & POWER OF ATTORNEY, ASSIGNMENT and COPY OF PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION REPORT is being deposited with the United States Postal Service "Express Mail Post Office to Addressee" service under 37 CFR 1.10 on the date indicated above and is addressed to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, D.C. 20231.

Carol Koehler

FIGURE 1A: V_L DOMAIN

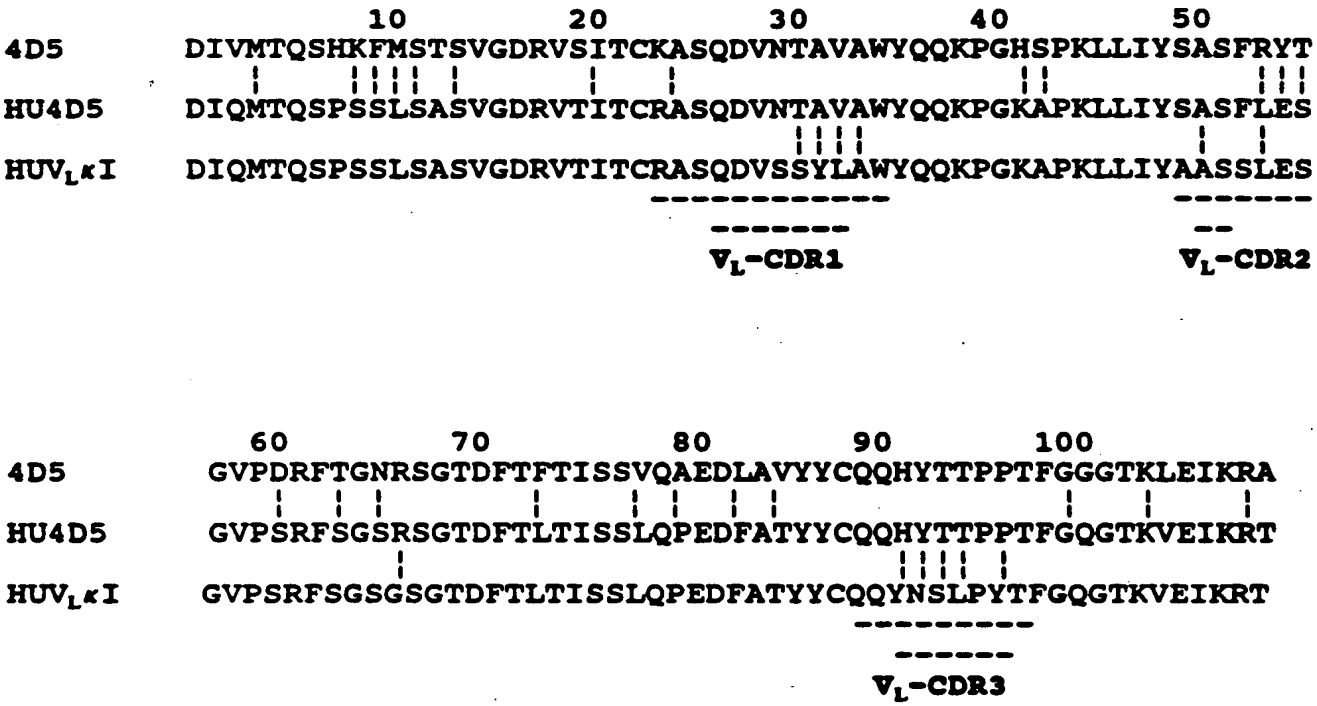


FIGURE 1B: V_H DOMAIN

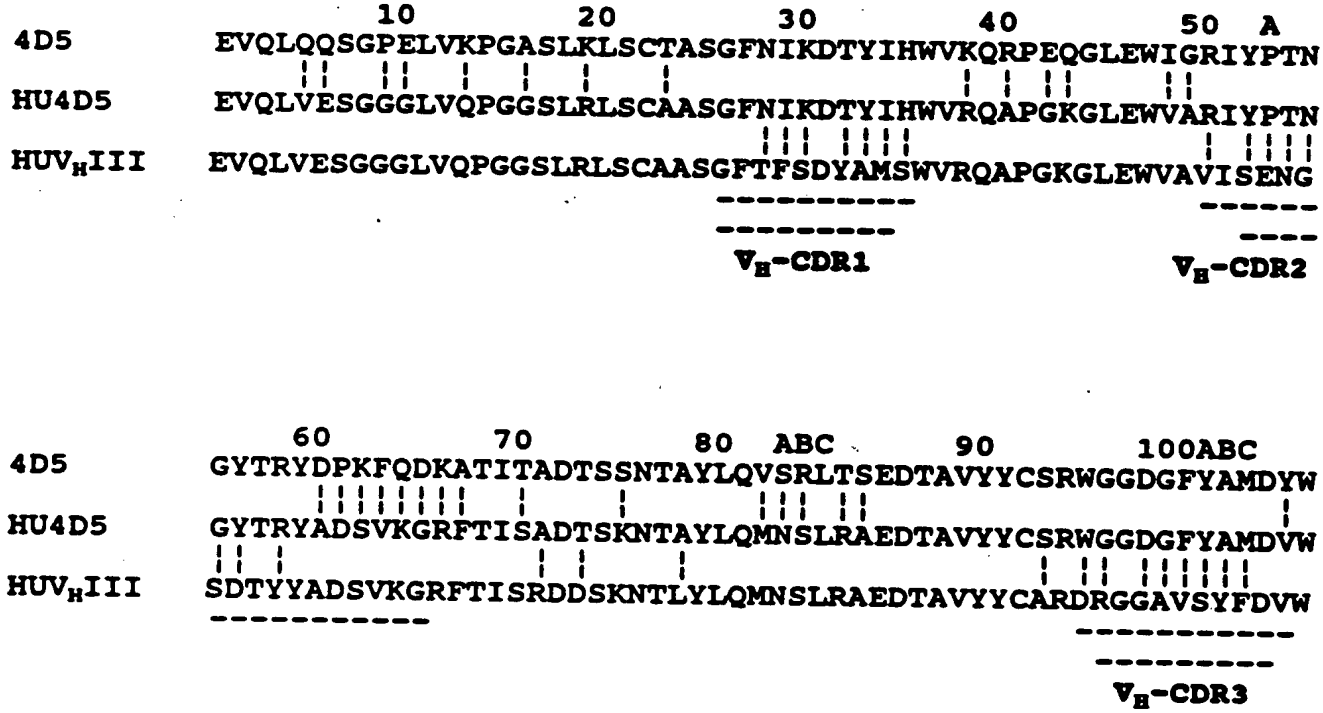


FIGURE 2

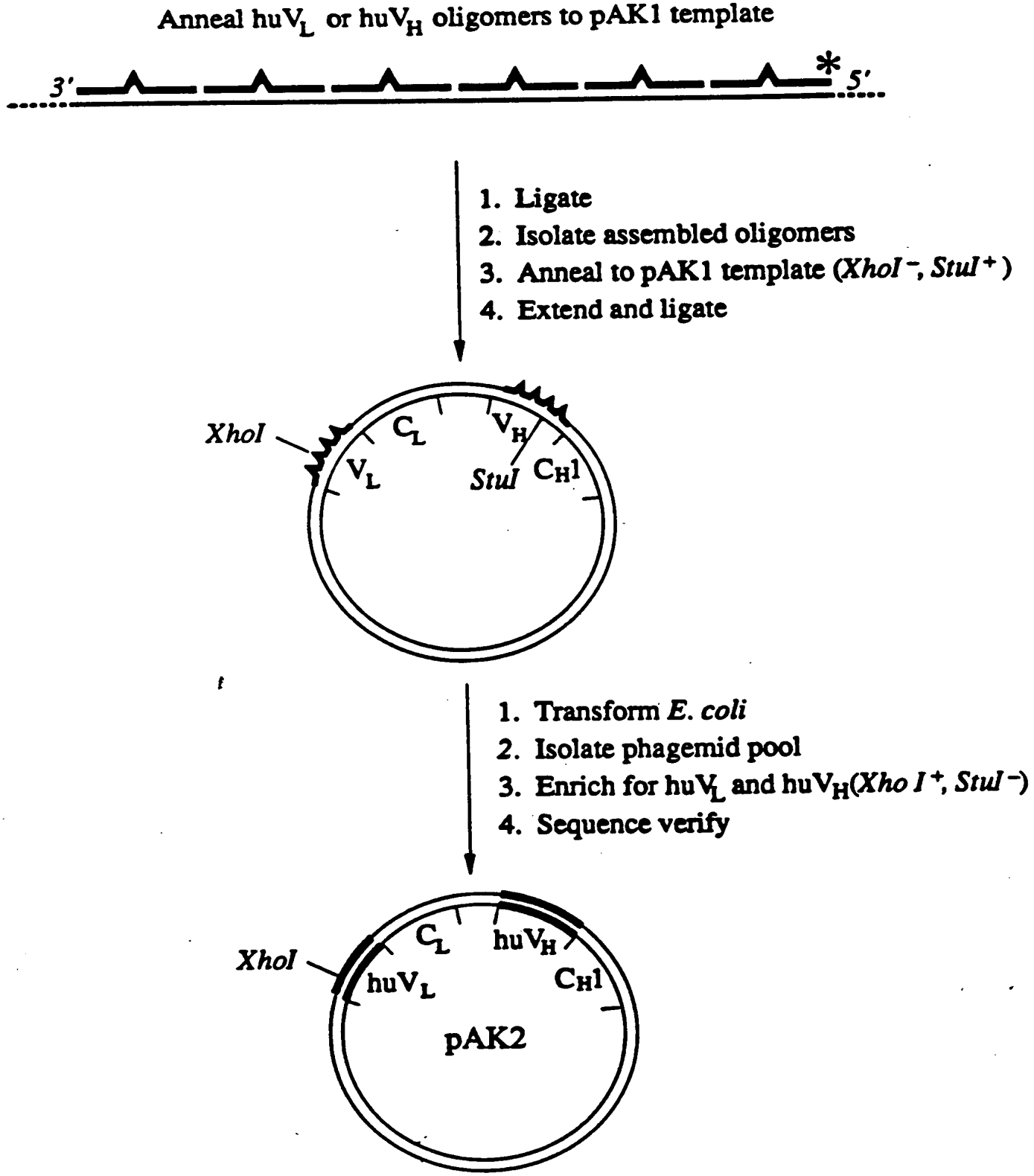
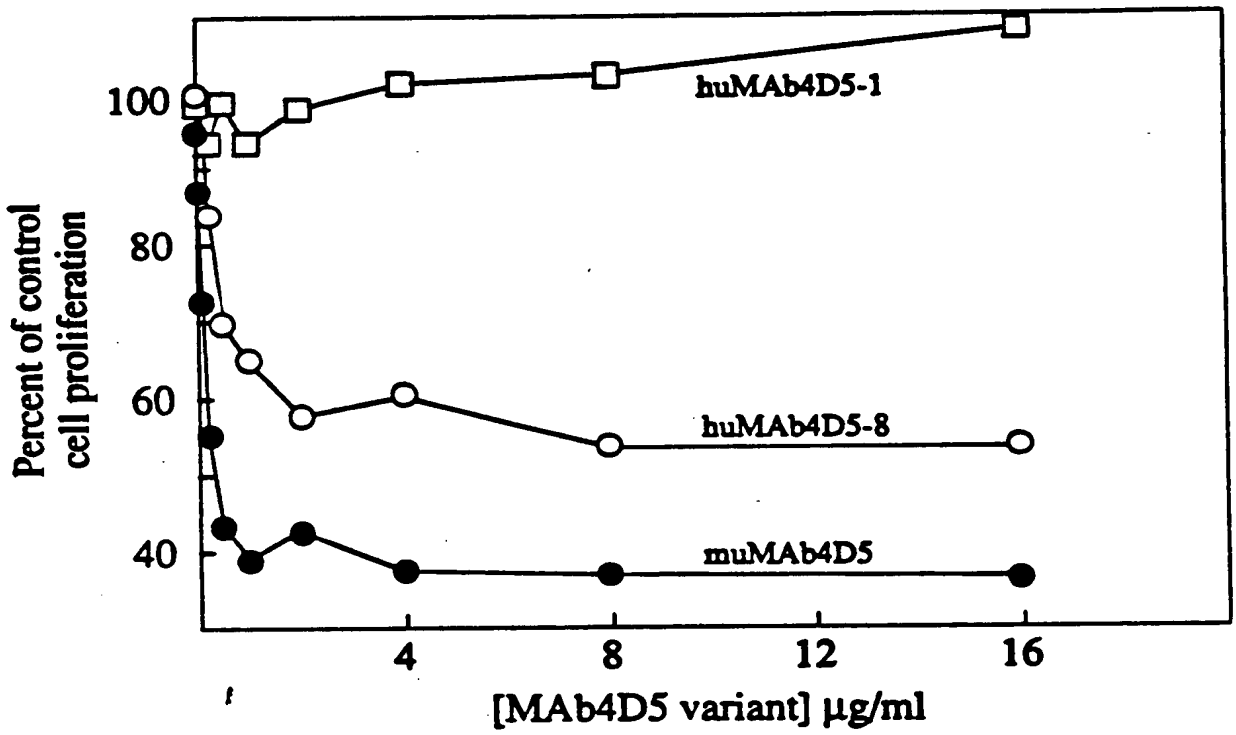


FIGURE 3



5/9

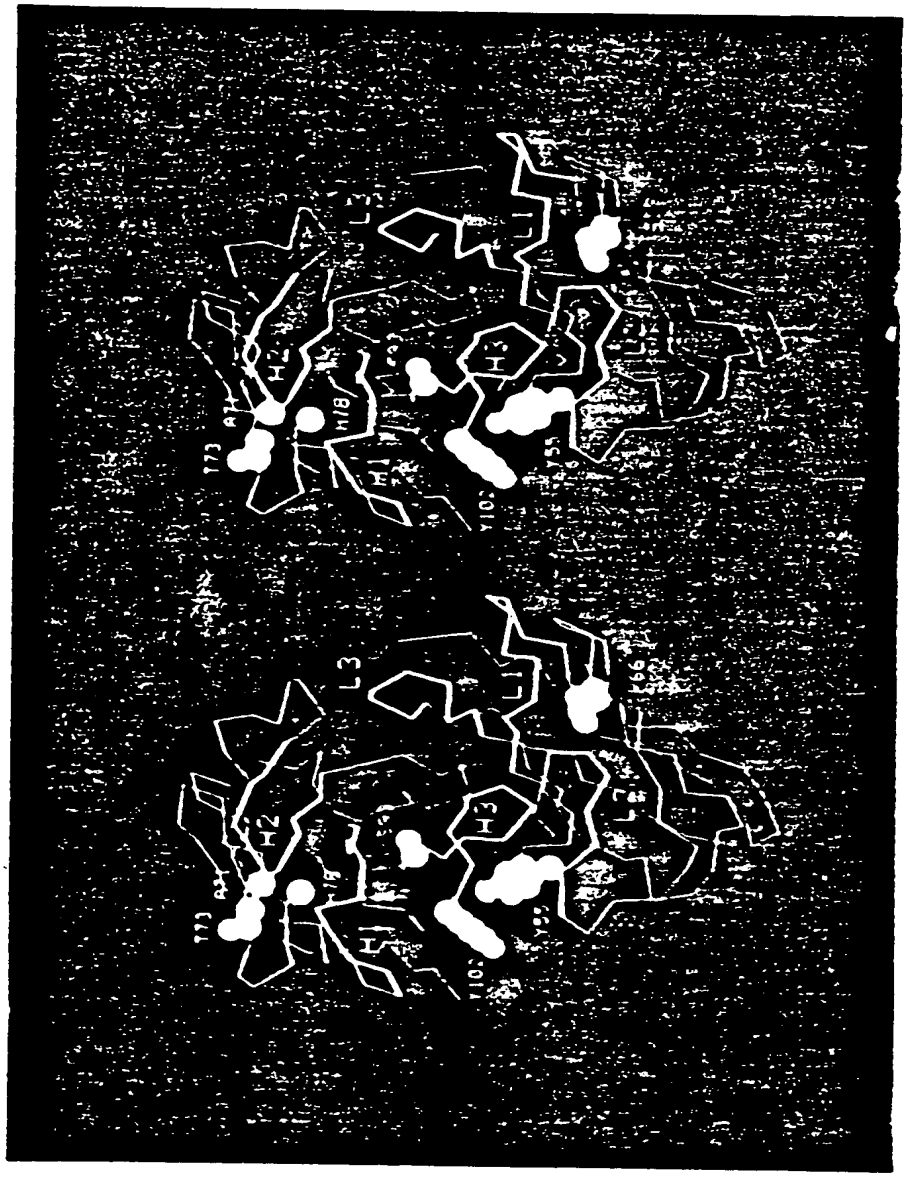


FIGURE 4

6/9

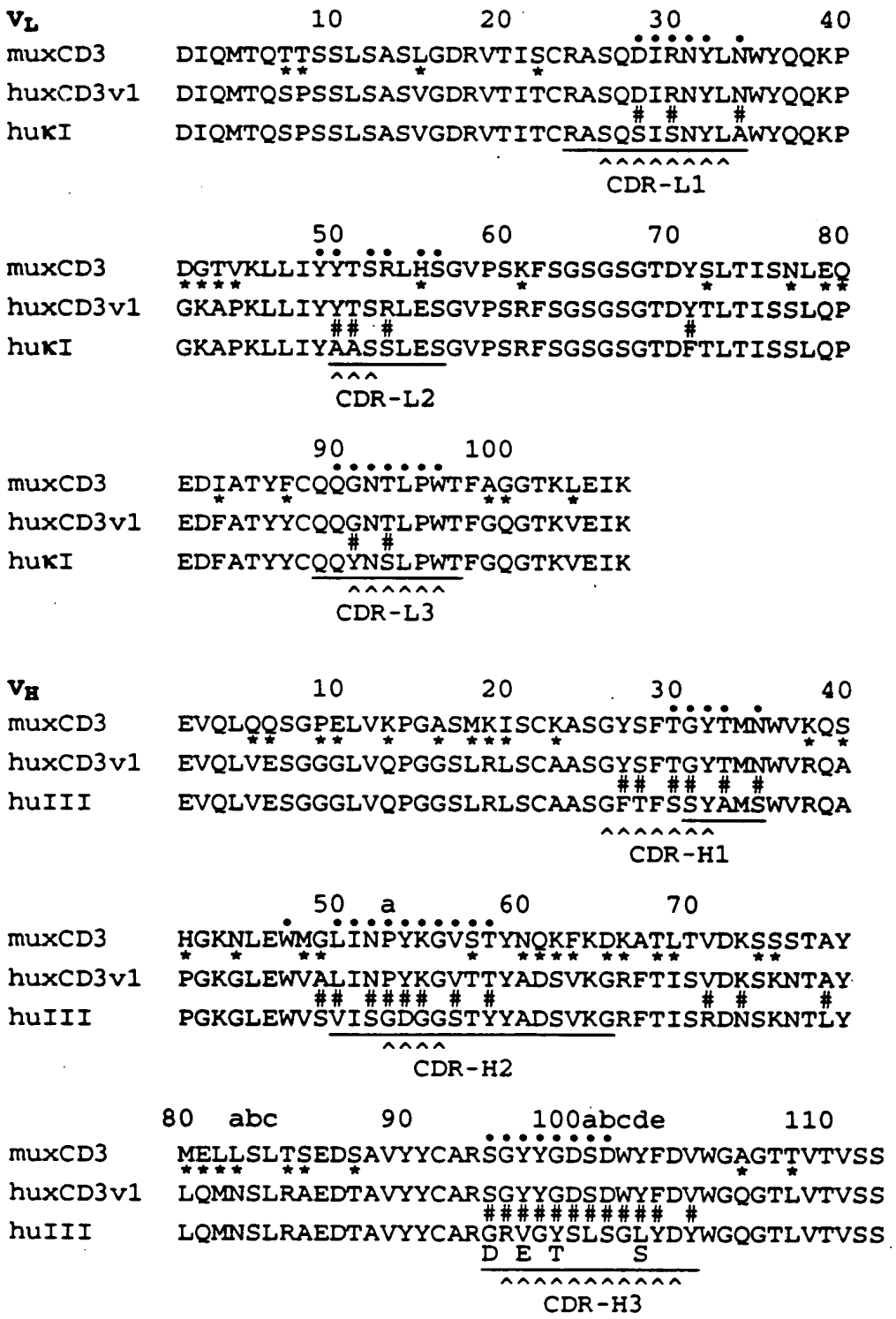
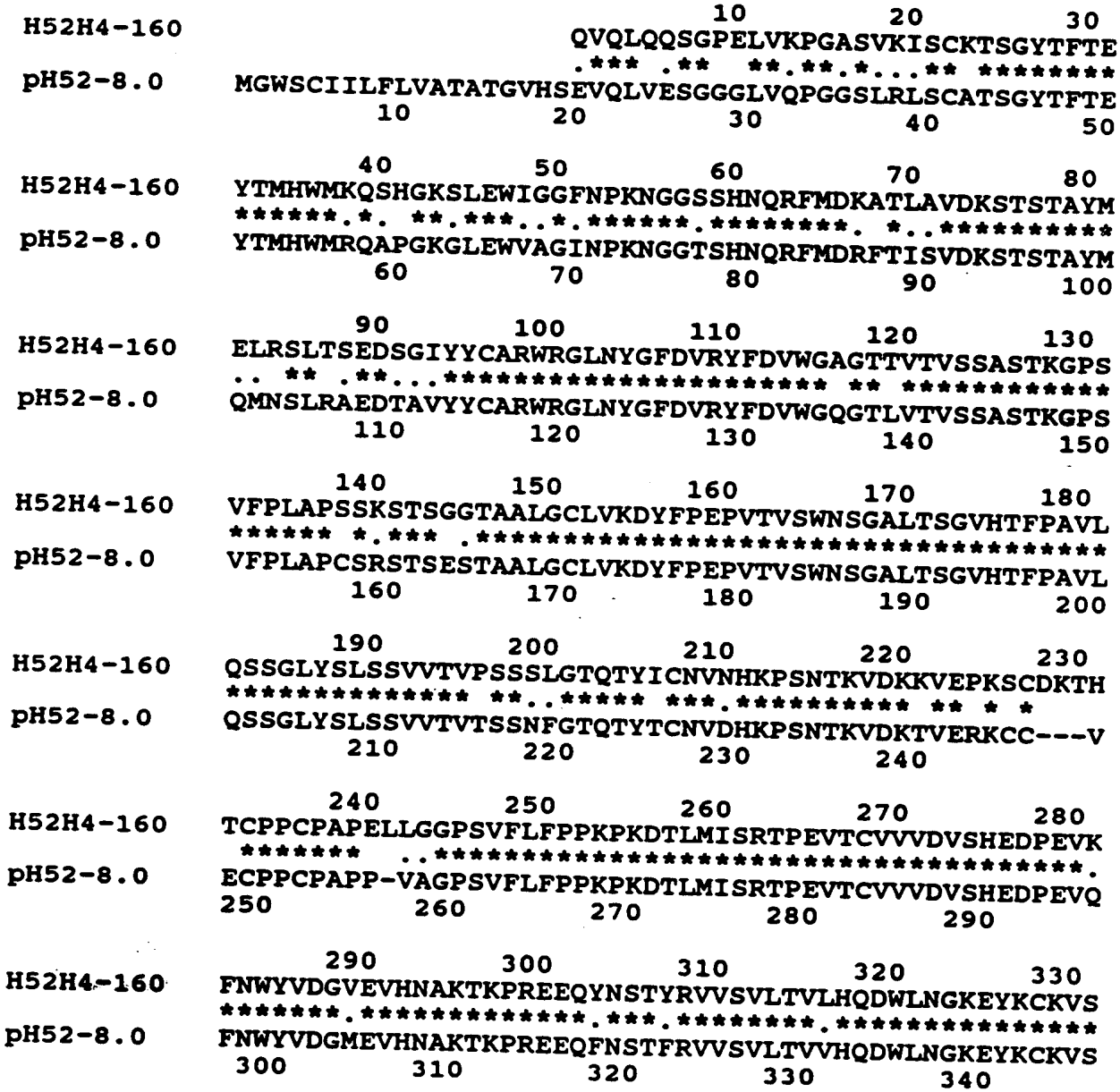


FIGURE 5

7/9

FIGURE 6A



8/9

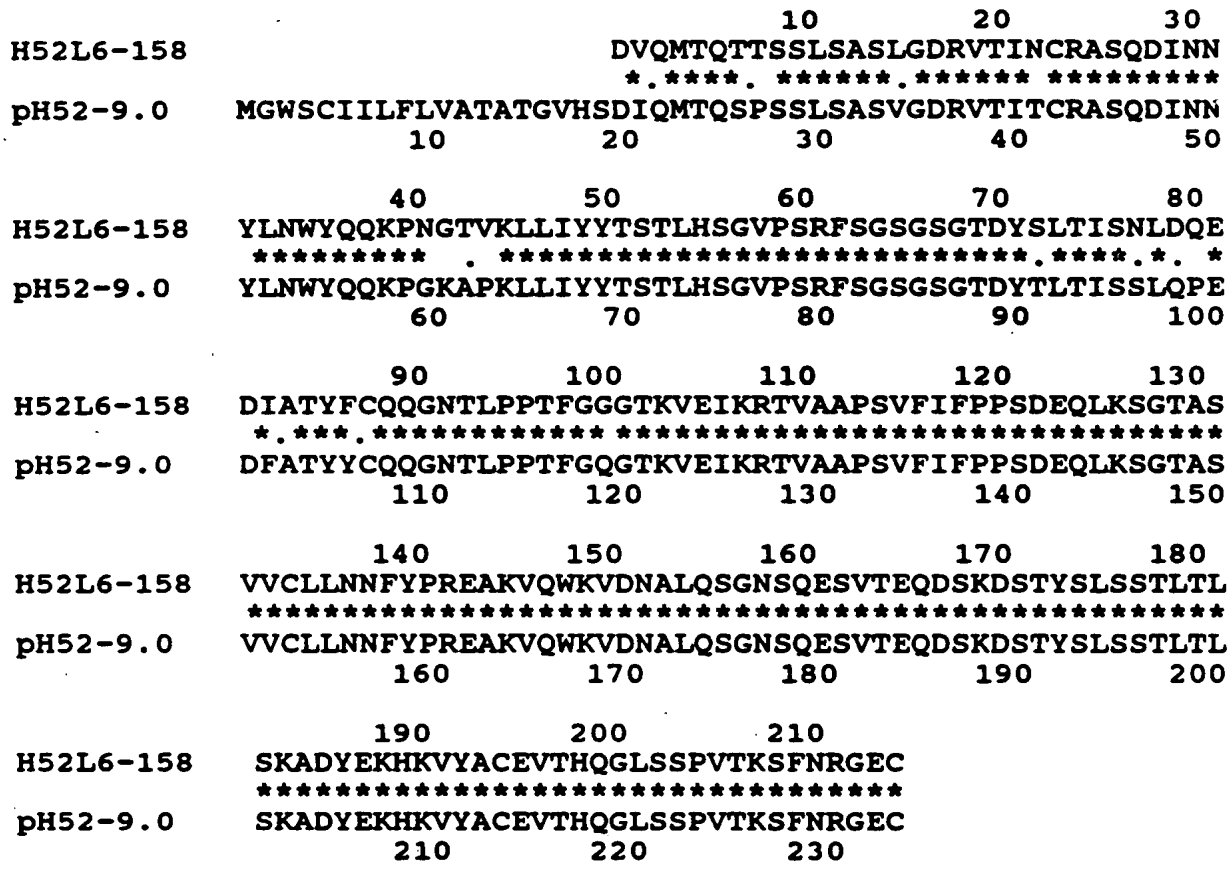
```
                340        350        360        370        380
H52H4-160       NKALPAPIEKTISKAKGQPREPQVYTLPPSREEMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYP
                **.**********.**************************************
pH52-8.0        NKGLPAPIEKTISKTKGQPREPQVYTLPPSREEMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYP
                 350        360        370        380        390

                390        400        410        420        430
H52H4-160       SDIAVEWESNGQPENNYKTTPPVLDSDGSFFLYSKLTVDKSRWQQGNVFS
                **********************.******************************
pH52-8.0        SDIAVEWESNGQPENNYKTTPPMLDSDGSFFLYSKLTVDKSRWQQGNVFS
                 400        410        420        430        440

                440        450
H52H4-160       CSVMHEALHNHYTQKSLSLSPGK
                ***********************
pH52-8.0        CSVMHEALHNHYTQKSLSLSPGK
                 450        460
```

9/9

FIGURE 6B


10 20 30
H52L6-158 DVQMTQTTSSLSASLGDRVTINCRASQDINN
pH52-9.0 MGWSCIILFLVATATGVHSDIQMTQSPSSLSASVGDRVTITCRASQDINN
10 20 30 40 50
40 50 60 70 80
H52L6-158 YLNWYQQKPNGTVKLLIYYTSTLHSGVPSRFSGSGSGTDYSLTISNLDQE
pH52-9.0 YLNWYQQKPGKAPKLLIYYTSTLHSGVPSRFSGSGSGTDYTLTISSLQPE
60 70 80 90 100
90 100 110 120 130
H52L6-158 DIATYFCQQGNTLPPTFGGGTKVEIKRTVAAPSVFIFPPSDEQLKSGTAS
pH52-9.0 DFATYYCQQGNTLPPTFGQGTKVEIKRTVAAPSVFIFPPSDEQLKSGTAS
110 120 130 140 150
140 150 160 170 180
H52L6-158 VVCLLNNFYPREAKVQWKVDNALQSGNSQESVTEQDSKDSTYSLSSTLTL
pH52-9.0 VVCLLNNFYPREAKVQWKVDNALQSGNSQESVTEQDSKDSTYSLSSTLTL
160 170 180 190 200
190 200 210
H52L6-158 SKADYEKHKVYACEVTHQGLSSPVTKSFNRGEC
pH52-9.0 SKADYEKHKVYACEVTHQGLSSPVTKSFNRGEC
210 220 230

IMMUNOGLOBULIN VARIANTS

Field of the Invention

This invention relates to methods for the preparation and use of variant antibodies and finds application particularly in the fields of immunology and cancer diagnosis and therapy.

Background of the Invention

Naturally occurring antibodies (immunoglobulins) comprise two heavy chains linked together by disulfide bonds and two light chains, one light chain being linked to each of the heavy chains by disulfide bonds. Each heavy chain has at one end a variable domain (V_H) followed by a number of constant domains. Each light chain has a variable domain (V_L) at one end and a constant domain at its other end; the constant domain of the light chain is aligned with the first constant domain of the heavy chain, and the light chain variable domain is aligned with the variable domain of the heavy chain. Particular amino acid residues are believed to form an interface between the light and heavy chain variable domains, see e.g. Chothia *et al., J. Mol. Biol.* 186:651-663 (1985); Novotny and Haber, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 82:4592-4596 (1985).

The constant domains are not involved directly in binding the antibody to an antigen, but are involved in various effector functions, such as participation of the antibody in antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity. The variable domains of each pair of light and heavy chains are involved directly in binding the antibody to the antigen. The domains of natural light and heavy chains have the same general structure, and each domain comprises four framework (FR) regions, whose sequences are somewhat conserved, connected by three hyper-variable or complementarity determining regions (CDRs) (see Kabat, E. A. *et al., Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest*, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, (1987)). The four framework regions largely adopt a β-sheet conformation and the CDRs form loops connecting, and in some cases forming part of, the β-sheet structure. The CDRs in each chain are held in close proximity by the framework regions and, with the CDRs from the other chain, contribute

to the formation of the antigen binding site.

Widespread use has been made of monoclonal antibodies, particularly those derived from rodents including mice, however they are frequently antigenic in human clinical use. For example, a major limitation in the clinical use of rodent monoclonal antibodies is an anti-globulin response during therapy (Miller, R. A. *et al.*, *Blood* **62**:988-995 (1983); Schroff, R. W. *et al.*, *Cancer Res.* **45**:879-885 (1985)).

The art has attempted to overcome this problem by constructing "chimeric" antibodies in which an animal antigen-binding variable domain is coupled to a human constant domain (Cabilly *et al.*, U.S. patent No. 4,816,567; Morrison, S. L. *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **81**:6851-6855 (1984); Boulianne, G. L. *et al.*, *Nature* **312**:643-646 (1984); Neuberger, M. S. *et al.*, *Nature* **314**:268-270 (1985)). The term "chimeric" antibody is used herein to describe a polypeptide comprising at least the antigen binding portion of an antibody molecule linked to at least part of another protein (typically an immunoglobulin constant domain).

The isotype of the human constant domain may be selected to tailor the chimeric antibody for participation in antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) and complement-dependent cytotoxicity (see e.g. Brüggemann, M. *et al.*, *J. Exp. Med.* **166**:1351-1361 (1987); Riechmann, L. *et al.*, *Nature* **332**:323-327 (1988); Love *et al.*, *Methods in Enzymology* 178:515-527 (1989); Bindon *et al.*, *J. Exp. Med.* 168:127-142 (1988).

In the typical embodiment, such chimeric antibodies contain about one third rodent (or other non-human species) sequence and thus are capable of eliciting a significant anti-globulin response in humans. For example, in the case of the murine anti-CD3 antibody, OKT3, much of the resulting anti-globulin response is directed against the variable region rather than the constant region (Jaffers, G. J. *et al.*, *Transplantation* **41**:572-578 (1986)).

In a further effort to resolve the antigen binding functions of antibodies and to minimize the use of heterologous sequences in human antibodies, Winter and colleagues (Jones, P. T. *et al.*, *Nature* **321**:522-525 (1986); Riechmann, L. *et al.*, *Nature* **332**:323-327 (1988); Verhoeyen, M. *et al.*, *Science* **239**:1534-1536 (1988)) have substituted rodent CDRs or CDR sequences for the corresponding segments of a human antibody. As used herein, the term "humanized" antibody is an embodiment of chimeric antibodies wherein substantially less than an intact human variable domain has been substituted by the corresponding sequence from a non-human species. In practice, humanized antibodies are typically human antibodies in which some CDR residues and possibly some FR residues are substituted by residues from analogous sites in rodent antibodies.

The therapeutic promise of this approach is supported by the clinical efficacy of a humanized antibody specific for the CAMPATH-1 antigen with two non-Hodgkin lymphoma patients, one of whom had previously developed an anti-globulin response to the parental rat antibody (Riechmann, L. *et al.*, *Nature* **332**:323-327 (1988); Hale, G. *et al.*, *Lancet* i:1394-1399 (1988)). A murine antibody to the interleukin 2 receptor has also recently been humanized (Queen, C. *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **86**:10029-10033 (1989)) as a potential immunosuppressive reagent. Additional references related to humanization of antibodies include Co *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 88:2869-2873 (1991); Gorman *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 88:4181-4185 (1991); Daugherty *et al.*, *Nucleic Acids Research* 19(9):2471-2476 (1991); Brown *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 88:2663-2667 (1991); Junghans *et al.*, *Cancer Research* 50:1495-1502 (1990).

In some cases, substituting CDRs from rodent antibodies for the human CDRs in human frameworks is sufficient to transfer high antigen binding affinity (Jones, P. T. *et al.*, *Nature* **321**:522-525 (1986); Verhoeyen, M. *et al.*, *Science* **239**:1534-1536 (1988)), whereas in other cases it has been necessary to additionally replace one (Riechmann, L. *et al.*, *Nature* **332**:323-327 (1988)) or several (Queen, C. *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **86**:10029-10033 (1989)) framework region (FR) residues. See also Co *et al.*, *supra*.

For a given antibody a small number of FR residues are anticipated to be important for antigen binding. Firstly for example, certain antibodies have been shown to contain a few FR residues which directly contact antigen in crystal structures of antibody-antigen complexes (e.g., reviewed in Davies, D. R. *et al.*, *Ann. Rev. Biochem.* **59**:439-473 (1990)). Secondly, a number of FR residues have been proposed by Chothia, Lesk and colleagues (Chothia, C. & Lesk, A. M., *J. Mol. Biol.* **196**:901-917 (1987); Chothia, C. *et al.*, *Nature* **342**:877-883 (1989); Tramontano, A. *et al.*, *J. Mol. Biol.* **215**:175-182 (1990)) as critically affecting the conformation of particular CDRs and thus their contribution to antigen binding. See also Margolies *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 72:2180-2184 (1975).

It is also known that, in a few instances, an antibody variable domain (either V_H or V_L) may contain glycosylation sites, and that this glycosylation may improve or abolish antigen binding, Pluckthun, *Biotechnology* 9:545-51 (1991); Spiegelberg *et al.*, *Biochemistry* 9:4217-4223 (1970); Wallic *et al.*, *J. Exp. Med.* 168:1099-1109 (1988); Sox *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 66:975-982 (1970); Margni *et al.*, *Ann. Rev. Immunol.* 6:535-554 (1988). Ordinarily, however, glycosylation has no influence on the antigen-binding properties of an antibody, Pluckthun, *supra*, (1991).

The three-dimensional structure of immunoglobulin chains has been studied, and crystal

structures for intact immunoglobulins, for a variety of immunoglobulin fragments, and for antibody-antigen complexes have been published (see e.g., Saul *et al., Journal of Biological Chemistry* 25:585-97 (1978); Sheriff *et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 84:8075-79 (1987); Segal *et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 71:4298-4302 (1974); Epp *et al., Biochemistry* 14(22):4943-4952 (1975); Marquart *et al., J. Mol. Biol.* 141:369-391 (1980); Furey *et al., J. Mol. Biol.* 167:661-692 (1983); Snow and Amzel, *Protein: Structure, Function, and Genetics* 1:267-279, Alan R. Liss, Inc. pubs. (1986); Chothia and Lesk, *J. Mol. Biol.* 196:901-917 (1987); Chothia *et al., Nature* 342:877-883 (1989); Chothia *et al., Science* 233:755-58 (1986); Huber *et al., Nature* 264:415-420 (1976); Bruccoleri *et al., Nature* 335:564-568 (1988) and *Nature* 336:266 (1988); Sherman *et al., Journal of Biological Chemistry* 263:4064-4074 (1988); Amzel and Poljak, *Ann. Rev. Biochem.* 48:961-67 (1979); Silverton *et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 74:5140-5144 (1977); and Gregory *et al., Molecular Immunology* 24:821-829 (1987). It is known that the function of an antibody is dependent on its three dimensional structure, and that amino acid substitutions can change the three-dimensional structure of an antibody, Snow and Amzel, *supra*. It has previously been shown that the antigen binding affinity of a humanized antibody can be increased by mutagenesis based upon molecular modelling (Riechmann, L. *et al., Nature* **332**:323-327 (1988); Queen, C. *et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **86**:10029-10033 (1989)).

Humanizing an antibody with retention of high affinity for antigen and other desired biological activities is at present difficult to achieve using currently available procedures. Methods are needed for rationalizing the selection of sites for substitution in preparing such antibodies and thereby increasing the efficiency of antibody humanization.

The proto-oncogene *HER2* (human epidermal growth factor receptor 2) encodes a protein tyrosine kinase ($p185^{HER2}$) that is related to and somewhat homologous to the human epidermal growth factor receptor (see Coussens, L. *et al., Science* **230**:1132-1139 (1985); Yamamoto, T. *et al., Nature* **319**:230-234 (1986); King, C. R. *et al., Science* **229**:974-976 (1985)). *HER2* is also known in the field as *c-erbB-2*, and sometimes by the name of the rat homolog, *neu*. Amplification and/or overexpression of *HER2* is associated with multiple human malignancies and appears to be integrally involved in progression of 25-30% of human breast and ovarian cancers (Slamon, D. J. *et al., Science* **235**:177-182 (1987), Slamon, D. J. *et al., Science* **244**:707-712 (1989)). Furthermore, the extent of amplification is inversely correlated with the observed median patient survival time (Slamon, *supra*, Science 1989).

The murine monoclonal antibody known as muMAb4D5 (Fendly, B. M. *et al., Cancer Res.* **50**:1550-1558 (1990)), directed against the extracellular domain (ECD) of $p185^{HER2}$,

specifically inhibits the growth of tumor cell lines overexpressing $p185^{HER2}$ in monolayer culture or in soft agar (Hudziak, R. M. *et al.*, *Molec. Cell. Biol.* **9**:1165-1172 (1989); Lupu, R. *et al.*, *Science* **249**:1552-1555 (1990)). MuMAb4D5 also has the potential of enhancing tumor cell sensitivity to tumor necrosis factor, an important effector molecule in macrophage-mediated tumor cell cytotoxicity (Hudziak, *supra*, 1989; Shepard, H. M. and Lewis, G. D. *J. Clinical Immunology* **8**:333-395 (1988)). Thus muMAb4D5 has potential for clinical intervention in and imaging of carcinomas in which $p185^{HER2}$ is overexpressed. The muMAb4D5 and its uses are described in PCT application WO 89/06692 published 27 July 1989. This murine antibody was deposited with the ATCC and designated ATCC CRL 10463. However, this antibody may be immunogenic in humans.

It is therefore an object of this invention to provide methods for the preparation of antibodies which are less antigenic in humans than non-human antibodies but have desired antigen binding and other characteristics and activities.

It is a further object of this invention to provide methods for the efficient humanization of antibodies, i.e. selecting non-human amino acid residues for importation into a human antibody background sequence in such a fashion as to retain or improve the affinity of the non-human donor antibody for a given antigen.

It is another object of this invention to provide humanized antibodies capable of binding $p185^{HER2}$.

Other objects, features, and characteristics of the present invention will become apparent upon consideration of the following description and the appended claims.

Summary of the Invention

The objects of this invention are accomplished by a method for making a humanized antibody comprising amino acid sequence of an import, non-human antibody and a human antibody, comprising the steps of:

a. obtaining the amino acid sequences of at least a portion of an import antibody variable domain and of a consensus variable domain;

b. identifying Complementarity Determining Region (CDR) amino acid sequences in the import and the human variable domain sequences;

c. substituting an import CDR amino acid sequence for the corresponding human CDR amino acid sequence;

d. aligning the amino acid sequences of a Framework Region (FR) of the import

antibody and the corresponding FR of the consensus antibody;

e. identifying import antibody FR residues in the aligned FR sequences that are non-homologous to the corresponding consensus antibody residues;

f. determining if the non-homologous import amino acid residue is reasonably expected to have at least one of the following effects:

1. non-covalently binds antigen directly,

2. interacts with a CDR; or

3. participates in the V_L - V_H interface; and

g. for any non-homologous import antibody amino acid residue which is reasonably expected to have at least one of these effects, substituting that residue for the corresponding amino acid residue in the consensus antibody FR sequence.

Optionally, the method of this invention comprises the additional steps of determining if any non-homologous residues identified in step (e) are exposed on the surface of the domain or buried within it, and if the residue is exposed but has none of the effects identified in step (f), retaining the consensus residue.

Additionally, in certain embodiments the method of this invention comprises the feature wherein the corresponding consensus antibody residues identified in step (e) above are selected from the group consisting of 4L, 35L, 36L, 38L, 43L, 44L, 46L, 58L, 62L, 63L, 64L, 65L, 66L, 67L, 68L, 69L, 70L, 71L, 73L, 85L, 87L, 98L, 2H, 4H, 24H, 36H, 37H, 39H, 43H, 45H, 49H, 58H, 60H, 67H, 68H, 69H, 70H, 73H, 74H, 75H, 76H, 78H, 91H, 92H, 93H, and 103H (utilizing the numbering system set forth in Kabat, E. A. *et al.*, *Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest* (National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, 1987)).

In certain embodiments, the method of this invention comprises the additional steps of searching either or both of the import, non-human and the consensus variable domain sequences for glycosylation sites, determining if the glycosylation is reasonably expected to be important for the desired antigen binding and biological activity of the antibody (i.e., determining if the glycosylation site binds to antigen or changes a side chain of an amino acid residue that binds to antigen, or if the glycosylation enhances or weakens antigen binding, or is important for maintaining antibody affinity). If the import sequence bears the glycosylation site, it is preferred to substitute that site for the corresponding residues in the consensus human if the glycosylation site is reasonably expected to be important. If only the consensus sequence, and not the import, bears the glycosylation site, it is preferred to eliminate that glycosylation site or substitute therefor the corresponding amino acid residues from the import sequence.

Another embodiment of this invention comprises aligning import antibody and the consensus antibody FR sequences, identifying import antibody FR residues which are non-homologous with the aligned consensus FR sequence, and for each such non-homologous import antibody FR residue, determining if the corresponding consensus antibody residue represents a residue which is highly conserved across all species at that site, and if it is so conserved, preparing a humanized antibody which comprises the consensus antibody amino acid residue at that site.

Certain alternate embodiments of the methods of this invention comprise obtaining the amino acid sequence of at least a portion of an import, non-human antibody variable domain having a CDR and a FR, obtaining the amino acid sequence of at least a portion of a consensus antibody variable domain having a CDR and a FR, substituting the non-human CDR for the human CDR in the consensus antibody variable domain, and then substituting an amino acid residue for the consensus amino acid residue at at least one of the following sites:

a. (in the FR of the variable domain of the light chain) 4L, 35L, 36L, 38L, 43L, 44L, 58L, 46L, 62L, 63L, 64L, 65L, 66L, 67L, 68L, 69L, 70L, 71L, 73L, 85L, 87L, 98L, or

b. (in the FR of the variable domain of the heavy chain) 2H, 4H, 24H, 36H, 37H, 39H, 43H, 45H, 49H, 58H, 60H, 67H, 68H, 69H, 70H, 73H, 74H, 75H, 76H, 78H, 91H, 92H, 93H, and 103H.

In preferred embodiments, the non-CDR residue substituted at the consensus FR site is the residue found at the corresponding location of the non-human antibody.

Optionally, this just-recited embodiment comprises the additional steps of following the method steps appearing at the beginning of this summary and determining whether a particular amino acid residue can reasonably be expected to have undesirable effects.

This invention also relates to a humanized antibody comprising the CDR sequence of an import, non-human antibody and the FR sequence of a human antibody, wherein an amino acid residue within the human FR sequence located at any one of the sites 4L, 35L, 36L, 38L, 43L, 44L, 46L, 58L, 62L, 63L, 64L, 65L, 66L, 67L, 68L, 69L, 70L, 71L, 73L, 85L, 87L, 98L, 2H, 4H, 24H, 36H, 37H, 39H, 43H, 45H, 49H, 58H, 60H, 67H, 68H, 69H, 70H, 73H, 74H, 75H, 76H, 78H, 91H, 92H, 93H, and 103H has been substituted by another residue. In preferred embodiments, the residue substituted at the human FR site is the residue found at the corresponding location of the non-human antibody from which the non-human CDR was obtained. In other embodiments, no human FR residue other than those set forth in this group has been substituted.

This invention also encompasses specific humanized antibody variable domains, and isolated polypeptides having homology with the following sequences.

1. SEQ. ID NO. 1, which is the light chain variable domain of a humanized version of muMAb4D5:

DIQMTQSPSSLSASVGDRVTITCRASQDVNTAVAWYQQKPGKAPKLLIYSASFLESGVP SRFSGSRSGTDFTLTISSLQPEDFATYYCQQHYTTPPTFGQGTKVEIKRT

2. SEQ. ID NO. 2, which is the heavy chain variable domain of a humanized version of muMAb4D5):

EVQLVESGGGLVQPGGSLRLSCAASGFNIKDTYIHWVRQAPGKGLEWVARIYPTNGYTR YADSVKGRFTISADTSKNTAYLQMNSLRAEDTAVYYCSRWGGDGFYAMDVWGQGTLV TVSS

In another aspect, this invention provides a consensus antibody variable domain amino acid sequence for use in the preparation of humanized antibodies, methods for obtaining, using, and storing a computer representation of such a consensus sequence, and computers comprising the sequence data of such a sequence. In one embodiment, the following consensus antibody variable domain amino acid sequences are provided:

SEQ. ID NO. 3 (light chain):

DIQMTQSPSSLSASVGDRVTITCRASQDVSSYLAWYQQKPGKAPKLLIYAASSLESGVP SRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQPEDFATYYCQQYNSLPYTFGQGTKVEIKRT, and

SEQ. ID NO. 4 (heavy chain):

EVQLVESGGGLVQPGGSLRLSCAASGFTFSDYAMSWVRQAPGKGLEWVAVISENGGYT RYADSVKGRFTISADTSKNTAYLQMNSLRAEDTAVYYCSRWGGDGFYAMDVWGQGTL VTVSS

Brief Description of the Drawings

FIGURE 1A shows the comparison of the V_L domain amino acid residues of muMAb4D5, huMAb4D5, and a consensus sequence (Fig. 1A, SEQ.ID NO. 5, SEQ. ID NO. 1 and SEQ. ID NO. 3, respectively). FIGURE 1B shows the comparison between the V_H domain

amino acid residues of the muMAb4D5, huMAb4D5, and a consensus sequence (Fig. 1B, SEQ. ID NO. 6, SEQ. ID NO. 2 and SEQ. ID NO. 4, respectively). Both Figs 1A and 1B use the generally accepted numbering scheme from Kabat, E. A., *et al., Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest* (National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD (1987)). In both Fig. 1A and Fig. 1B, the CDR residues determined according to a standard sequence definition (as in Kabat, E. A. *et al., Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest* (National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, 1987)) are indicated by the first underlining beneath the sequences, and the CDR residues determined according to a structural definition (as in Chothia, C. & Lesk, A. M., *J. Mol. Biol.* 196:901-917 (1987)) are indicated by the second, lower underlines. The mismatches between genes are shown by the vertical lines.

FIGURE 2 shows a scheme for humanization of muMAb4D5 V_L and V_H by gene conversion mutagenesis.

FIGURE 3 shows the inhibition of SK-BR-3 proliferation by MAb4D5 variants. Relative cell proliferation was determined as described (Hudziak, R. M. *et al., Molec. Cell. Biol.* 9:1165-1172 (1989)) and data (average of triplicate determinations) are presented as a percentage of results with untreated cultures for muMAb4D5 (•), huMAb4D5-8 (○) and huMAb4D5-1 (□).

FIGURE 4 shows a stereo view of α-carbon tracing for a model of huMAb4D5-8 V_L and V_H. The CDR residues (Kabat, E. A. *et al., Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest* (National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, 1987)) are shown in bold and side chains of V_H residues A71, T73, A78, S93, Y102 and V_L residues Y55 plus R66 (see Table 3) are shown.

FIGURE 5 shows an amino acid sequence comparison of V_L (top panel) and V_H (lower panel) domains of the murine anti-CD3 monoclonal Ab UCHT1 (muxCD3, Shalaby *et al., J. Exp. Med.* 175, 217-225 (1992) with a humanized variant of this antibody (huxCD3v9). Also shown are consensus sequences (most commonly occurring residue or pair of residues) of the most abundant human subgroups, namely V_L κ 1 and V_H III upon which the humanized sequences are based (Kabat, E. A. *et al., Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest*, 5th edition, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, USA (1991)). The light chain sequences--muxCD3, huxCD3v9 and huκI--correspond to SEQ.ID.NOs 16, 17, and 18, respectively. The heavy chain sequences--muxCD3, huxCD3v9 and huκI--correspond to SEQ.ID.NOs 19, 20, and 21, respectively. Residues which differ between muxCD3 and huxCD3v9 are identified by an asterisk (*), whereas those which differ between humanized and consensus sequences are identified by a sharp sign (#). A bullet (•) denotes that a residue at this position has been found to contact antigen in one or more crystallographic structures of antibody/antigen

complexes (Kabat *et al.*, 1991; Mian, I. S. *et al.*, *J. Mol. Biol.* **217**, 133-151 (1991)). The location of CDR residues according to a sequence definition (Kabat *et al.*, 1991) and a structural definition (Chothia and Lesk, *supra* 1987) are shown by a line and carats (^) beneath the sequences, respectively.

FIGURE 6A compares murine and humanized amino acid sequences for the heavy chain of an anti-CD18 antibody. H52H4-160 (SEQ. ID. NO. 22) is the murine sequence, and pH52-8.0 (SEQ. ID. NO. 23) is the humanized heavy chain sequence. pH52-8.0 residue 143S is the final amino acid in the variable heavy chain domain V_H, and residue 144A is the first amino acid in the constant heavy chain domain C_{H1}.

FIGURE 6B compares murine and humanized amino acid sequences for the light chain of an anti-CD18 antibody. H52L6-158 (SEQ. ID. NO. 24) is the murine sequence, and pH52-9.0 (SEQ. ID. NO. 25) is the humanized light chain sequence. pH52-9.0 residue 128T is the final amino acid in the light chain variable domain V_L, and residue 129V is the first amino acid in the light chain constant domain C_L.

Detailed Description of the Invention

Definitions

In general, the following words or phrases have the indicated definitions when used in the description, examples, and claims:

The murine monoclonal antibody known as muMAb4D5 (Fendly, B. M. *et al.*, *Cancer Res.* **50**:1550-1558 (1990)) is directed against the extracellular domain (ECD) of $p185^{HER2}$. The muMAb4D5 and its uses are described in PCT application WO 89/06692 published 27 July 1989. This murine antibody was deposited with the ATCC and designated ATCC CRL 10463. In this description and claims, the terms muMAb4D5, chMAb4D5 and huMAb4D5 represent murine, chimerized and humanized versions of the monoclonal antibody 4D5, respectively.

A humanized antibody for the purposes herein is an immunoglobulin amino acid sequence variant or fragment thereof which is capable of binding to a predetermined antigen and which comprises a FR region having substantially the amino acid sequence of a human immunoglobulin and a CDR having substantially the amino acid sequence of a non-human immunoglobulin.

Generally, a humanized antibody has one or more amino acid residues introduced into it from a source which is non-human. These non-human amino acid residues are referred to herein as "import" residues, which are typically taken from an "import" antibody domain,

particularly a variable domain. An import residue, sequence, or antibody has a desired affinity and/or specificity, or other desirable antibody biological activity as discussed herein.

In general, the humanized antibody will comprise substantially all of at least one, and typically two, variable domains (Fab, Fab', $F(ab')_2$, Fabc, Fv) in which all or substantially all of the CDR regions correspond to those of a non-human immunoglobulin and all or substantially all of the FR regions are those of a human immunoglobulin consensus sequence. The humanized antibody optimally also will comprise at least a portion of an immunoglobulin constant region (Fc), typically that of a human immunoglobulin. Ordinarily, the antibody will contain both the light chain as well as at least the variable domain of a heavy chain. The antibody also may include the CH1, hinge, CH2, CH3, and CH4 regions of the heavy chain.

The humanized antibody will be selected from any class of immunoglobulins, including IgM, IgG, IgD, IgA and IgE, and any isotype, including IgG1, IgG2, IgG3 and IgG4. Usually the constant domain is a complement fixing constant domain where it is desired that the humanized antibody exhibit cytotoxic activity, and the class is typically IgG_1. Where such cytotoxic activity is not desirable, the constant domain may be of the IgG_2 class. The humanized antibody may comprise sequences from more than one class or isotype, and selecting particular constant domains to optimize desired effector functions is within the ordinary skill in the art.

The FR and CDR regions of the humanized antibody need not correspond precisely to the parental sequences, e.g., the import CDR or the consensus FR may be mutagenized by substitution, insertion or deletion of at least one residue so that the CDR or FR residue at that site does not correspond to either the consensus or the import antibody. Such mutations, however, will not be extensive. Usually, at least 75% of the humanized antibody residues will correspond to those of the parental FR and CDR sequences, more often 90%, and most preferably greater than 95%.

In general, humanized antibodies prepared by the method of this invention are produced by a process of analysis of the parental sequences and various conceptual humanized products using three dimensional models of the parental and humanized sequences. Three dimensional immunoglobulin models are commonly available and are familiar to those skilled in the art. Computer programs are available which illustrate and display probable three dimensional conformational structures of selected candidate immunoglobulin sequences. Inspection of these displays permits analysis of the likely role of the residues in the functioning of the candidate immunoglobulin sequence, i.e., the analysis of residues that influence the ability of the candidate immunoglobulin to bind its antigen.

Residues that influence antigen binding are defined to be residues that are substantially responsible for the antigen affinity or antigen specificity of a candidate immunoglobulin, in a positive or a negative sense. The invention is directed to the selection and combination of FR residues from the consensus and import sequence so that the desired immunoglobulin characteristic is achieved. Such desired characteristics include increases in affinity and greater specificity for the target antigen, although it is conceivable that in some circumstances the opposite effects might be desired. In general, the CDR residues are directly and most substantially involved in influencing antigen binding (although not all CDR residues are so involved and therefore need not be substituted into the consensus sequence). However, FR residues also have a significant effect and can exert their influence in at least three ways: They may noncovalently directly bind to antigen, they may interact with CDR residues and they may affect the interface between the heavy and light chains.

A residue that noncovalently directly binds to antigen is one that, by three dimensional analysis, is reasonably expected to noncovalently directly bind to antigen. Typically, it is necessary to impute the position of antigen from the spatial location of neighboring CDRs and the dimensions and structure of the target antigen. In general, only those humanized antibody residues that are capable of forming salt bridges, hydrogen bonds, or hydrophobic interactions are likely to be involved in non-covalent antigen binding, however residues which have atoms which are separated from antigen spatially by 3.2 Angstroms or less may also non-covalently interact with antigen. Such residues typically are the relatively larger amino acids having the side chains with the greatest bulk, such as tyrosine, arginine, and lysine. Antigen-binding FR residues also typically will have side chains that are oriented into an envelope surrounding the solvent oriented face of a CDR which extends about 7 Angstroms into the solvent from the CDR domain and about 7 Angstroms on either side of the CDR domain, again as visualized by three dimensional modeling.

A residue that interacts with a CDR generally is a residue that either affects the conformation of the CDR polypeptide backbone or forms a noncovalent bond with a CDR residue side chain. Conformation-affecting residues ordinarily are those that change the spatial position of any CDR backbone atom (N, Cα, C, O, Cβ) by more than about 0.2 Angstroms. Backbone atoms of CDR sequences are displaced for example by residues that interrupt or modify organized structures such as beta sheets, helices or loops. Residues that can exert a profound affect on the conformation of neighboring sequences include proline and glycine, both of which are capable of introducing bends into the backbone. Other residues that can displace backbone atoms are those that are capable of participating in salt bridges and hydrogen bonds.

A residue that interacts with a CDR side chain is one that is reasonably expected to form a noncovalent bond with a CDR side chain, generally either a salt bridge or hydrogen bond. Such residues are identified by three dimensional positioning of their side chains. A salt or ion bridge could be expected to form between two side chains positioned within about 2.5 - 3.2 Angstroms of one another that bear opposite charges, for example a lysinyl and a glutamyl pairing. A hydrogen bond could be expected to form between the side chains of residue pairs such as seryl or threonyl with aspartyl or glutamyl (or other hydrogen accepting residues). Such pairings are well known in the protein chemistry art and will be apparent to the artisan upon three dimensional modeling of the candidate immunoglobulin.

Immunoglobulin residues that affect the interface between heavy and light chain variable regions ("the V_L - V_H interface") are those that affect the proximity or orientation of the two chains with respect to one another. Certain residues involved in interchain interactions are already known and include V_L residues 34, 36, 38, 44, 46, 87, 89, 91, 96, and 98 and V_H residues 35, 37, 39, 45, 47, 91, 93, 95, 100, and 103 (utilizing the nomenclature set forth in Kabat *et al., Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest* (National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, 1987)). Additional residues are newly identified by the inventors herein, and include 43L, 85L, 43H and 60H. While these residues are indicated for IgG only, they are applicable across species. In the practice of this invention, import antibody residues that are reasonably expected to be involved in interchain interactions are selected for substitution into the consensus sequence. It is believed that heretofore no humanized antibody has been prepared with an intrachain-affecting residue selected from an import antibody sequence.

Since it is not entirely possible to predict in advance what the exact impact of a given substitution will be it may be necessary to make the substitution and assay the candidate antibody for the desired characteristic. These steps, however, are *per se* routine and well within the ordinary skill of the art.

CDR and FR residues are determined according to a standard sequence definition (Kabat *et al., Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest*, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda MD (1987), and a structural definition (as in Chothia and Lesk, *J. Mol. Biol.* 196:901-917 (1987). Where these two methods result in slightly different identifications of a CDR, the structural definition is preferred, but the residues identified by the sequence definition method are considered important FR residues for determination of which framework residues to import into a consensus sequence.

Throughout this description, reference is made to the numbering scheme from Kabat, E. A., *et al., Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest* (National Institutes of Health,

Bethesda, MD (1987) and (1991). In these compendiums, Kabat lists many amino acid sequences for antibodies for each subclass, and lists the most commonly occurring amino acid for each residue position in that subclass. Kabat uses a method for assigning a residue number to each amino acid in a listed sequence, and this method for assigning residue numbers has become standard in the field. The Kabat numbering scheme is followed in this description.

For purposes of this invention, to assign residue numbers to a candidate antibody amino acid sequence which is not included in the Kabat compendium, one follows the following steps. Generally, the candidate sequence is aligned with any immunoglobulin sequence or any consensus sequence in Kabat. Alignment may be done by hand, or by computer using commonly accepted computer programs; an example of such a program is the Align 2 program discussed in this description. Alignment may be facilitated by using some amino acid residues which are common to most Fab sequences. For example, the light and heavy chains each typically have two cysteines which have the same residue numbers; in V_L domain the two cysteines are typically at residue numbers 23 and 88, and in the V_H domain the two cysteine residues are typically numbered 22 and 92. Framework residues generally, but not always, have approximately the same number of residues, however the CDRs will vary in size. For example, in the case of a CDR from a candidate sequence which is longer than the CDR in the sequence in Kabat to which it is aligned, typically suffixes are added to the residue number to indicate the insertion of additional residues (see, e.g. residues 100abcde in Fig. 5). For candidate sequences which, for example, align with a Kabat sequence for residues 34 and 36 but have no residue between them to align with residue 35, the number 35 is simply not assigned to a residue.

Thus, in humanization of an import variable sequence, where one cuts out an entire human or consensus CDR and replaces it with an import CDR sequence, (a) the exact number of residues may be swapped, leaving the numbering the same, (b) fewer import amino acid residues may be introduced than are cut, in which case there will be a gap in the residue numbers, or (c) a larger number of amino acid residues may be introduced then were cut, in which case the numbering will involve the use of suffixes such as 100abcde.

The terms "consensus sequence" and "consensus antibody" as used herein refers to an amino acid sequence which comprises the most frequently occurring amino acid residues at each location in all immunoglobulins of any particular subclass or subunit structure. The consensus sequence may be based on immunoglobulins of a particular species or of many species. A "consensus" sequence, structure, or antibody is understood to encompass a consensus human sequence as described in certain embodiments of this invention, and to refer

to an amino acid sequence which comprises the most frequently occurring amino acid residues at each location in all human immunoglobulins of any particular subclass or subunit structure. This invention provides consensus human structures and consensus structures which consider other species in addition to human.

The subunit structures of the five immunoglobulin classes in humans are as follows:

Class	Heavy Chain	Subclasses	Light Chain	Molecular Formula
IgG	γ	$\gamma 1$, $\gamma 2$, $\gamma 3$, $\gamma 4$	κ or λ	$(\gamma_2\kappa_2)$, $(\gamma_2\lambda_2)$
IgA	α	$\alpha 1$, $\alpha 2$	κ or λ	$(\alpha_2\kappa_2)_n^*$, $(\alpha_2\lambda_2)_n^*$
IgM	μ	none	κ or λ	$(\mu_2\kappa_2)_5$, $(\mu_2\lambda_2)_5$
IgD	δ	none	κ or λ	$(\delta_2\kappa_2)$, $(\delta_2\lambda_2)$
IgE	ϵ	none	κ or λ	$(\epsilon_2\kappa_2)$, $(\epsilon_2\lambda_2)$

($^*_n$ may equal 1, 2, or 3)

In preferred embodiments of an IgGγ1 human consensus sequence, the consensus variable domain sequences are derived from the most abundant subclasses in the sequence compilation of Kabat *et al.*, *Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest*, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda MD (1987), namely V_L κ subgroup I and V_H group III. In such preferred embodiments, the V_L consensus domain has the amino acid sequence: DIQMTQSPSSLSASVGDRVTITCRASQDVSSYLAWYQQKPGKAPKLLIYAASSLESGVPSRFSG SGSGTDFTLTISSLQPEDFATYYCQQYNSLPYTFGQGTKVEIKRT (SEQ. ID NO. 3); the V_H consensus domain has the amino acid sequence: EVQLVESGGGLVQPGGSLRLSCAASGFTFSDYAMSWVRQAPGKGLEWVAVISENGGYTRYAD SVKGRFTISADTSKNTAYLQMNSLRAEDTAVYYCSRWGGDGFYAMDVWGQGTLVTVSS (SEQ. ID NO. 4).

These sequences include consensus CDRs as well as consensus FR residues (see for example in Fig. 1).

While not wishing to be limited to any particular theories, it may be that these preferred embodiments are less likely to be immunogenic in an individual than less abundant subclasses. However, in other embodiments, the consensus sequence is derived from other subclasses of human immunoglobulin variable domains. In yet other embodiments, the consensus sequence is derived from human constant domains.

Identity or homology with respect to a specified amino acid sequence of this invention is defined herein as the percentage of amino acid residues in a candidate sequence that are

identical with the specified residues, after aligning the sequences and introducing gaps, if necessary, to achieve the maximum percent homology, and not considering any conservative substitutions as part of the sequence identity. None of N-terminal, C-terminal or internal extensions, deletions, or insertions into the specified sequence shall be construed as affecting homology. All sequence alignments called for in this invention are such maximal homology alignments. While such alignments may be done by hand using conventional methods, a suitable computer program is the "Align 2" program for which protection is being sought from the U.S. Register of Copyrights (Align 2, by Genentech, Inc., application filed 9 December 1991).

"Non-homologous" import antibody residues are those residues which are not identical to the amino acid residue at the analogous or corresponding location in a consensus sequence, after the import and consensus sequences are aligned.

The term "computer representation" refers to information which is in a form that can be manipulated by a computer. The act of storing a computer representation refers to the act of placing the information in a form suitable for manipulation by a computer.

This invention is also directed to novel polypeptides, and in certain aspects, isolated novel humanized anti-p185^{HER2} antibodies are provided. These novel anti-p185^{HER2} antibodies are sometimes collectively referred to herein as huMAb4D5, and also sometimes as the light or heavy chain variable domains of huMAb4D5, and are defined herein to be any polypeptide sequence which possesses a biological property of a polypeptide comprising the following polypeptide sequence:

DIQMTQSPSSLSASVGDRVTITCRASQDVNTAVAWYQQKPGKAPKLLIYSASFLESGVP SRFSGSRSGTDFTLTISSLQPEDFATYYCQQHYTTPPTFGQGTKVEIKRT (SEQ. ID NO. 1, which is the light chain variable domain of huMAb4D5); or

EVQLVESGGGLVQPGGSLRLSCAASGFNIKDTYIHWVRQAPGKGLEWVARIYPTNGYTR YADSVKGRFTISADTSKNTAYLQMNSLRAEDTAVYYCSRWGGDGFYAMDVWGQGTLV TVSS (SEQ. ID NO. 2, which is the heavy chain variable domain of huMAb4D5).

"Biological property", as relates for example to anti-p185^{HER2}, for the purposes herein means an *in vivo* effector or antigen-binding function or activity that is directly or indirectly performed by huMAb4D5 (whether in its native or denatured conformation). Effector functions include p185^{HER2} binding, any hormonal or hormonal antagonist activity, any mitogenic or agonist or antagonist activity, any cytotoxic activity. An antigenic function means possession

of an epitope or antigenic site that is capable of cross-reacting with antibodies raised against the polypeptide sequence of huMAb4D5.

Biologically active huMAb4D5 is defined herein as a polypeptide that shares an effector function of huMAb4D5. A principal known effector function of huMAb4D5 is its ability to bind to $p185^{HER2}$.

Thus, the biologically active and antigenically active huMAb4D5 polypeptides that are the subject of certain embodiments of this invention include the sequence of the entire translated nucleotide sequence of huMAb4D5; mature huMAb4D5; fragments thereof having a consecutive sequence of at least 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30 or 40 amino acid residues comprising sequences from muMAb4D5 plus residues from the human FR of huMAb4D5; amino acid sequence variants of huMAb4D5 wherein an amino acid residue has been inserted N- or C-terminal to, or within, huMAb4D5 or its fragment as defined above; amino acid sequence variants of huMAb4D5 or its fragment as defined above wherein an amino acid residue of huMAb4D5 or its fragment as defined above has been substituted by another residue, including predetermined mutations by, e.g., site-directed or PCR mutagenesis; derivatives of huMAb4D5 or its fragments as defined above wherein huMAb4D5 or its fragments have been covalent modified, by substitution, chemical, enzymatic, or other appropriate means, with a moiety other than a naturally occurring amino acid; and glycosylation variants of huMAb4D5 (insertion of a glycosylation site or deletion of any glycosylation site by deletion, insertion or substitution of suitable residues). Such fragments and variants exclude any polypeptide heretofore identified, including muMAb4D5 or any known polypeptide fragment, which are anticipatory order 35 U.S.C.102 as well as polypeptides obvious thereover under 35 U.S.C. 103.

An "isolated" polypeptide means polypeptide which has been identified and separated and/or recovered from a component of its natural environment. Contaminant components of its natural environment are materials which would interfere with diagnostic or therapeutic uses for the polypeptide, and may include enzymes, hormones, and other proteinaceous or nonproteinaceous solutes. In preferred embodiments, for example, a polypeptide product comprising huMAb4D5 will be purified from a cell culture or other synthetic environment (1) to greater than 95% by weight of protein as determined by the Lowry method, and most preferably more than 99% by weight, (2) to a degree sufficient to obtain at least 15 residues of N-terminal or internal amino acid sequence by use of a gas- or liquid-phase sequenator (such as a commercially available Applied Biosystems sequenator Model 470, 477, or 473), or (3) to homogeneity by SDS-PAGE under reducing or nonreducing conditions using Coomassie blue or, preferably, silver stain. Isolated huMAb4D5 includes huMAb4D5 in situ within recombinant

cells since at least one component of the huMAb4D5 natural environment will not be present. Ordinarily, however, isolated huMAb4D5 will be prepared by at least one purification step.

In accordance with this invention, huMAb4D5 nucleic acid is RNA or DNA containing greater than ten bases that encodes a biologically or antigenically active huMAb4D5, is complementary to nucleic acid sequence encoding such huMAb4D5, or hybridizes to nucleic acid sequence encoding such huMAb4D5 and remains stably bound to it under stringent conditions, and comprises nucleic acid from a muMAb4D5 CDR and a human FR region.

Preferably, the huMAb4D5 nucleic acid encodes a polypeptide sharing at least 75% sequence identity, more preferably at least 80%, still more preferably at least 85%, even more preferably at 90%, and most preferably 95%, with the huMAb4D5 amino acid sequence. Preferably, a nucleic acid molecule that hybridizes to the huMAb4D5 nucleic acid contains at least 20, more preferably 40, and most preferably 90 bases. Such hybridizing or complementary nucleic acid, however, is further defined as being novel under 35 U.S.C. 102 and unobvious under 35 U.S.C. 103 over any prior art nucleic acid.

Stringent conditions are those that (1) employ low ionic strength and high temperature for washing, for example, 0.015 M NaCl/0.0015 M sodium citrate/0/1% $NaDodSO_4$ at 50° C; (2) employ during hybridization a denaturing agent such as formamide, for example, 50% (vol/vol) formamide with 0.1% bovine serum albumin/0/1% Ficoll/0/1% polyvinylpyrrolidone/50 mM sodium phosphate buffer at pH 6.5 with 750 mM NaCl, 75 mM sodium citrate at 42° C; or (3) employ 50% formamide, 5 x SSC (0.75 M NaCl, 0.075 M sodium citrate), 50 mM sodium phosphate (pH 6.8), 0.1% sodium pyrophosphate, 5 x Denhardt's solution, sonicated salmon sperm DNA (50 g/ml), 0.1% SDS, and 10% dextran sulfate at 42 C, with washes at 42 C in 0.2 x SSC and 0.1% SDS.

The term "control sequences" refers to DNA sequences necessary for the expression of an operably linked coding sequence in a particular host organism. The control sequences that are suitable for prokaryotes, for example, include a promoter, optionally an operator sequence, a ribosome binding site, and possibly, other as yet poorly understood sequences. Eukaryotic cells are known to utilize promoters, polyadenylation signals, and enhancers.

Nucleic acid is "operably linked" when it is placed into a functional relationship with another nucleic acid sequence. For example, DNA for a presequence or secretory leader is operably linked to DNA for a polypeptide if it is expressed as a preprotein that participates in the secretion of the polypeptide; a promoter or enhancer is operably linked to a coding sequence if it affects the transcription of the sequence; or a ribosome binding site is operably linked to a coding sequence if it is positioned so as to facilitate translation. Generally,

"operably linked" means that the DNA sequences being linked are contiguous and, in the case of a secretory leader, contiguous and in reading phase. However enhancers do not have to be contiguous. Linking is accomplished by ligation at convenient restriction sites. If such sites do not exist, then synthetic oligonucleotide adaptors or linkers are used in accord with conventional practice.

An "exogenous" element is defined herein to mean nucleic acid sequence that is foreign to the cell, or homologous to the cell but in a position within the host cell nucleic acid in which the element is ordinarily not found.

As used herein, the expressions "cell," "cell line," and "cell culture" are used interchangeably and all such designations include progeny. Thus, the words "transformants" and "transformed cells" include the primary subject cell and cultures derived therefrom without regard for the number of transfers. It is also understood that all progeny may not be precisely identical in DNA content, due to deliberate or inadvertent mutations. Mutant progeny that have the same function or biological activity as screened for in the originally transformed cell are included. Where distinct designations are intended, it will be clear from the context.

"Oligonucleotides" are short-length, single- or double-stranded polydeoxynucleotides that are chemically synthesized by known methods (such as phosphotriester, phosphite, or phosphoramidite chemistry, using solid phase techniques such as described in EP 266,032 published 4 May 1988, or via deoxynucleoside H-phosphonate intermediates as described by Froehler *et al.*, Nucl. Acids Res., 14: 5399-5407 [1986]). They are then purified on polyacrylamide gels.

The technique of "polymerase chain reaction," or "PCR," as used herein generally refers to a procedure wherein minute amounts of a specific piece of nucleic acid, RNA and/or DNA, are amplified as described in U.S. Pat. No. 4,683,195 issued 28 July 1987. Generally, sequence information from the ends of the region of interest or beyond needs to be available, such that oligonucleotide primers can be designed; these primers will be identical or similar in sequence to opposite strands of the template to be amplified. The 5' terminal nucleotides of the two primers may coincide with the ends of the amplified material. PCR can be used to amplify specific RNA sequences, specific DNA sequences from total genomic DNA, and cDNA transcribed from total cellular RNA, bacteriophage or plasmid sequences, etc. See generally Mullis *et al.*, Cold Spring Harbor Symp. Quant. Biol., 51: 263 (1987); Erlich, ed., PCR Technology, (Stockton Press, NY, 1989). As used herein, PCR is considered to be one, but not the only, example of a nucleic acid polymerase reaction method for amplifying a nucleic acid test sample, comprising the use of a known nucleic acid (DNA or RNA) as a primer and

utilizes a nucleic acid polymerase to amplify or generate a specific piece of nucleic acid or to amplify or generate a specific piece of nucleic acid which is complementary to a particular nucleic acid.

Suitable Methods for Practicing the Invention

Some aspects of this invention include obtaining an import, non-human antibody variable domain, producing a desired humanized antibody sequence and for humanizing an antibody gene sequence are described below. A particularly preferred method of changing a gene sequence, such as gene conversion from a non-human or consensus sequence into a humanized nucleic acid sequence, is the cassette mutagenesis procedure described in Example 1. Additionally, methods are given for obtaining and producing antibodies generally, which apply equally to native non-human antibodies as well as to humanized antibodies.

Generally, the antibodies and antibody variable domains of this invention are conventionally prepared in recombinant cell culture, as described in more detail below. Recombinant synthesis is preferred for reasons of safety and economy, but it is known to prepare peptides by chemical synthesis and to purify them from natural sources; such preparations are included within the definition of antibodies herein.

Molecular Modeling

An integral step in our approach to antibody humanization is construction of computer graphics models of the import and humanized antibodies. These models are used to determine if the six complementarity-determining regions (CDRs) can be successfully transplanted from the import framework to a human one and to determine which framework residues from the import antibody, if any, need to be incorporated into the humanized antibody in order to maintain CDR conformation. In addition, analysis of the sequences of the import and humanized antibodies and reference to the models can help to discern which framework residues are unusual and thereby might be involved in antigen binding or maintenance of proper antibody structure.

All of the humanized antibody models of this invention are based on a single three-dimensional computer graphics structure hereafter referred to as the consensus structure. This consensus structure is a key distinction from the approach of previous workers in the field, who typically begin by selecting a human antibody structure which has an amino acid sequence which is similar to the sequence of their import antibody.

The consensus structure of one embodiment of this invention was built in five steps as described below.

Step 1: Seven Fab X-ray crystal structures from the Brookhaven Protein Data Bank were used (entries 2FB4, 2RHE, 3FAB, and 1REI which are human structures, and 2MCP, 1FBJ, and 2HFL which are murine structures). For each structure, protein mainchain geometry and hydrogen bonding patterns were used to assign each residue to one of three secondary structure types: alpha-helix, beta-strand or other (i.e. non-helix and non-strand). The immunoglobulin residues used in superpositioning and those included in the consensus structure are shown in Table 1.

Table I
Immunoglobulin Residues Used in Superpositioning and Those Included in the Consensus Structure

	$V_L\kappa$ domain							
Ig[a]	2FB4	2RHE	2MCP	3FAB	1FBJ	2HFL	1REI	Consensus[b]
								2-11
	18-24	18-24	19-25	18-24	19-25	19-25	19-25	16-27
	32-37	34-39	39-44	32-37	32-37	32-37	33-38	33-39
								41-49
	60-66	62-68	67-72	53-66	60-65	60-65	61-66	59-77
	69-74	71-76	76-81	69-74	69-74	69-74	70-75	
	84-88	86-90	91-95	84-88	84-88	84-88	85-89	82-91
								101-105
RMS[c]		0.40	0.60	0.53	0.54	0.48	0.50	

	V_H domain					
Ig[a]	2FB4	2MCP	3FAB	1FBJ	2HFL	Consensus[b]
						3-8
	18-25	18-25	18-25	18-25	18-25	17-23
	34-39	34-39	34-39	34-39	34-39	33-41
	46-52	46-52	46-52	46-52	46-52	45-51
	57-61	59-63	56-60	57-61	57-61	57-61
	68-71	70-73	67-70	68-71	68-71	66-71
	78-84	80-86	77-83	78-84	78-84	75-82
	92-99	94-101	91-98	92-99	92-99	88-94
						102-108
RMS[c]		0.43	0.85	0.62	0.91	
RMS[d]	0.91	0.73	0.77	0.92		

T0230

a Four-letter code for Protein Data Bank file.
b Residue numbers for the crystal structures are taken from the Protein Data Bank files. Residue numbers for the consensus structure are according to Kabat et al.
c Root-mean-square deviation in Å for (N,Cα,C) atoms superimposed on 2FB4.
d Root-mean-square deviation in Å for (N,Cα,C) atoms superimposed on 2HFL.

Step 2: Having identified the alpha-helices and beta-strands in each of the seven structures, the structures were superimposed on one another using the INSIGHT computer program (Biosym Technologies, San Diego, CA) as follows: The 2FB4 structure was arbitrarily chosen as the template (or reference) structure. The 2FB4 was held fixed in space and the other six structures rotated and translated in space so that their common secondary structural elements (i.e. alpha-helices and beta-strands) were oriented such that these common elements were as close in position to one another as possible. (This superpositioning was performed using accepted mathematical formulae rather than actually physically moving the structures by hand.)

Step 3: With the seven structures thus superimposed, for each residue in the template (2FB4) Fab one calculates the distance from the template alpha-carbon atom (Cα) to the analogous Cα atom in each of the other six superimposed structures. This results in a table of Cα-Cα distances for each residue position in the sequence. Such a table is necessary in order to determine which residue positions will be included in the consensus model. Generally, if all Cα-Cα distances for a given residue position were $\leq$ 1.0Å, that position was included in the consensus structure. If for a given position only one Fab crystal structure was > 1.0Å, the position was included but the outlying crystal structure was not included in the next step (for this position only). In general, the seven β-strands were included in the consensus structure while some of the loops connecting the β-strands, e.g. complementarity-determining regions (CDRs), were not included in view of Cα divergence.

Step 4: For each residue which was included in the consensus structure after step 3, the average of the coordinates for individual mainchain N, Cα, C, O and Cβ atoms were calculated. Due to the averaging procedure, as well as variation in bond length, bond angle and dihedral angle among the crystal structures, this "average" structure contained some bond lengths and angles which deviated from standard geometry. For purposes of this invention, "standard geometry" is understood to include geometries commonly accepted as typical, such as the compilation of bond lengths and angles from small molecule structures in Weiner, S.J. *et. al., J. Amer. Chem. Soc.*, **106**: 765-784 (1984).

Step 5: In order to correct these deviations, the final step was to subject the "average" structure to 50 cycles of energy minimization (DISCOVER program, Biosym Technologies) using the AMBER (Weiner, S.J. *et. al., J. Amer. Chem. Soc.*, **106**: 765-784 (1984)) parameter set with only the Cα coordinates fixed (i.e. all other atoms are allowed to move) (energy minimization is described below). This allowed any deviant bond lengths and angles to assume a standard (chemically acceptable) geometry. See Table II.

Table II
Average Bond Lengths and Angles for "Average" (Before) and Energy-Minimized Consensus (After 50 Cycles) Structures

	$V_L\kappa$ before (Å)	$V_L\kappa$ after (Å)	V_H before (Å)	V_H after (Å)	Standard Geometry (Å)
N-Cα	1.459(0.012)	1.451(0.004)	1.451(0.023)	1.452(0.004)	1.449
Cα-C	1.515(0.012)	1.523(0.005)	1.507(0.033)	1.542(0.005)	1.522
O=C	1.208(0.062)	1.229(0.003)	1.160(0.177)	1.231(0.003)	1.229
C-N	1.288(0.049)	1.337(0.002)	1.282(0.065)	1.335(0.004)	1.335
Cα-Cβ	1.508(0.026)	1.530(0.002)	1.499(0.039)	1.530(0.002)	1.526
	(°)	(°)	(°)	(°)	(°)
C-N-Cα	123.5(4.2)	123.8(1.1)	125.3(4.6)	124.0(1.1)	121.9
N-Cα-C	110.0(4.0)	109.5(1.9)	110.3(2.8)	109.5(1.6)	110.1
Cα-C-N	116.6(4.0)	116.6(1.2)	117.6(5.2)	116.6(0.8)	116.6
O=C-N	123.1(4.1)	123.4(0.6)	122.2(4.9)	123.3(0.4)	122.9
N-Cα-Cβ	110.3(2.1)	109.8(0.7)	110.6(2.5)	109.8(0.6)	109.5
Cβ-Cα-C	111.4(2.4)	111.1(0.7)	111.2(2.2)	111.1(0.6)	111.1

Values in parentheses are standard deviations. Note that while some bond length and angle averages did not change appreciably after energy-minimization, the corresponding standard deviations are reduced due to deviant geometries assuming standard values after energy-minimization. Standard geometry values are from the AMBER forcefield as implemented in DISCOVER (Biosym Technologies).

The consensus structure might conceivably be dependent upon which crystal structure was chosen as the template on which the others were superimposed. As a test, the entire procedure was repeated using the crystal structure with the worst superposition versus 2FB4, i.e. the 2HFL Fab structure, as the new template (reference). The two consensus structures compare favorably (root-mean-squared deviation of 0.11Å for all N, Cα and C atoms).

Note that the consensus structure only includes mainchain (N, Cα, C, O, Cβ atoms) coordinates for only those residues which are part of a conformation *common* to all seven X-ray crystal structures. For the Fab structures, these include the common β-strands (which comprise two β-sheets) and a few non-CDR loops which connect these β-strands. The consensus structure does *not* include CDRs or sidechains, both of which vary in their conformation among the seven structures. Also, note that the consensus structure includes only the VL and VH domains.

This consensus structure is used as the archetype. It is not particular to any species, and has only the basic shape without side chains. Starting with this consensus structure the model of *any* import, human, or humanized Fab can be constructed as follows. Using the amino acid sequence of the particular antibody VL and VH domains of interest, a computer graphics program (such as INSIGHT, Biosym Technologies) is used to add sidechains and CDRs to the consensus structure. When a sidechain is added, its conformation is chosen on the basis of known Fab crystal structures (see the Background section for publications of such crystal structures) and rotamer libraries (Ponder, J.W. & Richards, F. M., *J. Mol. Biol.* **193**: 775-791 (1987)). The model also is constructed so that the atoms of the sidechain are positioned so as to not collide with other atoms in the Fab.

CDRs are added to the model (now having the backbone plus side chains) as follows. The size (i.e. number of amino acids) of each import CDR is compared to canonical CDR structures tabulated by Chothia *et al., Nature*, **342**:877-883 (1989)) and which were derived from Fab crystals. Each CDR sequence is also reviewed for the presence or absence of certain specific amino acid residues which are identified by Chothia as structurally important: e.g. light chain residues 29 (CDR1) and 95 (CDR3), and heavy chain residues 26, 27, 29 (CDR1) and 55 (CDR2). For light chain CDR2, and heavy chain CDR3, only the size of the CDR is compared to the Chothia canonical structure. If the size and sequence (i.e. inclusion of the specific, structurally important residues as denoted by Chothia *et al.*) of the import CDR agrees in size and has the same structurally important residues as those of a canonical CDR, then the mainchain conformation of the import CDR in the model is taken to be the same as that of the canonical CDR. This means that the import sequence is assigned the structural configuration

of the canonical CDR, which is then incorporated in the evolving model.

However, if no matching canonical CDR can be assigned for the import CDR, then one of two options can be exercised. First, using a program such as INSIGHT (Biosym Technologies), the Brookhaven Protein Data Bank can be searched for loops with a similar size to that of the import CDR and these loops can be evaluated as possible conformations for the import CDR in the model. Minimally, such loops must exhibit a conformation in which no loop atom overlaps with other protein atoms. Second, one can use available programs which calculate possible loop conformations, assuming a given loop size, using methods such as described by Bruccoleri *et al., Nature* **335**: 564-568 (1988).

When all CDRs and sidechains have been added to the consensus structure to give the final model (import, human or humanized), the model is preferably subjected to energy minimization using programs which are available commercially (e.g. DISCOVER, Biosym Technologies). This technique uses complex mathematical formulae to refine the model by performing such tasks as checking that all atoms are within appropriate distances from one another and checking that bond lengths and angles are within chemically acceptable limits.

Models of a humanized, import or human antibody sequence are used in the practice of this invention to understand the impact of selected amino acid residues of the activity of the sequence being modeled. For example, such a model can show residues which may be important in antigen binding, or for maintaining the conformation of the antibody, as discussed in more detail below. Modeling can also be used to explore the potential impact of changing any amino acid residue in the antibody sequence.

Methods for Obtaining a Humanized Antibody Sequence

In the practice of this invention, the first step in humanizing an import antibody is deriving a consensus amino acid sequence into which to incorporate the import sequences. Next a model is generated for these sequences using the methods described above. In certain embodiments of this invention, the consensus human sequences are derived from the most abundant subclasses in the sequence compilation of Kabat et al. (Kabat, E. A. *et al., Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest* (National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, 1987)), namely V_L κ subgroup I and V_H group III, and have the sequences indicated in the definitions above.

While these steps may be taken in different order, typically a structure for the candidate humanized antibody is created by transferring the at least one CDR from the non-human, import sequence into the consensus human structure, after the entire corresponding human

CDR has been removed. The humanized antibody may contain human replacements of the non-human import residues at positions within CDRs as defined by sequence variability (Kabat, E. A. *et al., Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest* (National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, 1987)) or as defined by structural variability (Chothia, C. & Lesk, A. M., *J. Mol. Biol.* **196**:901-917 (1987)). For example, huMAb4D5 contains human replacements of the muMAb4D5 residues at three positions within CDRs as defined by sequence variability (Kabat, E. A. *et al., Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest* (National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, 1987)) but not as defined by structural variability (Chothia, C. & Lesk, A. M., *J. Mol. Biol.* **196**:901-917 (1987)): V_L-CDR1 K24R, V_L-CDR2 R54L and V_L-CDR2 T56S.

Differences between the non-human import and the human consensus framework residues are individually investigated to determine their possible influence on CDR conformation and/or binding to antigen. Investigation of such possible influences is desirably performed through modeling, by examination of the characteristics of the amino acids at particular locations, or determined experimentally through evaluating the effects of substitution or mutagenesis of particular amino acids.

In certain preferred embodiments of this invention, a humanized antibody is made comprising amino acid sequence of an import, non-human antibody and a human antibody, utilizing the steps of:

a. obtaining the amino acid sequences of at least a portion of an import antibody variable domain and of a consensus human variable domain;

b. identifying Complementarity Determining Region (CDR) amino acid sequences in the import and the human variable domain sequences;

c. substituting an import CDR amino acid sequence for the corresponding human CDR amino acid sequence;

d. aligning the amino acid sequences of a Framework Region (FR) of the import antibody and the corresponding FR of the consensus antibody;

e. identifying import antibody FR residues in the aligned FR sequences that are non-homologous to the corresponding consensus antibody residues;

f. determining if the non-homologous import amino acid residue is reasonably expected to have at least one of the following effects:

   1. non-covalently binds antigen directly,

   2. interacts with a CDR; or

   3. participates in the V_L - V_H interface; and

g. for any non-homologous import antibody amino acid residue which is reasonably

expected to have at least one of these effects, substituting that residue for the corresponding amino acid residue in the consensus antibody FR sequence.

Optionally, one determines if any non-homologous residues identified in step (e) are exposed on the surface of the domain or buried within it, and if the residue is exposed but has none of the effects identified in step (f), one may retain the consensus residue.

Additionally, in certain embodiments the corresponding consensus antibody residues identified in step (e) above are selected from the group consisting of 4L, 35L, 36L, 38L, 43L, 44L, 46L, 58L, 62L, 63L, 64L, 65L, 66L, 67L, 68L, 69L, 70L, 71L, 73L, 85L, 87L, 98L, 2H, 4H, 24H, 36H, 37H, 39H, 43H, 45H, 49H, 58H, 60H, 67H, 68H, 69H, 70H, 73H, 74H, 75H, 76H, 78H, 91H, 92H, 93H, and 103H (utilizing the numbering system set forth in Kabat, E. A. *et al.*, *Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest* (National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, 1987)).

In preferred embodiments, the method of this invention comprises the additional steps of searching either or both of the import, non-human and the consensus variable domain sequences for glycosylation sites, determining if the glycosylation is reasonably expected to be important for the desired antigen binding and biological activity of the antibody (i.e., determining if the glycosylation site binds to antigen or changes a side chain of an amino acid residue that binds to antigen, or if the glycosylation enhances or weakens antigen binding, or is important for maintaining antibody affinity). If the import sequence bears the glycosylation site, it is preferred to substitute that site for the corresponding residues in the consensus human sequence if the glycosylation site is reasonably expected to be important. If only the consensus sequence, and not the import, bears the glycosylation site, it is preferred to eliminate that glycosylation site or substitute therefor the corresponding amino acid residues from the import sequence.

Another preferred embodiment of the methods of this invention comprises aligning import antibody and the consensus antibody FR sequences, identifying import antibody FR residues which are non-homologous with the aligned consensus FR sequence, and for each such non-homologous import antibody FR residue, determining if the corresponding consensus antibody residue represents a residue which is highly conserved across all species at that site, and if it is so conserved, preparing a humanized antibody which comprises the consensus antibody amino acid residue at that site.

In certain alternate embodiments, one need not utilize the modeling and evaluation steps described above, and may instead proceed with the steps of obtaining the amino acid sequence of at least a portion of an import, non-human antibody variable domain having a CDR and a FR,

obtaining the amino acid sequence of at least a portion of a consensus human antibody variable domain having a CDR and a FR, substituting the non-human CDR for the human CDR in the consensus human antibody variable domain, and then substituting an amino acid residue for the consensus amino acid residue at at least one of the following sites:

a. (in the FR of the variable domain of the light chain) 4L, 35L, 36L, 38L, 43L, 44L, 58L, 46L, 62L, 63L, 64L, 65L, 66L, 67L, 68L, 69L, 70L, 71L, 73L, 85L, 87L, 98L, or

b. (in the FR of the variable domain of the heavy chain) 2H, 4H, 24H, 36H, 37H, 39H, 43H, 45H, 49H, 58H, 60H, 67H, 68H, 69H, 70H, 73H, 74H, 75H, 76H, 78H, 91H, 92H, 93H, and 103H.

Preferably, the non-CDR residue substituted at the consensus FR site is the residue found at the corresponding location of the non-human antibody. If desired, one may utilize the other method steps described above for determining whether a particular amino acid residue can reasonably be expected to have undesirable effects, and remedying those effects.

If after making a humanized antibody according to the steps above and testing its activity one is not satisfied with the humanized antibody, one preferably reexamines the potential effects of the amino acids at the specific locations recited above. Additionally, it is desirable to reinvestigate any buried residues which are reasonably expected to affect the V_L - V_H interface but may not directly affect CDR conformation. It is also desirable to reevaluate the humanized antibody utilizing the steps of the methods claimed herein.

In certain embodiments of this invention, amino acid residues in the consensus human sequence are substituted for by other amino acid residues. In preferred embodiments, residues from a particular non-human import sequence are substituted, however there are circumstances where it is desired to evaluate the effects of other amino acids. For example, if after making a humanized antibody according to the steps above and testing its activity one is not satisfied with the humanized antibody, one may compare the sequences of other classes or subgroups of human antibodies, or classes or subgroups of antibodies from the particular non-human species, and determine which other amino acid side chains and amino acid residues are found at particular locations and substituting such other residues.

Antibodies

Certain aspects of this invention are directed to natural antibodies and to monoclonal antibodies, as illustrated in the Examples below and by antibody hybridomas deposited with the ATCC (as described below). Thus, the references throughout this description to the use

of monoclonal antibodies are intended to include the use of natural or native antibodies as well as humanized and chimeric antibodies. As used herein, the term "antibody" includes the antibody variable domain and other separable antibody domains unless specifically excluded.

In accordance with certain aspects of this invention, antibodies to be humanized (import antibodies) are isolated from continuous hybrid cell lines formed by the fusion of antigen-primed immune lymphocytes with myeloma cells.

In certain embodiments, the antibodies of this invention are obtained by routine screening. Polyclonal antibodies to an antigen generally are raised in animals by multiple subcutaneous (sc) or intraperitoneal (ip) injections of the antigen and an adjuvant. It may be useful to conjugate the antigen or a fragment containing the target amino acid sequence to a protein that is immunogenic in the species to be immunized, e.g., keyhole limpet hemocyanin, serum albumin, bovine thyroglobulin, or soybean trypsin inhibitor using a bifunctional or derivatizing agent, for example, maleimidobenzoyl sulfosuccinimide ester (conjugation through cysteine residues), N-hydroxysuccinimide (through lysine residues), glutaraldehyde, succinic anhydride, $SOCl_2$, or $R^1N = C = NR$, where R and R^1 are different alkyl groups.

The route and schedule of the host animal or cultured antibody-producing cells therefrom are generally in keeping with established and conventional techniques for antibody stimulation and production. While mice are frequently employed as the test model, it is contemplated that any mammalian subject including human subjects or antibody-producing cells obtained therefrom can be manipulated according to the processes of this invention to serve as the basis for production of mammalian, including human, hybrid cell lines.

Animals are typically immunized against the immunogenic conjugates or derivatives by combining 1 mg or 1 μg of conjugate (for rabbits or mice, respectively) with 3 volumes of Freund's complete adjuvant and injecting the solution intradermally at multiple sites. One month later the animals are boosted with 1/5 to 1/10 the original amount of conjugate in Freund's complete adjuvant (or other suitable adjuvant) by subcutaneous injection at multiple sites. 7 to 14 days later animals are bled and the serum is assayed for antigen titer. Animals are boosted until the titer plateaus. Preferably, the animal is boosted with the conjugate of the same antigen, but conjugated to a different protein and/or through a different cross-linking agent. Conjugates also can be made in recombinant cell culture as protein fusions. Also, aggregating agents such as alum are used to enhance the immune response.

After immunization, monoclonal antibodies are prepared by recovering immune lymphoid cells--typically spleen cells or lymphocytes from lymph node tissue--from immunized animals and immortalizing the cells in conventional fashion, e.g. by fusion with myeloma cells or by

Epstein-Barr (EB)-virus transformation and screening for clones expressing the desired antibody. The hybridoma technique described originally by Kohler and Milstein, *Eur. J. Immunol.* 6:511 (1976) has been widely applied to produce hybrid cell lines that secrete high levels of monoclonal antibodies against many specific antigens.

It is possible to fuse cells of one species with another. However, it is preferable that the source of the immunized antibody producing cells and the myeloma be from the same species.

The hybrid cell lines can be maintained in culture *in vitro* in cell culture media. The cell lines of this invention can be selected and/or maintained in a composition comprising the continuous cell line in hypoxanthine-aminopterin thymidine (HAT) medium. In fact, once the hybridoma cell line is established, it can be maintained on a variety of nutritionally adequate media. Moreover, the hybrid cell lines can be stored and preserved in any number of conventional ways, including freezing and storage under liquid nitrogen. Frozen cell lines can be revived and cultured indefinitely with resumed synthesis and secretion of monoclonal antibody. The secreted antibody is recovered from tissue culture supernatant by conventional methods such as precipitation, Ion exchange chromatography, affinity chromatography, or the like. The antibodies described herein are also recovered from hybridoma cell cultures by conventional methods for purification of IgG or IgM as the case may be that heretofore have been used to purify these immunoglobulins from pooled plasma, e.g. ethanol or polyethylene glycol precipitation procedures. The purified antibodies are sterile filtered, and optionally are conjugated to a detectable marker such as an enzyme or spin label for use in diagnostic assays of the antigen in test samples.

While routinely rodent monoclonal antibodies are used as the source of the import antibody, the invention is not limited to any species. Additionally, techniques developed for the production of chimeric antibodies (Morrison *et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.*, 81:6851 (1984); Neuberger *et al., Nature* 312:604 (1984); Takeda *et al., Nature* 314:452 (1985)) by splicing the genes from a mouse antibody molecule of appropriate antigen specificity together with genes from a human antibody molecule of appropriate biological activity (such as ability to activate human complement and mediate ADCC) can be used; such antibodies are within the scope of this invention.

Techniques for creating recombinant DNA versions of the antigen-binding regions of antibody molecules (known as Fab fragments) which bypass the generation of monoclonal antibodies are encompassed within the practice of this invention. One extracts antibody-specific messenger RNA molecules from immune system cells taken from an immunized animal,

transcribes these into complementary DNA (cDNA), and clones the cDNA into a bacterial expressions system. One example of such a technique suitable for the practice of this invention was developed by researchers at Scripps/Stratagene, and incorporates a proprietary bacteriophage lambda vector system which contains a leader sequence that causes the expressed Fab protein to migrate to the periplasmic space (between the bacterial cell membrane and the cell wall) or to be secreted. One can rapidly generate and screen great numbers of functional FAb fragments for those which bind the antigen. Such FAb fragments with specificity for the antigen are specifically encompassed within the term "antibody" as it is defined, discussed, and claimed herein.

Amino Acid Sequence Variants

Amino acid sequence variants of the antibodies and polypeptides of this invention (referred to in herein as the target polypeptide) are prepared by introducing appropriate nucleotide changes into the DNA encoding the target polypeptide, or by *in vitro* synthesis of the desired target polypeptide. Such variants include, for example, humanized variants of non-human antibodies, as well as deletions from, or insertions or substitutions of, residues within particular amino acid sequences. Any combination of deletion, insertion, and substitution can be made to arrive at the final construct, provided that the final construct possesses the desired characteristics. The amino acid changes also may alter post-translational processes of the target polypeptide, such as changing the number or position of glycosylation sites, altering any membrane anchoring characteristics, and/or altering the intra-cellular location of the target polypeptide by inserting, deleting, or otherwise affecting any leader sequence of the native target polypeptide.

In designing amino acid sequence variants of target polypeptides, the location of the mutation site and the nature of the mutation will depend on the target polypeptide characteristic(s) to be modified. The sites for mutation can be modified individually or in series, e.g., by (1) substituting first with conservative amino acid choices and then with more radical selections depending upon the results achieved, (2) deleting the target residue, or (3) inserting residues of the same or a different class adjacent to the located site, or combinations of options 1-3. In certain embodiments, these choices are guided by the methods for creating humanized sequences set forth above.

A useful method for identification of certain residues or regions of the target polypeptide that are preferred locations for mutagenesis is called "alanine scanning mutagenesis" as described by Cunningham and Wells (Science, 244: 1081-1085 [1989]).

Here, a residue or group of target residues are identified (e.g., charged residues such as arg, asp, his, lys, and glu) and replaced by a neutral or negatively charged amino acid (most preferably alanine or polyalanine) to affect the interaction of the amino acids with the surrounding aqueous environment in or outside the cell. Those domains demonstrating functional sensitivity to the substitutions then are refined by introducing further or other variants at or for the sites of substitution. Thus, while the site for introducing an amino acid sequence variation is predetermined, the nature of the mutation *per se* need not be predetermined. For example, to optimize the performance of a mutation at a given site, ala scanning or random mutagenesis may be conducted at the target codon or region and the expressed target polypeptide variants are screened for the optimal combination of desired activity.

There are two principal variables in the construction of amino acid sequence variants: the location of the mutation site and the nature of the mutation. In general, the location and nature of the mutation chosen will depend upon the target polypeptide characteristic to be modified.

Amino acid sequence deletions of antibodies are generally not preferred, as maintaining the generally configuration of an antibody is believed to be necessary for its activity. Any deletions will be selected so as to preserve the structure of the target antibody.

Amino acid sequence insertions include amino- and/or carboxyl-terminal fusions ranging in length from one residue to polypeptides containing a hundred or more residues, as well as intrasequence insertions of single or multiple amino acid residues. Intrasequence insertions (i.e., insertions within the target polypeptide sequence) may range generally from about 1 to 10 residues, more preferably 1 to 5, most preferably 1 to 3. Examples of terminal insertions include the target polypeptide with an N-terminal methionyl residue, an artifact of the direct expression of target polypeptide in bacterial recombinant cell culture, and fusion of a heterologous N-terminal signal sequence to the N-terminus of the target polypeptide molecule to facilitate the secretion of the mature target polypeptide from recombinant host cells. Such signal sequences generally will be obtained from, and thus homologous to, the intended host cell species. Suitable sequences include STII or lpp for *E. coli*, alpha factor for yeast, and viral signals such as herpes gD for mammalian cells.

Other insertional variants of the target polypeptide include the fusion to the N- or C-terminus of the target polypeptide of immunogenic polypeptides, e.g., bacterial polypeptides such as beta-lactamase or an enzyme encoded by the *E. coli trp* locus, or yeast protein, and C-terminal fusions with proteins having a long half-life such as immunoglobulin constant

regions (or other immunoglobulin regions), albumin, or ferritin, as described in WO 89/02922 published 6 April 1989.

Another group of variants are amino acid substitution variants. These variants have at least one amino acid residue in the target polypeptide molecule removed and a different residue inserted in its place. The sites of greatest interest for substitutional mutagenesis include sites identified as the active site(s) of the target polypeptide, and sites where the amino acids found in the target polypeptide from various species are substantially different in terms of side-chain bulk, charge, and/or hydrophobicity. Other sites for substitution are described infra, considering the effect of the substitution of the antigen binding, affinity and other characteristics of a particular target antibody.

Other sites of interest are those in which particular residues of the target polypeptides obtained from various species are identical. These positions may be important for the biological activity of the target polypeptide. These sites, especially those falling within a sequence of at least three other identically conserved sites, are substituted in a relatively conservative manner. If such substitutions result in a change in biological activity, then other changes are introduced and the products screened until the desired effect is obtained.

Substantial modifications in function or immunological identity of the target polypeptide are accomplished by selecting substitutions that differ significantly in their effect on maintaining (a) the structure of the polypeptide backbone in the area of the substitution, for example, as a sheet or helical conformation, (b) the charge or hydrophobicity of the molecule at the target site, or (c) the bulk of the side chain. Naturally occurring residues are divided into groups based on common side chain properties:

(1) hydrophobic: norleucine, met, ala, val, leu, ile;

(2) neutral hydrophilic: cys, ser, thr;

(3) acidic: asp, glu;

(4) basic: asn, gln, his, lys, arg;

(5) residues that influence chain orientation: gly, pro; and

(6) aromatic: trp, tyr, phe.

Non-conservative substitutions will entail exchanging a member of one of these classes for another. Such substituted residues may be introduced into regions of the target polypeptide that are homologous with other antibodies of the same class or subclass, or, more preferably, into the non-homologous regions of the molecule.

Any cysteine residues not involved in maintaining the proper conformation of target polypeptide also may be substituted, generally with serine, to improve the oxidative stability

of the molecule and prevent aberrant crosslinking.

DNA encoding amino acid sequence variants of the target polypeptide is prepared by a variety of methods known in the art. These methods include, but are not limited to, isolation from a natural source (in the case of naturally occurring amino acid sequence variants) or preparation by oligonucleotide-mediated (or site-directed) mutagenesis, PCR mutagenesis, and cassette mutagenesis of an earlier prepared variant or a non-variant version of the target polypeptide. A particularly preferred method of gene conversion mutagenesis is described below in Example 1. These techniques may utilized target polypeptide nucleic acid (DNA or RNA), or nucleic acid complementary to the target polypeptide nucleic acid.

Oligonucleotide-mediated mutagenesis is a preferred method for preparing substitution, deletion, and insertion variants of target polypeptide DNA. This technique is well known in the art as described by Adelman *et al.*, DNA, 2: 183 (1983). Briefly, the target polypeptide DNA is altered by hybridizing an oligonucleotide encoding the desired mutation to a DNA template, where the template is the single-stranded form of a plasmid or bacteriophage containing the unaltered or native DNA sequence of the target polypeptide. After hybridization, a DNA polymerase is used to synthesize an entire second complementary strand of the template that will thus incorporate the oligonucleotide primer, and will code for the selected alteration in the target polypeptide DNA.

Generally, oligonucleotides of at least 25 nucleotides in length are used. An optimal oligonucleotide will have 12 to 15 nucleotides that are completely complementary to the template on either side of the nucleotide(s) coding for the mutation. This ensures that the oligonucleotide will hybridize properly to the single-stranded DNA template molecule. The oligonucleotides are readily synthesized using techniques known in the art such as that described by Crea *et al.* (Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 75: 5765 [1978]).

Single-stranded DNA template may also be generated by denaturing double-stranded plasmid (or other) DNA using standard techniques.

For alteration of the native DNA sequence (to generate amino acid sequence variants, for example), the oligonucleotide is hybridized to the single-stranded template under suitable hybridization conditions. A DNA polymerizing enzyme, usually the Klenow fragment of DNA polymerase I, is then added to synthesize the complementary strand of the template using the oligonucleotide as a primer for synthesis. A heteroduplex molecule is thus formed such that one strand of DNA encodes the mutated form of the target polypeptide, and the other strand (the original template) encodes the native, unaltered sequence of the target polypeptide. This heteroduplex molecule is then transformed into a suitable host cell, usually a prokaryote such

as *E. coli* JM101. After the cells are grown, they are plated onto agarose plates and screened using the oligonucleotide primer radiolabeled with 32-phosphate to identify the bacterial colonies that contain the mutated DNA. The mutated region is then removed and placed in an appropriate vector for protein production, generally an expression vector of the type typically employed for transformation of an appropriate host.

The method described immediately above may be modified such that a homoduplex molecule is created wherein both strands of the plasmid contain the mutation(s). The modifications are as follows: The single-stranded oligonucleotide is annealed to the single-stranded template as described above. A mixture of three deoxyribonucleotides, deoxyriboadenosine (dATP), deoxyriboguanosine (dGTP), and deoxyribothymidine (dTTP), is combined with a modified thio-deoxyribocytosine called dCTP-(aS) (which can be obtained from Amersham Corporation). This mixture is added to the template-oligonucleotide complex. Upon addition of DNA polymerase to this mixture, a strand of DNA identical to the template except for the mutated bases is generated. In addition, this new strand of DNA will contain dCTP-(aS) instead of dCTP, which serves to protect it from restriction endonuclease digestion.

After the template strand of the double-stranded heteroduplex is nicked with an appropriate restriction enzyme, the template strand can be digested with ExoIII nuclease or another appropriate nuclease past the region that contains the site(s) to be mutagenized. The reaction is then stopped to leave a molecule that is only partially single-stranded. A complete double-stranded DNA homoduplex is then formed using DNA polymerase in the presence of all four deoxyribonucleotide triphosphates, ATP, and DNA ligase. This homoduplex molecule can then be transformed into a suitable host cell such as *E. coli* JM101, as described above.

DNA encoding target polypeptide variants with more than one amino acid to be substituted may be generated in one of several ways. If the amino acids are located close together in the polypeptide chain, they may be mutated simultaneously using one oligonucleotide that codes for all of the desired amino acid substitutions. If, however, the amino acids are located some distance from each other (separated by more than about ten amino acids), it is more difficult to generate a single oligonucleotide that encodes all of the desired changes. Instead, one of two alternative methods may be employed.

In the first method, a separate oligonucleotide is generated for each amino acid to be substituted. The oligonucleotides are then annealed to the single-stranded template DNA simultaneously, and the second strand of DNA that is synthesized from the template will encode all of the desired amino acid substitutions.

The alternative method involves two or more rounds of mutagenesis to produce the desired mutant. The first round is as described for the single mutants: wild-type DNA is used for the template, an oligonucleotide encoding the first desired amino acid substitution(s) is annealed to this template, and the heteroduplex DNA molecule is then generated. The second round of mutagenesis utilizes the mutated DNA produced in the first round of mutagenesis as the template. Thus, this template already contains one or more mutations. The oligonucleotide encoding the additional desired amino acid substitution(s) is then annealed to this template, and the resulting strand of DNA now encodes mutations from both the first and second rounds of mutagenesis. This resultant DNA can be used as a template in a third round of mutagenesis, and so on.

PCR mutagenesis is also suitable for making amino acid variants of target polypeptide. While the following discussion refers to DNA, it is understood that the technique also finds application with RNA. The PCR technique generally refers to the following procedure (see Erlich, *supra*, the chapter by R. Higuchi, p. 61-70): When small amounts of template DNA are used as starting material in a PCR, primers that differ slightly in sequence from the corresponding region in a template DNA can be used to generate relatively large quantities of a specific DNA fragment that differs from the template sequence only at the positions where the primers differ from the template. For introduction of a mutation into a plasmid DNA, one of the primers is designed to overlap the position of the mutation and to contain the mutation; the sequence of the other primer must be identical to a stretch of sequence of the opposite strand of the plasmid, but this sequence can be located anywhere along the plasmid DNA. It is preferred, however, that the sequence of the second primer is located within 200 nucleotides from that of the first, such that in the end the entire amplified region of DNA bounded by the primers can be easily sequenced. PCR amplification using a primer pair like the one just described results in a population of DNA fragments that differ at the position of the mutation specified by the primer, and possibly at other positions, as template copying is somewhat error-prone.

If the ratio of template to product material is extremely low, the vast majority of product DNA fragments incorporate the desired mutation(s). This product material is used to replace the corresponding region in the plasmid that served as PCR template using standard DNA technology. Mutations at separate positions can be introduced simultaneously by either using a mutant second primer, or performing a second PCR with different mutant primers and ligating the two resulting PCR fragments simultaneously to the vector fragment in a three (or more)-part ligation.

In a specific example of PCR mutagenesis, template plasmid DNA (1 μg) is linearized by digestion with a restriction endonuclease that has a unique recognition site in the plasmid DNA outside of the region to be amplified. Of this material, 100 ng is added to a PCR mixture containing PCR buffer, which contains the four deoxynucleotide tri-phosphates and is included in the GeneAmp® kits (obtained from Perkin-Elmer Cetus, Norwalk, CT and Emeryville, CA), and 25 pmole of each oligonucleotide primer, to a final volume of 50 μl. The reaction mixture is overlayed with 35 μl mineral oil. The reaction is denatured for 5 minutes at 100°C, placed briefly on ice, and then 1 μl *Thermus aquaticus (Taq)* DNA polymerase (5 units/μl, purchased from Perkin-Elmer Cetus, Norwalk, CT and Emeryville, CA) is added below the mineral oil layer. The reaction mixture is then inserted into a DNA Thermal Cycler (purchased from Perkin-Elmer Cetus) programmed as follows: 2 min. at 55°C, then 30 sec. at 72°C, then 19 cycles of the following: 30 sec. at 94°C, 30 sec. at 55°C, and 30 sec. at 72°C.

At the end of the program, the reaction vial is removed from the thermal cycler and the aqueous phase transferred to a new vial, extracted with phenol/chloroform (50:50:vol), and ethanol precipitated, and the DNA is recovered by standard procedures. This material is subsequently subjected to the appropriate treatments for insertion into a vector.

Another method for preparing variants, cassette mutagenesis, is based on the technique described by Wells *et al.* (Gene, 34: 315 [1985]). The starting material is the plasmid (or other vector) comprising the target polypeptide DNA to be mutated. The codon(s) in the target polypeptide DNA to be mutated are identified. There must be a unique restriction endonuclease site on each side of the identified mutation site(s). If no such restriction sites exist, they may be generated using the above-described oligonucleotide-mediated mutagenesis method to introduce them at appropriate locations in the target polypeptide DNA. After the restriction sites have been introduced into the plasmid, the plasmid is cut at these sites to linearize it. A double-stranded oligonucleotide encoding the sequence of the DNA between the restriction sites but containing the desired mutation(s) is synthesized using standard procedures. The two strands are synthesized separately and then hybridized together using standard techniques. This double-stranded oligonucleotide is referred to as the cassette. This cassette is designed to have 3' and 5' ends that are compatible with the ends of the linearized plasmid, such that it can be directly ligated to the plasmid. This plasmid now contains the mutated target polypeptide DNA sequence.

Insertion of DNA into a Cloning Vehicle

The cDNA or genomic DNA encoding the target polypeptide is inserted into a replicable

vector for further cloning (amplification of the DNA) or for expression. Many vectors are available, and selection of the appropriate vector will depend on 1) whether it is to be used for DNA amplification or for DNA expression, 2) the size of the DNA to be inserted into the vector, and 3) the host cell to be transformed with the vector. Each vector contains various components depending on its function (amplification of DNA or expression of DNA) and the host cell for which it is compatible. The vector components generally include, but are not limited to, one or more of the following: a signal sequence, an origin of replication, one or more marker genes, an enhancer element, a promoter, and a transcription termination sequence.

(a) Signal Sequence Component

In general, the signal sequence may be a component of the vector, or it may be a part of the target polypeptide DNA that is inserted into the vector.

The target polypeptides of this invention may be expressed not only directly, but also as a fusion with a heterologous polypeptide, preferably a signal sequence or other polypeptide having a specific cleavage site at the N-terminus of the mature protein or polypeptide. In general, the signal sequence may be a component of the vector, or it may be a part of the target polypeptide DNA that is inserted into the vector. Included within the scope of this invention are target polypeptides with any native signal sequence deleted and replaced with a heterologous signal sequence. The heterologous signal sequence selected should be one that is recognized and processed (i.e. cleaved by a signal peptidase) by the host cell. For prokaryotic host cells that do not recognize and process the native target polypeptide signal sequence, the signal sequence is substituted by a prokaryotic signal sequence selected, for example, from the group of the alkaline phosphatase, penicillinase, lpp, or heat-stable enterotoxin II leaders. For yeast secretion the native target polypeptide signal sequence may be substituted by the yeast invertase, alpha factor, or acid phosphatase leaders. In mammalian cell expression the native signal sequence is satisfactory, although other mammalian signal sequences may be suitable.

(b) Origin of Replication Component

Both expression and cloning vectors contain a nucleic acid sequence that enables the vector to replicate in one or more selected host cells. Generally, in cloning vectors this sequence is one that enables the vector to replicate independently of the host chromosomal

DNA, and includes origins of replication or autonomously replicating sequences. Such sequences are well known for a variety of bacteria, yeast, and viruses. The origin of replication from the plasmid pBR322 is suitable for most Gram-negative bacteria, the 2μ plasmid origin is suitable for yeast, and various viral origins (SV40, polyoma, adenovirus, VSV or BPV) are useful for cloning vectors in mammalian cells. Generally, the origin of replication component is not needed for mammalian expression vectors (the SV40 origin may typically be used only because it contains the early promoter).

Most expression vectors are "shuttle" vectors, i.e. they are capable of replication in at least one class of organisms but can be transfected into another organism for expression. For example, a vector is cloned in *E. coli* and then the same vector is transfected into yeast or mammalian cells for expression even though it is not capable of replicating independently of the host cell chromosome.

DNA may also be amplified by insertion into the host genome. This is readily accomplished using *Bacillus* species as hosts, for example, by including in the vector a DNA sequence that is complementary to a sequence found in *Bacillus* genomic DNA. Transfection of *Bacillus* with this vector results in homologous recombination with the genome and insertion of the target polypeptide DNA. However, the recovery of genomic DNA encoding the target polypeptide is more complex than that of an exogenously replicated vector because restriction enzyme digestion is required to excise the target polypeptide DNA.

(c) Selection Gene Component

Expression and cloning vectors should contain a selection gene, also termed a selectable marker. This gene encodes a protein necessary for the survival or growth of transformed host cells grown in a selective culture medium. Host cells not transformed with the vector containing the selection gene will not survive in the culture medium. Typical selection genes encode proteins that (a) confer resistance to antibiotics or other toxins, e.g. ampicillin, neomycin, methotrexate, or tetracycline, (b) complement auxotrophic deficiencies, or (c) supply critical nutrients not available from complex media, e.g. the gene encoding D-alanine racemase for *Bacilli*.

One example of a selection scheme utilizes a drug to arrest growth of a host cell. Those cells that are successfully transformed with a heterologous gene express a protein conferring drug resistance and thus survive the selection regimen. Examples of such dominant selection use the drugs neomycin (Southern *et al.*, J. Molec. Appl. Genet., 1: 327 [1982]),

mycophenolic acid (Mulligan *et al.*, Science, 209: 1422 [1980]) or hygromycin (Sugden *et al.*, Mol. Cell. Biol., 5: 410-413 [1985]). The three examples given above employ bacterial genes under eukaryotic control to convey resistance to the appropriate drug G418 or neomycin (geneticin), xgpt (mycophenolic acid), or hygromycin, respectively.

Another example of suitable selectable markers for mammalian cells are those that enable the identification of cells competent to take up the target polypeptide nucleic acid, such as dihydrofolate reductase (DHFR) or thymidine kinase. The mammalian cell transformants are placed under selection pressure which only the transformants are uniquely adapted to survive by virtue of having taken up the marker. Selection pressure is imposed by culturing the transformants under conditions in which the concentration of selection agent in the medium is successively changed, thereby leading to amplification of both the selection gene and the DNA that encodes the target polypeptide. Amplification is the process by which genes in greater demand for the production of a protein critical for growth are reiterated in tandem within the chromosomes of successive generations of recombinant cells. Increased quantities of the target polypeptide are synthesized from the amplified DNA.

For example, cells transformed with the DHFR selection gene are first identified by culturing all of the transformants in a culture medium that contains methotrexate (Mtx), a competitive antagonist of DHFR. An appropriate host cell when wild-type DHFR is employed is the Chinese hamster ovary (CHO) cell line deficient in DHFR activity, prepared and propagated as described by Urlaub and Chasin, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 77: 4216 [1980]. The transformed cells are then exposed to increased levels of methotrexate. This leads to the synthesis of multiple copies of the DHFR gene, and, concomitantly, multiple copies of other DNA comprising the expression vectors, such as the DNA encoding the target polypeptide. This amplification technique can be used with any otherwise suitable host, e.g., ATCC No. CCL61 CHO-K1, notwithstanding the presence of endogenous DHFR if, for example, a mutant DHFR gene that is highly resistant to Mtx is employed (EP 117,060). Alternatively, host cells (particularly wild-type hosts that contain endogenous DHFR) transformed or co-transformed with DNA sequences encoding the target polypeptide, wild-type DHFR protein, and another selectable marker such as aminoglycoside 3' phosphotransferase (APH) can be selected by cell growth in medium containing a selection agent for the selectable marker such as an aminoglycosidic antibiotic, e.g., kanamycin, neomycin, or G418. See U.S. Pat. No. 4,965,199.

A suitable selection gene for use in yeast is the *trp*1 gene present in the yeast plasmid YRp7 (Stinchcomb *et al.*, Nature, 282: 39 [1979]; Kingsman *et al.*, Gene, 7: 141 [1979]; or

Tschemper *et al.*, Gene, 10: 157 [1980]). The *trp*1 gene provides a selection marker for a mutant strain of yeast lacking the ability to grow in tryptophan, for example, ATCC No. 44076 or PEP4-1 (Jones, Genetics, 85: 12 [1977]). The presence of the trp1 lesion in the yeast host cell genome then provides an effective environment for detecting transformation by growth in the absence of tryptophan. Similarly, *Leu*2-deficient yeast strains (ATCC 20,622 or 38,626) are complemented by known plasmids bearing the *Leu*2 gene.

(d) Promoter Component

Expression and cloning vectors usually contain a promoter that is recognized by the host organism and is operably linked to the target polypeptide nucleic acid. Promoters are untranslated sequences located upstream (5') to the start codon of a structural gene (generally within about 100 to 1000 bp) that control the transcription and translation of a particular nucleic acid sequence, such as that encoding the target polypeptide, to which they are operably linked. Such promoters typically fall into two classes, inducible and constitutive. Inducible promoters are promoters that initiate increased levels of transcription from DNA under their control in response to some change in culture conditions, e.g. the presence or absence of a nutrient or a change in temperature. At this time a large number of promoters recognized by a variety of potential host cells are well known. These promoters are operably linked to DNA encoding the target polypeptide by removing the promoter from the source DNA by restriction enzyme digestion and inserting the isolated promoter sequence into the vector. Both the native target polypeptide promoter sequence and many heterologous promoters may be used to direct amplification and/or expression of the target polypeptide DNA. However, heterologous promoters are preferred, as they generally permit greater transcription and higher yields of expressed target polypeptide as compared to the native target polypeptide promoter.

Promoters suitable for use with prokaryotic hosts include the β-lactamase and lactose promoter systems (Chang *et al.*, Nature, 275: 615 [1978]; and Goeddel *et al.*, Nature, 281: 544 [1979]), alkaline phosphatase, a tryptophan (trp) promoter system (Goeddel, Nucleic Acids Res., 8: 4057 [1980] and EP 36,776) and hybrid promoters such as the tac promoter (deBoer *et al.*, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 80: 21-25 [1983]). However, other known bacterial promoters are suitable. Their nucleotide sequences have been published, thereby enabling a skilled worker operably to ligate them to DNA encoding the target polypeptide (Siebenlist *et al.*, Cell, 20: 269 [1980]) using linkers or adaptors to supply any required restriction sites. Promoters for use in bacterial systems also generally will contain a Shine-Dalgarno (S.D.)

sequence operably linked to the DNA encoding the target polypeptide.

Suitable promoting sequences for use with yeast hosts include the promoters for 3-phosphoglycerate kinase (Hitzeman *et al.*, J. Biol. Chem., 255: 2073 [1980]) or other glycolytic enzymes (Hess *et al.*, J. Adv. Enzyme Reg., 7: 149 [1968]; and Holland, Biochemistry, 17: 4900 [1978]), such as enolase, glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase, hexokinase, pyruvate decarboxylase, phosphofructokinase, glucose-6-phosphate isomerase, 3-phosphoglycerate mutase, pyruvate kinase, triosephosphate isomerase, phosphoglucose isomerase, and glucokinase.

Other yeast promoters, which are inducible promoters having the additional advantage of transcription controlled by growth conditions, are the promoter regions for alcohol dehydrogenase 2, isocytochrome C, acid phosphatase, degradative enzymes associated with nitrogen metabolism, metallothionein, glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase, and enzymes responsible for maltose and galactose utilization. Suitable vectors and promoters for use in yeast expression are further described in Hitzeman *et al.*, EP 73,657A. Yeast enhancers also are advantageously used with yeast promoters.

Promoter sequences are known for eukaryotes. Virtually all eukaryotic genes have an AT-rich region located approximately 25 to 30 bases upstream from the site where transcription is initiated. Another sequence found 70 to 80 bases upstream from the start of transcription of many genes is a CXCAAT region where X may be any nucleotide. At the 3' end of most eukaryotic genes is an AATAAA sequence that may be the signal for addition of the poly A tail to the 3' end of the coding sequence. All of these sequences are suitably inserted into mammalian expression vectors.

Target polypeptide transcription from vectors in mammalian host cells is controlled by promoters obtained from the genomes of viruses such as polyoma virus, fowlpox virus (UK 2,211,504 published 5 July 1989), adenovirus (such as Adenovirus 2), bovine papilloma virus, avian sarcoma virus, cytomegalovirus, a retrovirus, hepatitis-B virus and most preferably Simian Virus 40 (SV40), from heterologous mammalian promoters, e.g. the actin promoter or an immunoglobulin promoter, from heat-shock promoters, and from the promoter normally associated with the target polypeptide sequence, provided such promoters are compatible with the host cell systems.

The early and late promoters of the SV40 virus are conveniently obtained as an SV40 restriction fragment that also contains the SV40 viral origin of replication. Fiers *et al.*, Nature, 273:113 (1978); Mulligan and Berg, Science, 209: 1422-1427 (1980); Pavlakis *et al.*, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 78: 7398-7402 (1981). The immediate early promoter of the human

cytomegalovirus is conveniently obtained as a HindIII E restriction fragment. Greenaway *et al.*, Gene, 18: 355-360 (1982). A system for expressing DNA in mammalian hosts using the bovine papilloma virus as a vector is disclosed in U.S. 4,419,446. A modification of this system is described in U.S. 4,601,978. See also Gray *et al.*, Nature, 295: 503-508 (1982) on expressing cDNA encoding immune interferon in monkey cells; , Reyes *et al.*, Nature, 297: 598-601 (1982) on expression of human β-interferon cDNA in mouse cells under the control of a thymidine kinase promoter from herpes simplex virus, Canaani and Berg, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 79: 5166-5170 (1982) on expression of the human interferon β1 gene in cultured mouse and rabbit cells, and Gorman *et al.*, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 79: 6777-6781 (1982) on expression of bacterial CAT sequences in CV-1 monkey kidney cells, chicken embryo fibroblasts, Chinese hamster ovary cells, HeLa cells, and mouse NIH-3T3 cells using the Rous sarcoma virus long terminal repeat as a promoter.

(e) Enhancer Element Component

Transcription of DNA encoding the target polypeptide of this invention by higher eukaryotes is often increased by inserting an enhancer sequence into the vector. Enhancers are cis-acting elements of DNA, usually about from 10-300 bp, that act on a promoter to increase its transcription. Enhancers are relatively orientation and position independent having been found 5' (Laimins *et al.*, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 78: 993 [1981]) and 3' (Lusky *et al.*, Mol. Cell Bio., 3: 1108 [1983]) to the transcription unit, within an intron (Banerji *et al.*, Cell, 33: 729 [1983]) as well as within the coding sequence itself (Osborne *et al.*, Mol. Cell Bio., 4: 1293 [1984]). Many enhancer sequences are now known from mammalian genes (globin, elastase, albumin, α-fetoprotein and insulin). Typically, however, one will use an enhancer from a eukaryotic cell virus. Examples include the SV40 enhancer on the late side of the replication origin (bp 100-270), the cytomegalovirus early promoter enhancer, the polyoma enhancer on the late side of the replication origin, and adenovirus enhancers. See also Yaniv, Nature, 297: 17-18 (1982) on enhancing elements for activation of eukaryotic promoters. The enhancer may be spliced into the vector at a position 5' or 3' to the target polypeptide DNA, but is preferably located at a site 5' from the promoter.

(f) Transcription Termination Component

Expression vectors used in eukaryotic host cells (yeast, fungi, insect, plant, animal,

human, or nucleated cells from other multicellular organisms) will also contain sequences necessary for the termination of transcription and for stabilizing the mRNA. Such sequences are commonly available from the 5' and, occasionally 3' untranslated regions of eukaryotic or viral DNAs or cDNAs. These regions contain nucleotide segments transcribed as polyadenylated fragments in the untranslated portion of the mRNA encoding the target polypeptide. The 3' untranslated regions also include transcription termination sites.

Construction of suitable vectors containing one or more of the above listed components the desired coding and control sequences employs standard ligation techniques. Isolated plasmids or DNA fragments are cleaved, tailored, and religated in the form desired to generate the plasmids required.

For analysis to confirm correct sequences in plasmids constructed, the ligation mixtures are used to transform *E. coli* K12 strain 294 (ATCC 31,446) and successful transformants selected by ampicillin or tetracycline resistance where appropriate. Plasmids from the transformants are prepared, analyzed by restriction endonuclease digestion, and/or sequenced by the method of Messing *et al.*, Nucleic Acids Res., 9: 309 (1981) or by the method of Maxam *et al.*, Methods in Enzymology, 65: 499 (1980).

Particularly useful in the practice of this invention are expression vectors that provide for the transient expression in mammalian cells of DNA encoding the target polypeptide. In general, transient expression involves the use of an expression vector that is able to replicate efficiently in a host cell, such that the host cell accumulates many copies of the expression vector and, in turn, synthesizes high levels of a desired polypeptide encoded by the expression vector. Transient expression systems, comprising a suitable expression vector and a host cell, allow for the convenient positive identification of polypeptides encoded by cloned DNAs, as well as for the rapid screening of such polypeptides for desired biological or physiological properties. Thus, transient expression systems are particularly useful in the invention for purposes of identifying analogs and variants of the target polypeptide that have target polypeptide-like activity.

Other methods, vectors, and host cells suitable for adaptation to the synthesis of the target polypeptide in recombinant vertebrate cell culture are described in Gething *et al.*, Nature, 293: 620-625 [1981]; Mantei *et al.*, Nature, 281: 40-46 [1979]; Levinson *et al.*; EP 117,060; and EP 117,058. A particularly useful plasmid for mammalian cell culture expression of the target polypeptide is pRK5 (EP pub. no. 307,247) or pSVI6B.

Selection and Transformation of Host Cells

Suitable host cells for cloning or expressing the vectors herein are the prokaryote, yeast, or higher eukaryote cells described above. Suitable prokaryotes include eubacteria, such as Gram-negative or Gram-positive organisms, for example, *E. coli*, *Bacilli* such as *B. subtilis*, *Pseudomonas* species such as *P. aeruginosa*, *Salmonella typhimurium*, or *Serratia marcescans*. One preferred *E. coli* cloning host is *E. coli* 294 (ATCC 31,446), although other strains such as *E. coli* B, *E. coli* χ1776 (ATCC 31,537), and *E. coli* W3110 (ATCC 27,325) are suitable. These examples are illustrative rather than limiting. Preferably the host cell should secrete minimal amounts of proteolytic enzymes. Alternatively, *in vitro* methods of cloning, e.g. PCR or other nucleic acid polymerase reactions, are suitable.

In addition to prokaryotes, eukaryotic microbes such as filamentous fungi or yeast are suitable hosts for target polypeptide-encoding vectors. *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, or common baker's yeast, is the most commonly used among lower eukaryotic host microorganisms. However, a number of other genera, species, and strains are commonly available and useful herein, such as *Schizosaccharomyces pombe* [Beach and Nurse, Nature, 290: 140 (1981); EP 139,383 published May 2, 1985], *Kluyveromyces* hosts (U.S. 4,943,529) such as, e.g., *K. lactis* [Louvencourt *et al.*, J. Bacteriol., 737 (1983)], *K. fragilis*, *K. bulgaricus*, *K. thermotolerans*, and *K. marxianus*, *yarrowia* [EP 402,226], *Pichia pastoris* [EP 183,070; Sreekrishna *et al.*, J. Basic Microbiol., 28: 265-278 (1988)], *Candida*, *Trichoderma reesia* [EP 244,234], *Neurospora crassa* [Case *et al.*, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 76: 5259-5263 (1979)], and filamentous fungi such as, e.g, *Neurospora*, *Penicillium*, *Tolypocladium* [WO 91/00357 published 10 January 1991], and *Aspergillus* hosts such as *A. nidulans* [Ballance *et al.*, Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun., 112: 284-289 (1983); Tilburn *et al.*, Gene, 26: 205-221 (1983); Yelton *et al.*, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 81: 1470-1474 (1984)] and *A. niger* [Kelly and Hynes, EMBO J., 4: 475-479 (1985)].

Suitable host cells for the expression of glycosylated target polypeptide are derived from multicellular organisms. Such host cells are capable of complex processing and glycosylation activities. In principle, any higher eukaryotic cell culture is workable, whether from vertebrate or invertebrate culture. Examples of invertebrate cells include plant and insect cells. Numerous baculoviral strains and variants and corresponding permissive insect host cells from hosts such as *Spodoptera frugiperda* (caterpillar), *Aedes aegypti* (mosquito), *Aedes albopictus* (mosquito), *Drosophila melanogaster* (fruitfly), and *Bombyx mori* host cells have been identified. See, e.g., Luckow *et al.*, Bio/Technology, 6: 47-55 (1988); Miller *et al.*, in Genetic Engineering, Setlow, J.K. *et al.*, eds., Vol. 8 (Plenum Publishing, 1986), pp. 277-279; and Maeda *et al.*, Nature, 315: 592-594 (1985). A variety of such viral strains are publicly

available, e.g., the L-1 variant of *Autographa californica* NPV and the Bm-5 strain of *Bombyx mori* NPV, and such viruses may be used as the virus herein according to the present invention, particularly for transfection of *Spodoptera frugiperda* cells. Plant cell cultures of cotton, corn, potato, soybean, petunia, tomato, and tobacco can be utilized as hosts. Typically, plant cells are transfected by incubation with certain strains of the bacterium *Agrobacterium tumefaciens*, which has been previously manipulated to contain the target polypeptide DNA. During incubation of the plant cell culture with *A. tumefaciens*, the DNA encoding target polypeptide is transferred to the plant cell host such that it is transfected, and will, under appropriate conditions, express the target polypeptide DNA. In addition, regulatory and signal sequences compatible with plant cells are available, such as the nopaline synthase promoter and polyadenylation signal sequences. Depicker *et al.*, J. Mol. Appl. Gen., 1: 561 (1982). In addition, DNA segments isolated from the upstream region of the T-DNA *780* gene are capable of activating or increasing transcription levels of plant-expressible genes in recombinant DNA-containing plant tissue. See EP 321,196 published 21 June 1989.

However, interest has been greatest in vertebrate cells, and propagation of vertebrate cells in culture (tissue culture) has become a routine procedure in recent years [Tissue Culture, Academic Press, Kruse and Patterson, editors (1973)]. Examples of useful mammalian host cell lines are monkey kidney CV1 line transformed by SV40 (COS-7, ATCC CRL 1651); human embryonic kidney line (293 or 293 cells subcloned for growth in suspension culture, Graham *et al.*, J. Gen Virol., 36: 59 [1977]); baby hamster kidney cells (BHK, ATCC CCL 10); Chinese hamster ovary cells/-DHFR (CHO, Urlaub and Chasin, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 77: 4216 [1980]); mouse sertoli cells (TM4, Mather, Biol. Reprod., 23: 243-251 [1980]); monkey kidney cells (CV1 ATCC CCL 70); African green monkey kidney cells (VERO-76, ATCC CRL-1587); human cervical carcinoma cells (HELA, ATCC CCL 2); canine kidney cells (MDCK, ATCC CCL 34); buffalo rat liver cells (BRL 3A, ATCC CRL 1442); human lung cells (W138, ATCC CCL 75); human liver cells (Hep G2, HB 8065); mouse mammary tumor (MMT 060562, ATCC CCL51); TRI cells (Mather *et al.*, Annals N.Y. Acad. Sci., 383: 44-68 [1982]); MRC 5 cells; FS4 cells; and a human hepatoma cell line (Hep G2). Preferred host cells are human embryonic kidney 293 and Chinese hamster ovary cells.

Host cells are transfected and preferably transformed with the above-described expression or cloning vectors of this invention and cultured in conventional nutrient media modified as appropriate for inducing promoters, selecting transformants, or amplifying the genes encoding the desired sequences.

Transfection refers to the taking up of an expression vector by a host cell whether or

not any coding sequences are in fact expressed. Numerous methods of transfection are known to the ordinarily skilled artisan, for example, $CaPO_4$ and electroporation. Successful transfection is generally recognized when any indication of the operation of this vector occurs within the host cell.

Transformation means introducing DNA into an organism so that the DNA is replicable, either as an extrachromosomal element or by chromosomal integrant. Depending on the host cell used, transformation is done using standard techniques appropriate to such cells. The calcium treatment employing calcium chloride, as described in section 1.82 of Sambrook *et al., supra*, is generally used for prokaryotes or other cells that contain substantial cell-wall barriers. Infection with *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* is used for transformation of certain plant cells, as described by Shaw et al., Gene, 23: 315 (1983) and WO 89/05859 published 29 June 1989. For mammalian cells without such cell walls, the calcium phosphate precipitation method described in sections 16.30-16.37 of Sambrook *et al, supra,* is preferred. General aspects of mammalian cell host system transformations have been described by Axel in U.S. 4,399,216 issued 16 August 1983. Transformations into yeast are typically carried out according to the method of Van Solingen *et al.*, J. Bact., 130: 946 (1977) and Hsiao *et al.*, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. (USA), 76: 3829 (1979). However, other methods for introducing DNA into cells such as by nuclear injection, electroporation, or protoplast fusion may also be used.

Culturing the Host Cells

Prokaryotic cells used to produce the target polypeptide of this invention are cultured in suitable media as described generally in Sambrook *et al., supra*.

The mammalian host cells used to produce the target polypeptide of this invention may be cultured in a variety of media. Commercially available media such as Ham's F10 (Sigma), Minimal Essential Medium ([MEM], Sigma), RPMI-1640 (Sigma), and Dulbecco's Modified Eagle's Medium ([DMEM], Sigma) are suitable for culturing the host cells. In addition, any of the media described in Ham and Wallace, Meth. Enz., 58: 44 (1979), Barnes and Sato, Anal. Biochem., 102: 255 (1980), U.S. 4,767,704; 4,657,866; 4,927,762; or 4,560,655; WO 90/03430; WO 87/00195; U.S. Pat. Re. 30,985, may be used as culture media for the host cells. Any of these media may be supplemented as necessary with hormones and/or other growth factors (such as insulin, transferrin, or epidermal growth factor), salts (such as sodium chloride, calcium, magnesium, and phosphate), buffers (such as HEPES), nucleosides (such as adenosine and thymidine), antibiotics (such as Gentamycin™ drug), trace elements

(defined as inorganic compounds usually present at final concentrations in the micromolar range), and glucose or an equivalent energy source. Any other necessary supplements may also be included at appropriate concentrations that would be known to those skilled in the art. The culture conditions, such as temperature, pH, and the like, are those previously used with the host cell selected for expression, and will be apparent to the ordinarily skilled artisan.

The host cells referred to in this disclosure encompass cells in *in vitro* culture as well as cells that are within a host animal.

It is further envisioned that the target polypeptides of this invention may be produced by homologous recombination, or with recombinant production methods utilizing control elements introduced into cells already containing DNA encoding the target polypeptide currently in use in the field. For example, a powerful promoter/enhancer element, a suppressor, or an exogenous transcription modulatory element is inserted in the genome of the intended host cell in proximity and orientation sufficient to influence the transcription of DNA encoding the desired target polypeptide. The control element does not encode the target polypeptide of this invention, but the DNA is present in the host cell genome. One next screens for cells making the target polypeptide of this invention, or increased or decreased levels of expression, as desired.

Detecting Gene Amplification/Expression

Gene amplification and/or expression may be measured in a sample directly, for example, by conventional Southern blotting, northern blotting to quantitate the transcription of mRNA (Thomas, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 77: 5201-5205 [1980]), dot blotting (DNA analysis), or *in situ* hybridization, using an appropriately labeled probe, based on the sequences provided herein. Various labels may be employed, most commonly radioisotopes, particularly ^{32}P. However, other techniques may also be employed, such as using biotin-modified nucleotides for introduction into a polynucleotide. The biotin then serves as the site for binding to avidin or antibodies, which may be labeled with a wide variety of labels, such as radionuclides, fluorescers, enzymes, or the like. Alternatively, antibodies may be employed that can recognize specific duplexes, including DNA duplexes, RNA duplexes, and DNA-RNA hybrid duplexes or DNA-protein duplexes. The antibodies in turn may be labeled and the assay may be carried out where the duplex is bound to a surface, so that upon the formation of duplex on the surface, the presence of antibody bound to the duplex can be detected.

Gene expression, alternatively, may be measured by immunological methods, such as

immunohistochemical staining of tissue sections and assay of cell culture or body fluids, to quantitate directly the expression of gene product. With immunohistochemical staining techniques, a cell sample is prepared, typically by dehydration and fixation, followed by reaction with labeled antibodies specific for the gene product coupled, where the labels are usually visually detectable, such as enzymatic labels, fluorescent labels, luminescent labels, and the like. A particularly sensitive staining technique suitable for use in the present invention is described by Hsu *et al.*, Am. J. Clin. Path., 75: 734-738 (1980).

Antibodies useful for immunohistochemical staining and/or assay of sample fluids may be either monoclonal or polyclonal, and may be prepared in any mammal. Conveniently, the antibodies may be prepared against a native target polypeptide or against a synthetic peptide based on the DNA sequences provided herein as described further in Section 4 below.

Purification of The Target polypeptide

The target polypeptide preferably is recovered from the culture medium as a secreted polypeptide, although it also may be recovered from host cell lysates when directly expressed without a secretory signal.

When the target polypeptide is expressed in a recombinant cell other than one of human origin, the target polypeptide is completely free of proteins or polypeptides of human origin. However, it is necessary to purify the target polypeptide from recombinant cell proteins or polypeptides to obtain preparations that are substantially homogeneous as to the target polypeptide. As a first step, the culture medium or lysate is centrifuged to remove particulate cell debris. The membrane and soluble protein fractions are then separated. The target polypeptide may then be purified from the soluble protein fraction and from the membrane fraction of the culture lysate, depending on whether the target polypeptide is membrane bound. The following procedures are exemplary of suitable purification procedures: fractionation on immunoaffinity or ion-exchange columns; ethanol precipitation; reverse phase HPLC; chromatography on silica or on a cation exchange resin such as DEAE; chromatofocusing; SDS-PAGE; ammonium sulfate precipitation; gel filtration using, for example, Sephadex G-75; and protein A Sepharose columns to remove contaminants such as IgG.

Target polypeptide variants in which residues have been deleted, inserted or substituted are recovered in the same fashion, taking account of any substantial changes in properties occasioned by the variation. For example, preparation of a target polypeptide fusion with another protein or polypeptide, e.g. a bacterial or viral antigen, facilitates purification; an

immunoaffinity column containing antibody to the antigen (or containing antigen, where the target polypeptide is an antibody) can be used to adsorb the fusion. Immunoaffinity columns such as a rabbit polyclonal anti-target polypeptide column can be employed to absorb the target polypeptide variant by binding it to at least one remaining immune epitope. A protease inhibitor such as phenyl methyl sulfonyl fluoride (PMSF) also may be useful to inhibit proteolytic degradation during purification, and antibiotics may be included to prevent the growth of adventitious contaminants. One skilled in the art will appreciate that purification methods suitable for native target polypeptide may require modification to account for changes in the character of the target polypeptide or its variants upon expression in recombinant cell culture.

Covalent Modifications of Target Polypeptides

Covalent modifications of target polypeptides are included within the scope of this invention. One type of covalent modification included within the scope of this invention is a target polypeptide fragment. Target polypeptide fragments having up to about 40 amino acid residues may be conveniently prepared by chemical synthesis, or by enzymatic or chemical cleavage of the full-length target polypeptide or variant target polypeptide. Other types of covalent modifications of the target polypeptide or fragments thereof are introduced into the molecule by reacting specific amino acid residues of the target polypeptide or fragments thereof with an organic derivatizing agent that is capable of reacting with selected side chains or the N- or C-terminal residues.

Cysteinyl residues most commonly are reacted with α-haloacetates (and corresponding amines), such as chloroacetic acid or chloroacetamide, to give carboxymethyl or carboxyamidomethyl derivatives. Cysteinyl residues also are derivatized by reaction with bromotrifluoroacetone, α-bromo-β-(5-imidozoyl)propionic acid, chloroacetyl phosphate, N-alkylmaleimides, 3-nitro-2-pyridyl disulfide, methyl 2-pyridyl disulfide, p-chloromercuribenzoate, 2-chloromercuri-4-nitrophenol, or chloro-7-nitrobenzo-2-oxa-1,3-diazole.

Histidyl residues are derivatized by reaction with diethylpyrocarbonate at pH 5.5-7.0 because this agent is relatively specific for the histidyl side chain. Para-bromophenacyl bromide also is useful; the reaction is preferably performed in 0.1M sodium cacodylate at pH 6.0.

Lysinyl and amino terminal residues are reacted with succinic or other carboxylic acid anhydrides. Derivatization with these agents has the effect of reversing the charge of the lysinyl residues. Other suitable reagents for derivatizing α-amino-containing residues include

imidoesters such as methyl picolinimidate; pyridoxal phosphate; pyridoxal; chloroborohydride; trinitrobenzenesulfonic acid; O-methylisourea; 2,4-pentanedione; and transaminase-catalyzed reaction with glyoxylate.

Arginyl residues are modified by reaction with one or several conventional reagents, among them phenylglyoxal, 2,3-butanedione, 1,2-cyclohexanedione, and ninhydrin. Derivatization of arginine residues requires that the reaction be performed in alkaline conditions because of the high pK_a of the guanidine functional group. Furthermore, these reagents may react with the groups of lysine as well as the arginine epsilon-amino group.

The specific modification of tyrosyl residues may be made, with particular interest in introducing spectral labels into tyrosyl residues by reaction with aromatic diazonium compounds or tetranitromethane. Most commonly, N-acetylimidizole and tetranitromethane are used to form O-acetyl tyrosyl species and 3-nitro derivatives, respectively. Tyrosyl residues are iodinated using ^{125}I or ^{131}I to prepare labeled proteins for use in radioimmunoassay, the chloramine T method described above being suitable.

Carboxyl side groups (aspartyl or glutamyl) are selectively modified by reaction with carbodiimides (R'-N=C=N-R'), where R and R' are different alkyl groups, such as 1-cyclohexyl-3-(2-morpholinyl-4-ethyl) carbodiimide or 1-ethyl-3-(4-azonia-4,4-dimethylpentyl) carbodiimide. Furthermore, aspartyl and glutamyl residues are converted to asparaginyl and glutaminyl residues by reaction with ammonium ions.

Derivatization with bifunctional agents is useful for crosslinking target polypeptide to a water-insoluble support matrix or surface for use in the method for purifying anti-target polypeptide antibodies, and vice versa. Commonly used crosslinking agents include, e.g., 1,1-bis(diazoacetyl)-2-phenylethane, glutaraldehyde, N-hydroxysuccinimide esters, for example, esters with 4-azidosalicylic acid, homobifunctional imidoesters, including disuccinimidyl esters such as 3,3'-dithiobis(succinimidylpropionate), and bifunctional maleimides such as bis-N-maleimido-1,8-octane. Derivatizing agents such as methyl-3-[(p-azidophenyl)dithio]propioimidate yield photoactivatable intermediates that are capable of forming crosslinks in the presence of light. Alternatively, reactive water-insoluble matrices such as cyanogen bromide-activated carbohydrates and the reactive substrates described in U.S. 3,969,287; 3,691,016; 4,195,128; 4,247,642; 4,229,537; and 4,330,440 are employed for protein immobilization.

Glutaminyl and asparaginyl residues are frequently deamidated to the corresponding glutamyl and aspartyl residues, respectively. Alternatively, these residues are deamidated under mildly acidic conditions. Either form of these residues falls within the scope of this invention.

Other modifications include hydroxylation of proline and lysine, phosphorylation of hydroxyl groups of seryl or threonyl residues, methylation of the α-amino groups of lysine, arginine, and histidine side chains (T.E. Creighton, Proteins: Structure and Molecular Properties, W.H. Freeman & Co., San Francisco, pp. 79-86 [1983]), acetylation of the N-terminal amine, and amidation of any C-terminal carboxyl group.

Another type of covalent modification of the target polypeptide included within the scope of this invention comprises altering the native glycosylation pattern of the polypeptide. By altering is meant deleting one or more carbohydrate moieties found in the native target polypeptide, and/or adding one or more glycosylation sites that are not present in the native target polypeptide.

Glycosylation of polypeptides is typically either N-linked or O-linked. N-linked refers to the attachment of the carbohydrate moiety to the side chain of an asparagine residue. The tri-peptide sequences asparagine-X-serine and asparagine-X-threonine, where X is any amino acid except proline, are the recognition sequences for enzymatic attachment of the carbohydrate moiety to the asparagine side chain. Thus, the presence of either of these tri-peptide sequences in a polypeptide creates a potential glycosylation site. O-linked glycosylation refers to the attachment of one of the sugars N-acetylgalactosamine, galactose, or xylose, to a hydroxyamino acid, most commonly serine or threonine, although 5-hydroxyproline or 5-hydroxylysine may also be used.

Addition of glycosylation sites to the target polypeptide is conveniently accomplished by altering the amino acid sequence such that it contains one or more of the above-described tri-peptide sequences (for N-linked glycosylation sites). The alteration may also be made by the addition of, or substitution by, one or more serine or threonine residues to the native target polypeptide sequence (for O-linked glycosylation sites). For ease, the target polypeptide amino acid sequence is preferably altered through changes at the DNA level, particularly by mutating the DNA encoding the target polypeptide at preselected bases such that codons are generated that will translate into the desired amino acids. The DNA mutation(s) may be made using methods described above under the heading of "Amino Acid Sequence Variants of Target Polypeptide".

Another means of increasing the number of carbohydrate moieties on the target polypeptide is by chemical or enzymatic coupling of glycosides to the polypeptide. These procedures are advantageous in that they do not require production of the polypeptide in a host cell that has glycosylation capabilities for N- and O- linked glycosylation. Depending on the coupling mode used, the sugar(s) may be attached to (a) arginine and histidine, (b) free

carboxyl groups, (c) free sulfhydryl groups such as those of cysteine, (d) free hydroxyl groups such as those of serine, threonine, or hydroxyproline, (e) aromatic residues such as those of phenylalanine, tyrosine, or tryptophan, or (f) the amide group of glutamine. These methods are described in WO 87/05330 published 11 September 1987, and in Aplin and Wriston (CRC Crit. Rev. Biochem., pp. 259-306 [1981]).

Removal of carbohydrate moieties present on the native target polypeptide may be accomplished chemically or enzymatically. Chemical deglycosylation requires exposure of the polypeptide to the compound trifluoromethanesulfonic acid, or an equivalent compound. This treatment results in the cleavage of most or all sugars except the linking sugar (N-acetylglucosamine or N-acetylgalactosamine), while leaving the polypeptide intact. Chemical deglycosylation is described by Hakimuddin *et al.* (Arch. Biochem. Biophys., 259:52 [1987]) and by Edge *et al.* (Anal. Biochem., 118:131 [1981]). Enzymatic cleavage of carbohydrate moieties on polypeptides can be achieved by the use of a variety of endo- and exo-glycosidases as described by Thotakura *et al.* (Meth. Enzymol., 138:350 [1987]).

Glycosylation at potential glycosylation sites may be prevented by the use of the compound tunicamycin as described by Duskin *et al.* (J. Biol. Chem., 257:3105 [1982]). Tunicamycin blocks the formation of protein-N-glycoside linkages.

Another type of covalent modification of the target polypeptide comprises linking the target polypeptide to various nonproteinaceous polymers, e.g. polyethylene glycol, polypropylene glycol or polyoxyalkylenes, in the manner set forth in U.S. 4,640,835; 4,496,689; 4,301,144; 4,670,417; 4,791,192 or 4,179,337.

The target polypeptide also may be entrapped in microcapsules prepared, for example, by coacervation techniques or by interfacial polymerization (for example, hydroxymethylcellulose or gelatin-microcapsules and poly-[methylmethacylate] microcapsules, respectively), in colloidal drug delivery systems (for example, liposomes, albumin microspheres, microemulsions, nano-particles and nanocapsules), or in macroemulsions. Such techniques are disclosed in Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences, 16th edition, Osol, A., Ed., (1980).

Target polypeptide preparations are also useful in generating antibodies, for screening for binding partners, as standards in assays for the target polypeptide (e.g. by labeling the target polypeptide for use as a standard in a radioimmunoassay, enzyme-linked immunoassay, or radioreceptor assay), in affinity purification techniques, and in competitive-type receptor binding assays when labeled with radioiodine, enzymes, fluorophores, spin labels, and the like.

Since it is often difficult to predict in advance the characteristics of a variant target polypeptide, it will be appreciated that some screening of the recovered variant will be needed

to select the optimal variant. For example, a change in the immunological character of the target polypeptide molecule, such as affinity for a given antigen or antibody, is measured by a competitive-type immunoassay. The variant is assayed for changes in the suppression or enhancement of its activity by comparison to the activity observed for the target polypeptide in the same assay. Other potential modifications of protein or polypeptide properties such as redox or thermal stability, hydrophobicity, susceptibility to proteolytic degradation, stability in recombinant cell culture or in plasma, or the tendency to aggregate with carriers or into multimers are assayed by methods well known in the art.

Diagnostic and Related Uses of the Antibodies

The antibodies of this invention are useful in diagnostic assays for antigen expression in specific cells or tissues. The antibodies are detectably labeled and/or are immobilized on an insoluble matrix.

The antibodies of this invention find further use for the affinity purification of the antigen from recombinant cell culture or natural sources. Suitable diagnostic assays for the antigen and its antibodies depend on the particular antigen or antibody. Generally, such assays include competitive and sandwich assays, and steric inhibition assays. Competitive and sandwich methods employ a phase-separation step as an integral part of the method while steric inhibition assays are conducted in a single reaction mixture. Fundamentally, the same procedures are used for the assay of the antigen and for substances that bind the antigen, although certain methods will be favored depending upon the molecular weight of the substance being assayed. Therefore, the substance to be tested is referred to herein as an analyte, irrespective of its status otherwise as an antigen or antibody, and proteins that bind to the analyte are denominated binding partners, whether they be antibodies, cell surface receptors, or antigens.

Analytical methods for the antigen or its antibodies all use one or more of the following reagents: labeled analyte analogue, immobilized analyte analogue, labeled binding partner, immobilized binding partner and steric conjugates. The labeled reagents also are known as "tracers."

The label used (and this is also useful to label antigen nucleic acid for use as a probe) is any detectable functionality that does not interfere with the binding of analyte and its binding partner. Numerous labels are known for use in immunoassay, examples including moieties that may be detected directly, such as fluorochrome, chemiluminescent, and radioactive labels, as well as moieties, such as enzymes, that must be reacted or derivatized

to be detected. Examples of such labels include the radioisotopes ^{32}P, ^{14}C, ^{125}I, ^{3}H, and ^{131}I, fluorophores such as rare earth chelates or fluorescein and its derivatives, rhodamine and its derivatives, dansyl, umbelliferone, luceriferases, e.g., firefly luciferase and bacterial luciferase (U.S. Pat. No. 4,737,456), luciferin, 2,3-dihydrophthalazinediones, horseradish peroxidase (HRP), alkaline phosphatase, β-galactosidase, glucoamylase, lysozyme, saccharide oxidases, e.g., glucose oxidase, galactose oxidase, and glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase, heterocyclic oxidases such as uricase and xanthine oxidase, coupled with an enzyme that employs hydrogen peroxide to oxidize a dye precursor such as HRP, lactoperoxidase, or microperoxidase, biotin/avidin, spin labels, bacteriophage labels, stable free radicals, and the like.

Conventional methods are available to bind these labels covalently to proteins or polypeptides. For instance, coupling agents such as dialdehydes, carbodiimides, dimaleimides, bis-imidates, bis-diazotized benzidine, and the like may be used to tag the antibodies with the above-described fluorescent, chemiluminescent, and enzyme labels. See, for example, U.S. Pat. Nos. 3,940,475 (fluorimetry) and 3,645,090 (enzymes); Hunter *et al.*, Nature, 144: 945 (1962); David *et al.*, Biochemistry, 13: 1014-1021 (1974); Pain *et al.*, J. Immunol. Methods, 40: 219-230 (1981); and Nygren, J. Histochem. and Cytochem., 30: 407-412 (1982). Preferred labels herein are enzymes such as horseradish peroxidase and alkaline phosphatase.

The conjugation of such label, including the enzymes, to the antibody is a standard manipulative procedure for one of ordinary skill in immunoassay techniques. See, for example, O'Sullivan *et al.*, "Methods for the Preparation of Enzyme-antibody Conjugates for Use in Enzyme Immunoassay," in Methods in Enzymology, ed. J.J. Langone and H. Van Vunakis, Vol. 73 (Academic Press, New York, New York, 1981), pp. 147-166. Such bonding methods are suitable for use with the antibodies and polypeptides of this invention.

Immobilization of reagents is required for certain assay methods. Immobilization entails separating the binding partner from any analyte that remains free in solution. This conventionally is accomplished by either insolubilizing the binding partner or analyte analogue before the assay procedure, as by adsorption to a water-insoluble matrix or surface (Bennich *et al.*., U.S. 3,720,760), by covalent coupling (for example, using glutaraldehyde cross-linking), or by insolubilizing the partner or analogue afterward, e.g., by immunoprecipitation.

Other assay methods, known as competitive or sandwich assays, are well established and widely used in the commercial diagnostics industry.

Competitive assays rely on the ability of a tracer analogue to compete with the test sample analyte for a limited number of binding sites on a common binding partner. The binding

partner generally is insolubilized before or after the competition and then the tracer and analyte bound to the binding partner are separated from the unbound tracer and analyte. This separation is accomplished by decanting (where the binding partner was preinsolubilized) or by centrifuging (where the binding partner was precipitated after the competitive reaction). The amount of test sample analyte is inversely proportional to the amount of bound tracer as measured by the amount of marker substance. Dose-response curves with known amounts of analyte are prepared and compared with the test results to quantitatively determine the amount of analyte present in the test sample. These assays are called ELISA systems when enzymes are used as the detectable markers.

Another species of competitive assay, called a "homogeneous" assay, does not require a phase separation. Here, a conjugate of an enzyme with the analyte is prepared and used such that when anti-analyte binds to the analyte the presence of the anti-analyte modifies the enzyme activity. In this case, the antigen or its immunologically active fragments are conjugated with a bifunctional organic bridge to an enzyme such as peroxidase. Conjugates are selected for use with antibody so that binding of the antibody inhibits or potentiates the enzyme activity of the label. This method *per se* is widely practiced under the name of EMIT.

Steric conjugates are used in steric hindrance methods for homogeneous assay. These conjugates are synthesized by covalently linking a low-molecular-weight hapten to a small analyte so that antibody to hapten substantially is unable to bind the conjugate at the same time as anti-analyte. Under this assay procedure the analyte present in the test sample will bind anti-analyte, thereby allowing anti-hapten to bind the conjugate, resulting in a change in the character of the conjugate hapten, e.g., a change in fluorescence when the hapten is a fluorophore.

Sandwich assays particularly are useful for the determination of antigen or antibodies. In sequential sandwich assays an immobilized binding partner is used to adsorb test sample analyte, the test sample is removed as by washing, the bound analyte is used to adsorb labeled binding partner, and bound material is then separated from residual tracer. The amount of bound tracer is directly proportional to test sample analyte. In "simultaneous" sandwich assays the test sample is not separated before adding the labeled binding partner. A sequential sandwich assay using an anti-antigen monoclonal antibody as one antibody and a polyclonal anti-antigen antibody as the other is useful in testing samples for particular antigen activity.

The foregoing are merely exemplary diagnostic assays for the import and humanized antibodies of this invention. Other methods now or hereafter developed for the determination of these analytes are included within the scope hereof, including the bioassays described

above.

Immunotoxins

This invention is also directed to immunochemical derivatives of the antibodies of this invention such as immunotoxins (conjugates of the antibody and a cytotoxic moiety). Antibodies which carry the appropriate effector functions, such as with their constant domains, are also used to induce lysis through the natural complement process, and to interact with antibody dependent cytotoxic cells normally present.

For example, purified, sterile filtered antibodies are optionally conjugated to a cytotoxin such as ricin for use in AIDS therapy. US Patent Application Serial No. 07/350,895 illustrates methods for making and using immunotoxins for the treatment of HIV infection. The methods of this invention, for example, are suitable for obtaining humanized antibodies for use as immunotoxins for use in AIDS therapy.

The cytotoxic moiety of the immunotoxin may be a cytotoxic drug or an enzymatically active toxin of bacterial, fungal, plant or animal origin, or an enzymatically active fragment of such a toxin. Enzymatically active toxins and fragments thereof used are diphtheria A chain, nonbinding active fragments of diphtheria toxin, exotoxin A chain (from *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*), ricin A chain, abrin A chain, modeccin A chain, alpha-sarcin, *Aleurites fordii* proteins, dianthin proteins, *Phytolaca americana* proteins (PAPI, PAPII, and PAP-S), momordica charantia inhibitor, curcin, crotin, sapaonaria officinalis inhibitor, gelonin, mitogellin, restrictocin, phenomycin, enomycin and the tricothecenes. In another embodiment, the antibodies are conjugated to small molecule anticancer drugs such as cis-platin or 5FU. Conjugates of the monoclonal antibody and such cytotoxic moieties are made using a variety of bifunctional protein coupling agents. Examples of such reagents are SPDP, IT , bifunctional derivatives of imidoesters such as dimethyl adipimidate HCl, active esters such as disuccinimidyl suberate, aldehydes such as glutaraldehyde, bis-azido compounds such as bis (p-azidobenzoyl) hexanediamine, bis-diazonium derivatives such as bis- (p-diazoniumbenzoyl)- -ethylenediamine, diisocyanates such as tolylene 2,6-diisocyanate and bis-active fluorine compounds such as l,5-difluoro- 2,4-dinitrobenzene. The lysing portion of a toxin may be joined to the Fab fragment of the antibodies.

Immunotoxins can be made in a variety of ways, as discussed herein. Commonly known crosslinking reagents can be used to yield stable conjugates.

Advantageously, monoclonal antibodies specifically binding the domain of the antigen which is exposed on the infected cell surface, are conjugated to ricin A chain. Most

advantageously the ricin A chain is deglycosylated and produced through recombinant means. An advantageous method of making the ricin immunotoxin is described in Vitetta *et al.*, *Science* 238:1098 (1987).

When used to kill infected human cells *in vitro* for diagnostic purposes, the conjugates will typically be added to the cell culture medium at a concentration of at least about 10 nM. The formulation and mode of administration for *in vitro* use are not critical. Aqueous formulations that are compatible with the culture or perfusion medium will normally be used. Cytotoxicity may be read by conventional techniques.

Cytotoxic radiopharmaceuticals for treating infected cells may be made by conjugating radioactive isotopes (e.g. I, Y, Pr) to the antibodies. Advantageously alpha particle-emitting isotopes are used. The term 'cytotoxic moiety" as used herein is intended to include such isotopes.

In a preferred embodiment, ricin A chain is deglycosylated or produced without oligosaccharides, to decrease its clearance by irrelevant clearance mechanisms (e.g., the liver). In another embodiment, whole ricin (A chain plus B chain) is conjugated to antibody if the galactose binding property of B-chain can be blocked ("blocked ricin").

In a further embodiment toxin-conjugates are made with Fab or $F(ab')_2$ fragments. Because of their relatively small size these fragments can better penetrate tissue to reach infected cells.

In another embodiment, fusogenic liposomes are filled with a cytotoxic drug and the liposomes are coated with antibodies specifically binding the particular antigen.

Antibody Dependent Cellular Cytotoxicity

Certain aspects of this invention involve antibodies which are (a) directed against a particular antigen and (b) belong to a subclass or isotype that is capable of mediating the lysis of cells to which the antibody molecule binds. More specifically, these antibodies should belong to a subclass or isotype that, upon complexing with cell surface proteins, activates serum complement and/or mediates antibody dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) by activating effector cells such as natural killer cells or macrophages.

Biological activity of antibodies is known to be determined, to a large extent, by the constant domains or Fc region of the antibody molecule (Uananue and Benacerraf, *Textbook of Immunology*, 2nd Edition, Williams & Wilkins, p. 218 (1984)). This includes their ability to activate complement and to mediate antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) as effected by leukocytes. Antibodies of different classes and subclasses differ in this respect,

as do antibodies from the same subclass but different species; according to the present invention, antibodies of those classes having the desired biological activity are prepared. Preparation of these antibodies involves the selection of antibody constant domains are their incorporation in the humanized antibody by known technique. For example, mouse immunoglobulins of the IgG3 and IgG2a class are capable of activating serum complement upon binding to the target cells which express the cognate antigen, and therefore humanized antibodies which incorporate IgG3 and IgG2a effector functions are desirable for certain therapeutic applications.

In general, mouse antibodies of the IgG2a and IgG3 subclass and occasionally IgG1 can mediate ADCC, and antibodies of the IgG3, IgG2a, and IgM subclasses bind and activate serum complement. Complement activation generally requires the binding of at least two IgG molecules in close proximity on the target cell. However, the binding of only one IgM molecule activates serum complement.

The ability of any particular antibody to mediate lysis of the target cell by complement activation and/or ADCC can be assayed. The cells of interest are grown and labeled *in vitro*; the antibody is added to the cell culture in combination with either serum complement or immune cells which may be activated by the antigen antibody complexes. Cytolysis of the target cells is detected by the release of label from the lysed cells. In fact, antibodies can be screened using the patient's own serum as a source of complement and/or immune cells. The antibody that is capable of activating complement or mediating ADCC in the *in vitro* test can then be used therapeutically in that particular patient.

This invention specifically encompasses consensus Fc antibody domains prepared and used according to the teachings of this invention.

Therapeutic and Other Uses of the Antibodies

When used *in vivo* for therapy, the antibodies of the subject invention are administered to the patient in therapeutically effective amounts (i.e. amounts that have desired therapeutic effect). They will normally be administered parenterally. The dose and dosage regimen will depend upon the degree of the infection, the characteristics of the particular antibody or immunotoxin used, e.g., its therapeutic index, the patient, and the patient's history. Advantageously the antibody or immunotoxin is administered continuously over a period of 1-2 weeks, intravenously to treat cells in the vasculature and subcutaneously and intraperitoneally to treat regional lymph nodes. Optionally, the administration is made during the course of adjunct therapy such as combined cycles of radiation, chemotherapeutic treatment, or

administration of tumor necrosis factor, interferon or other cytoprotective or immunomodulatory agent.

For parenteral administration the antibodies will be formulated in a unit dosage injectable form (solution, suspension, emulsion) in association with a pharmaceutically acceptable parenteral vehicle. Such vehicles are inherently nontoxic, and non-therapeutic. Examples of such vehicles are water, saline, Ringer's solution, dextrose solution, and 5% human serum albumin. Nonaqueous vehicles such as fixed oils and ethyl oleate can also be used. Liposomes may be used as carriers. The vehicle may contain minor amounts of additives such as substances that enhance isotonicity and chemical stability, e.g., buffers and preservatives. The antibodies will typically be formulated in such vehicles at concentrations of about 1 mg/ml to 10 mg/ml.

Use of IgM antibodies may be preferred for certain applications, however IgG molecules by being smaller may be more able than IgM molecules to localize to certain types of infected cells.

There is evidence that complement activation *in vivo* leads to a variety of biological effects, including the induction of an inflammatory response and the activation of macrophages (Uananue and Benecerraf, *Textbook of Immunology*, 2nd Edition, Williams & Wilkins, p. 218 (1984)). The increased vasodilation accompanying inflammation may increase the ability of various agents to localize in infected cells. Therefore, antigen-antibody combinations of the type specified by this invention can be used therapeutically in many ways. Additionally, purified antigens (Hakomori, *Ann. Rev. Immunol.* 2:103 (1984)) or anti-idiotypic antibodies (Nepom *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 81:2864 (1985); Koprowski *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 81:216 (1984)) relating to such antigens could be used to induce an active immune response in human patients. Such a response includes the formation of antibodies capable of activating human complement and mediating ADCC and by such mechanisms cause infected cell destruction.

Optionally, the antibodies of this invention are useful in passively immunizing patients, as exemplified by the administration of humanized anti-HIV antibodies.

The antibody compositions used in therapy are formulated and dosages established in a fashion consistent with good medical practice taking into account the disorder to be treated, the condition of the individual patient, the site of delivery of the composition, the method of administration and other factors known to practitioners. The antibody compositions are prepared for administration according to the description of preparation of polypeptides for administration, *infra*.

Deposit of Materials

As described above, cultures of the muMAb4D5 have been deposited with the American Type Culture Collection, ~~12301 Parklawn Drive, Rockville, MD~~ 10801 University Blvd, Manassas, VA, USA (ATCC).

This deposit was made under the provisions of the Budapest Treaty on the International Recognition of the Deposit of Microorganisms for the Purpose of Patent Procedure and the Regulations thereunder (Budapest Treaty). This assures maintenance of viable cultures for 30 years from the date of the deposit. The organisms will be made available by ATCC under the terms of the Budapest Treaty, and subject to an agreement between Genentech, Inc. and ATCC, which assures permanent and unrestricted availability of the progeny of the cultures to the public upon issuance of the pertinent U.S. patent or upon laying open to the public of any U.S. or foreign patent application, whichever comes first, and assures availability of the progeny to one determined by the U.S. Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks to be entitled thereto according to 35 USC §122 and the Commissioner's rules pursuant thereto (including 37 CFR §1.12 with particular reference to 886 OG 638).

In respect of those designations in which a European patent is sought, a sample of the deposited microorganism will be made available until the publication of the mention of the grant of the European patent or until the date on which the application has been refused or withdrawn or is deemed to be withdrawn, only by the issue of such a sample to an expert nominated by the person requesting the sample. (Rule 28(4) EPC)

The assignee of the present application has agreed that if the cultures on deposit should die or be lost or destroyed when cultivated under suitable conditions, they will be promptly replaced on notification with a viable specimen of the same culture. Availability of the deposited strain is not to be construed as a license to practice the invention in contravention of the rights granted under the authority of any government in accordance with its patent laws.

The foregoing written specification is considered to be sufficient to enable one skilled in the art to practice the invention. The present invention is not to be limited in scope by the constructs deposited, since the deposited embodiments are intended to illustrate only certain aspects of the invention and any constructs that are functionally equivalent are within the scope of this invention. The deposit of material herein does not constitute an admission that the written description herein contained is inadequate to enable the practice of any aspect of the invention, including the best mode thereof, nor is it to be construed as limiting the scope of the claims to the specific illustrations that they represent. Indeed, various modifications of the invention in addition to those shown and described herein will become apparent to those

skilled in the art from the foregoing description and fall within the scope of the appended claims.

It is understood that the application of the teachings of the present invention to a specific problem or situation will be within the capabilities of one having ordinary skill in the art in light of the teachings contained herein. Examples of the products of the present invention and representative processes for their isolation, use, and manufacture appear below, but should not be construed to limit the invention.

EXAMPLES

EXAMPLE 1. HUMANIZATION OF muMAb4D5

Here we report the chimerization of muMAb4D5 (chMAb4D5) and the rapid and simultaneous humanization of heavy (V_H) and light (V_L) chain variable region genes using a novel "gene conversion mutagenesis" strategy. Eight humanized variants (huMAb4D5) were constructed to probe the importance of several FR residues identified by our molecular modeling or previously proposed to be critical to the conformation of particular CDRs (see Chothia, C. & Lesk, A. M., *J. Mol. Biol.* **196**:901-917 (1987); Chothia, C. *et al., Nature* **342**:877-883 (1989); Tramontano, A. *et al., J. Mol. Biol.* **215**:175-182 (1990)). Efficient transient expression of humanized variants in non-myeloma cells allowed us to rapidly investigate the relationship between binding affinity for $p185^{HER2}$ ECD and anti-proliferative activity against $p185^{HER2}$ overexpressing carcinoma cells.

MATERIALS and METHODS

Cloning of Variable Region Genes. The muMAb4D5 V_H and V_L genes were isolated by polymerase chain reaction (PCR) amplification of mRNA from the corresponding hybridoma (Fendly, B. M. *et al., Cancer Res.* **50**:1550-1558 (1990)) as described by Orlandi et al. (Orlandi, R. *et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **86**:3833-3837 (1989)). Amino terminal sequencing of muMAb4D5 V_L and V_H was used to design the sense strand PCR primers, whereas the anti-sense PCR primers were based upon consensus sequences of murine framework residues (Orlandi, R. *et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **86**:3833-3837 (1989); Kabat, E. A. *et al., Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest* (National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, 1987)) incorporating restriction sites for directional cloning shown by underlining and listed after the sequences: V_L sense, 5'-TCCGATATCCAGCTGACCCAGTCTCCA-3' (SEQ. ID NO. 7), *Eco*RV; V_L anti-sense, 5'-

GTTTGATCTCCAGCTTGGTACCHSCDCCGAA-3' (SEQ. ID NO. 8), *Asp*718; V_H sense, 5'-AGGTSMARCTGCAGSAGTCWGG-3' (SEQ. ID NO. 9), *Pst*I and V_H anti-sense, 5'-TGAGGAGACGGTGACCGTGGTCCCTTGGCCCCAG-3' (SEQ. ID NO. 10), *Bst*EII; where H = A or C or T, S = C or G, D = A or G or T, M = A or C, R = A or G and W = A or T. The PCR products were cloned into pUC119 (Vieira, J. & Messing, J., *Methods Enzymol.* **153**:3-11 (1987)) and five clones for each variable domain sequenced by the dideoxy method (Sanger, F. *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **74**:5463-5467 (1977)).

Molecular Modelling. Models for muMAb4D5 V_H and V_L domains were constructed separately from consensus coordinates based upon seven Fab structures from the Brookhaven protein data bank (entries 1FB4, 2RHE, 2MCP, 3FAB, 1FBJ, 2HFL and 1REI). The Fab fragment KOL (Marquart, M. *et al.*, *J. Mol. Biol.* **141**:369-391 (1980)) was first chosen as a template for V_L and V_H domains and additional structures were then superimposed upon this structure using their main chain atom coordinates (INSIGHT program, Biosym Technologies). The distance from the template Cα to the analogous Cα in each of the superimposed structures was calculated for each residue position. If all (or nearly all) Cα-Cα distances for a given residue were $\leq$ 1Å, then that position was included in the consensus structure. In most cases the β-sheet framework residues satisfied these criteria whereas the CDR loops did not. For each of these selected residues the average coordinates for individual N, Cα, C, O and Cβ atoms were calculated and then corrected for resultant deviations from non-standard bond geometry by 50 cycles of energy minimization using the DISCOVER program (Biosym Technologies) with the AMBER forcefield (Weiner, S. J. *et al.*, *J. Amer. Chem. Soc.* **106**:765-784 (1984)) and Cα coordinates fixed. The side chains of highly conserved residues, such as the disulfide-bridged cysteine residues, were then incorporated into the resultant consensus structure. Next the sequences of muMAb4D5 V_L and V_H were incorporated starting with the CDR residues and using the tabulations of CDR conformations from Chothia et al. (Chothia, C. *et al.*, *Nature* **342**:877-883 (1989)) as a guide. Side-chain conformations were chosen on the basis of Fab crystal structures, rotamer libraries (Ponder, J. W. & Richards, F. M., *J. Mol. Biol.* **193**:775-791 (1987)) and packing considerations. Since V_H-CDR3 could not be assigned a definite backbone conformation from these criteria, two models were created from a search of similar sized loops using the INSIGHT program. A third model was derived using packing and solvent exposure considerations. Each model was then subjected to 5000 cycles of energy minimization.

In humanizing muMAb4D5, consensus human sequences were first derived from the most abundant subclasses in the sequence compilation of Kabat et al. (Kabat, E. A. *et al.*,

Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest (National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, 1987)), namely V_L κ subgroup I and V_H group III, and a molecular model generated for these sequences using the methods described above. A structure for huMAb4D5 was created by transferring the CDRs from the muMAb4D5 model into the consensus human structure. All huMAb4D5 variants contain human replacements of muMAb4D5 residues at three positions within CDRs as defined by sequence variability (Kabat, E. A. *et al.*, *Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest* (National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, 1987)) but not as defined by structural variability (Chothia, C. & Lesk, A. M., *J. Mol. Biol.* **196**:901-917 (1987)): V_L-CDR1 K24R, V_L-CDR2 R54L and V_L-CDR2 T56S. Differences between muMAb4D5 and the human consensus framework residues (Fig. 1) were individually modeled to investigate their possible influence on CDR conformation and/or binding to the $p185^{HER2}$ ECD.

Construction of Chimeric Genes. Genes encoding chMAb4D5 light and heavy chains were separately assembled in previously described phagemid vectors containing the human cytomegalovirus enhancer and promoter, a 5' intron and SV40 polyadenylation signal (Gorman, C. M. *et al.*, *DNA & Prot. Engin. Tech.* **2**:3-10 (1990)). Briefly, gene segments encoding muMAb4D5 V_L (Fig. 1A) and REI human κ_1 light chain C_L (Palm, W. & Hilschmann, N., *Z. Physiol. Chem.* **356**:167-191 (1975)) were precisely joined as were genes for muMAb4D5 V_H (Fig. 1B) and human γ1 constant region (Capon, D. J. *et al.*, *Nature* **337**:525-531 (1989)) by simple subcloning (Boyle, A., in *Current Protocols in Molecular Biology*, Chapter 3 (F. A. Ausubel *et al.*, eds., Greene Publishing & Wiley-Interscience, New York, 1990)) and site-directed mutagenesis (Carter, P., in *Mutagenesis: A Practical Approach*, Chapter 1 (IRL Press, Oxford, UK 1991)). The γ1 isotype was chosen as it has been found to be the preferred human isotype for supporting ADCC and complement dependent cytotoxicity using matched sets of chimeric (Brüggemann, M. *et al.*, *J. Exp. Med.* **166**:1351-1361 (1987)) or humanized antibodies (Riechmann, L. *et al.*, *Nature* **332**:323-327 (1988)). The PCR-generated V_L and V_H fragments (Fig. 1) were subsequently mutagenized so that they faithfully represent the sequence of muMAb4D5 determined at the protein level: V_H Q1E, V_L V104L and T109A (variants are denoted by the amino acid residue and number followed by the replacement amino acid). The human γ1 constant regions are identical to those reported by Ellison et al. (Ellison, J. W. *et al.*, *Nucleic Acids Res.* **13**:4071-4079 (1982)) except for the mutations E359D and M361L (Eu numbering, as in Kabat, E. A. *et al.*, *Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest* (National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, 1987)) which we installed to convert the antibody from the naturally rare A allotype to the much more common non-A allotype (Tramontano, A. *et al.*, *J. Mol. Biol.* **215**:175-182 (1990)). This was an attempt to

reduce the risk of anti-allotype antibodies interfering with therapy.

Construction of Humanized Genes. Genes encoding chMAb4D5 light chain and heavy chain Fd fragment (V_H and C_H1 domains) were subcloned together into pUC119 (Vieira, J. & Messing, J., *Methods Enzymol.* **153**:3-11 (1987)) to create pAK1 and simultaneously humanized in a single step (Fig. 2). Briefly, sets of 6 contiguous oligonucleotides were designed to humanize V_H and V_L (Fig. 1). These oligonucleotides are 28 to 83 nucleotides in length, contain zero to 19 mismatches to the murine antibody template and are constrained to have 8 or 9 perfectly matched residues at each end to promote efficient annealing and ligation of adjacent oligonucleotides. The sets of V_H and V_L humanization oligonucleotides (5 pmol each) were phosphorylated with either ATP or γ-^{32}P-ATP (Carter, P. *Methods Enzymol.* **154**:382-403 (1987)) and separately annealed with 3.7 pmol of pAK1 template in 40 μl 10 mM Tris-HCl (pH 8.0) and 10 mM $MgCl_2$ by cooling from 100 °C to room temperature over ~30 min. The annealed oligonucleotides were joined by incubation with T4 DNA ligase (12 units; New England Biolabs) in the presence of 2 μl 5 mM ATP and 2 μl 0.1 M DTT for 10 min at 14 °C. After electrophoresis on a 6% acrylamide sequencing gel the assembled oligonucleotides were located by autoradiography and recovered by electroelution. The assembled oligonucleotides (~0.3 pmol each) were simultaneously annealed to 0.15 pmol single-stranded deoxyuridine-containing pAK1 prepared according to Kunkel et al. (Kunkel, T. A. *et al., Methods Enzymol.* **154**:367-382 (1987)) in 10 μl 40 mM Tris-HCl (pH 7.5) and 16 mM $MgCl_2$ as above. Heteroduplex DNA was constructed by extending the primers with T7 DNA polymerase and transformed into *E. coli* BMH 71-18 *mut*L as previously described (Carter, P., in *Mutagenesis: A Practical Approach*, Chapter 1 (IRL Press, Oxford, UK 1991)). The resultant phagemid DNA pool was enriched first for huV_L by restriction purification using *Xho*I and then for huV_H by restriction selection using *Stu*I as described in Carter, P., in *Mutagenesis: A Practical Approach*, Chapter 1 (IRL Press, Oxford, UK 1991); and in Wells, J. A. *et al., Phil. Trans. R. Soc. Lond. A* **317**:415-423 (1986). Resultant clones containing both huV_L and huV_H genes were identified by nucleotide sequencing (Sanger, F. *et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **74**:5463-5467 (1977)) and designated pAK2. Additional humanized variants were generated by site-directed mutagenesis (Carter, P., in *Mutagenesis: A Practical Approach*, Chapter 1 (IRL Press, Oxford, UK 1991)). The muMAb4D5 V_L and V_H gene segments in the transient expression vectors described above were then precisely replaced with their humanized versions.

Expression and Purification of MAb4D5 Variants. Appropriate MAb4D5 light and heavy chain cDNA expression vectors were co-transfected into an adenovirus transformed human

embryonic kidney cell line, 293 (Graham, F. L. *et al., J. Gen. Virol.* **36**:59-72 (1977)) using a high efficiency procedure (Gorman, C. M. *et al., DNA & Prot. Engin. Tech.* **2**:3-10 (1990); Gorman, C., in *DNA Cloning*, vol II, pp 143-190 (D. M. Glover, ed., IRL Press, Oxford, UK 1985)). Media were harvested daily for up to 5 days and the cells re-fed with serum free media. Antibodies were recovered from the media and affinity purified on protein A sepharose CL-4B (Pharmacia) as described by the manufacturer. The eluted antibody was buffer-exchanged into phosphate-buffered saline by G25 gel filtration, concentrated by ultrafiltration (Centriprep-30 or Centricon-100, Amicon), sterile-filtered (Millex-GV, Millipore) and stored at 4 °C. The concentration of antibody was determined by using both total immunoglobulin and antigen binding ELISAs. The standard used was huMAb4D5-5, whose concentration had been determined by amino acid composition analysis.

Cell Proliferation Assay. The effect of MAb4D5 variants upon proliferation of the human mammary adenocarcinoma cell line, SK-BR-3, was investigated as previously described (Fendly, B. M. *et al., Cancer Res.* **50**:1550-1558 (1990)) using saturating MAb4D5 concentrations.

Affinity Measurements. The antigen binding affinity of MAb4D5 variants was determined using a secreted form of the $p185^{HER2}$ ECD prepared as described in Fendly, B. M. *et al., J. Biol. Resp. Mod.* **9**:449-455 (1990). Briefly, antibody and $p185^{HER2}$ ECD were incubated in solution until equilibrium was found to be reached. The concentration of free antibody was then determined by ELISA using immobilized $p185^{HER2}$ ECD and used to calculate affinity (K_d) according to Friguet et al. (Friguet, B. *et al., J. Immunol. Methods* **77**:305-319 (1985)).

RESULTS

Humanization of muMAb4D5. The muMAb4D5 V_L and V_H gene segments were first cloned by PCR and sequenced (Fig. 1). The variable genes were then simultaneously humanized by gene conversion mutagenesis using preassembled oligonucleotides (Fig. 2). A 311-mer oligonucleotide containing 39 mismatches to the template directed 24 simultaneous amino acid changes required to humanize muMAb4D5 V_L. Humanization of muMAb4D5 V_H required 32 amino acid changes which were installed with a 361-mer containing 59 mismatches to the muMAb4D5 template. Two out of 8 clones sequenced precisely encode huMAb4D5-5, although one of these clones contained a single nucleotide imperfection. The 6 other clones were essentially humanized but contained a small number of errors: < 3 nucleotide changes and < 1 single nucleotide deletion per kilobase. Additional humanized

variants (Table 3) were constructed by site-directed mutagenesis of huMAb4D5-5.

Expression levels of huMAb4D5 variants were in the range of 7 to 15 μg/ml as judged by ELISA using immobilized $p185^{HER2}$ ECD. Successive harvests of five 10 cm plates allowed 200 μg to 500 mg of each variant to be produced in a week. Antibodies affinity purified on protein A gave a single band on a Coomassie blue stained SDS polyacrylamide gel of mobility consistent with the expected M_r of ~ 150 kDa. Electrophoresis under reducing conditions gave 2 bands consistent with the expected M_r of free heavy (48 kDa) and light (23 kDa) chains (not shown). Amino terminal sequence analysis (10-cycles) gave the mixed sequence expected (see Fig. 1) from an equimolar combination of light and heavy chains (not shown).

huMAb4D5 Variants. In general, the FR residues were chosen from consensus human sequences (Kabat, E. A. *et al.*, *Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest* (National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, 1987)) and CDR residues from muMAb4D5. Additional variants were constructed by replacing selected human residues in huMAb4D5-1 with their muMAb4D5 counterparts. These are V_H residues 71, 73, 78, 93 plus 102 and V_L residues 55 plus 66 identified by our molecular modeling. V_H residue 71 has previously been proposed by others (Tramontano, A. *et al.*, *J. Mol. Biol.* **215**:175-182 (1990)) to be critical to the conformation of V_H-CDR2. Amino acid sequence differences between huMAb4D5 variant molecules are shown in Table 3, together with their $p185^{HER2}$ ECD binding affinity and maximal anti-proliferative activities against SK-BR-3 cells. Very similar K_d values were obtained for binding of MAb4D5 variants to either SK-BR-3 cells or to $p185^{HER2}$ ECD (Table 3). However, K_d estimates derived from binding of MAb4D5 variants to $p185^{HER2}$ ECD were more reproducible with smaller standard errors and consumed much smaller quantities of antibody than binding measurements with whole cells.

The most potent humanized variant designed by molecular modeling, huMAb4D5-8, contains 5 FR residues from muMAb4D5. This antibody binds the $p185^{HER2}$ ECD 3-fold *more* tightly than does muMAb4D5 itself (Table 3) and has comparable anti-proliferative activity with SK-BR-3 cells (Fig. 3). In contrast, huMAb4D5-1 is the most humanized but least potent muMAb4D5 variant, created by simply installing the muMAb4D5 CDRs into the consensus human sequences. huMAb4D5-1 binds the $p185^{HER2}$ ECD 80-fold *less* tightly than does the murine antibody and has no detectable anti-proliferative activity at the highest antibody concentration investigated (16 μg/ml).

The anti-proliferative activity of huMAb4D5 variants against $p185^{HER2}$ overexpressing SK-BR-3 cells is not simply correlated with their binding affinity for the $p185^{HER2}$ ECD. For

example, installation of three murine residues into the V_H domain of huMAb4D5-2 (D73T, L78A and A93S) to create huMAb4D5-3 does not change the antigen binding affinity but does confer significant anti-proliferative activity (Table 3).

The importance of V_H residue 71 (Tramontano, A. *et al.*, *J. Mol. Biol.* **215**:175-182 (1990)) is supported by the observed 5-fold increase in affinity for $p185^{HER2}$ ECD on replacement of R71 in huMAb4D5-1 with the corresponding murine residue, alanine (huMAb4D5-2). In contrast, replacing V_H L78 in huMAb4D5-4 with the murine residue, alanine (huMAb4D5-5), does not significantly change the affinity for the $p185^{HER2}$ ECD or change anti-proliferative activity, suggesting that residue 78 is not of critical functional significance to huMAb4D5 and its ability to interact properly with the extracellular domain of $p185^{HER2}$.

V_L residue 66 is usually a glycine in human and murine κ chain sequences (Kabat, E. A. *et al.*, *Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest* (National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, 1987)) but an arginine occupies this position in the muMAb4D5 k light chain. The side chain of residue 66 is likely to affect the conformation of V_L-CDR1 and V_L-CDR2 and the hairpin turn at 68-69 (Fig. 4). Consistent with the importance of this residue, the mutation V_L G66R (huMAb4D5-3 → huMAb4D5-5) increases the affinity for the $p185^{HER2}$ ECD by 4-fold with a concomitant increase in anti-proliferative activity.

From molecular modeling it appears that the tyrosyl side chain of muMAb4D5 V_L residue 55 may either stabilize the conformation of V_H-CDR3 or provide an interaction at the V_L-V_H interface. The latter function may be dependent upon the presence of V_H Y102. In the context of huMAb4D5-5 the mutations V_L E55Y (huMAb4D5-6) and V_H V102Y (huMAb4D5-7) individually increase the affinity for $p185^{HER2}$ ECD by 5-fold and 2-fold respectively, whereas together (huMAb4D5-8) they increase the affinity by 11-fold. This is consistent with either proposed role of V_L Y55 and V_H Y102.

Secondary Immune Function of huMAb4D5-8. MuMAb4D5 inhibits the growth of human breast tumor cells which overexpress $p185^{HER2}$ (Hudziak, R. M. *et al.*, *Molec. Cell. Biol.* **9**:1165-1172 (1989)). The antibody, however, does not offer the possibility of direct tumor cytotoxic effects. This possibility does arise in huMAb4D5-8 as a result of its high affinity (K_d = 0.1 μM) and its human IgG_1 subtype. Table 4 compares the ADCC mediated by huMAb4D5-8 with muMAb4D5 on a normal lung epithelial cell line, WI-38, which expresses a low level of $p185^{HER2}$ and on SK-BR-3, which expresses a high level of $p185^{HER2}$. The results demonstrate that: (1) huMAb4D5 has a greatly enhanced ability to carry out ADCC as compared with its murine parent; and (2) that this activity may be selective for cell types

which overexpress p185^{HER2}.

DISCUSSION

MuMAb4D5 is potentially useful for human therapy since it is cytostatic towards human breast and ovarian tumor lines overexpressing the *HER2*-encoded p185^{HER2} receptor-like tyrosine kinase. Since both breast and ovarian carcinomas are chronic diseases it is anticipated that the optimal MAb4D5 variant molecule for therapy will have low immunogenicity and will be cytotoxic rather than solely cytostatic in effect. Humanization of muMAb4D5 should accomplish these goals. We have identified 5 different huMAb4D5 variants which bind tightly to p185^{HER2} ECD ($K_d \leq 1$ nM) and which have significant anti-proliferative activity (Table 3). Furthermore huMAb4D5-8 but not muMAb4D5 mediates ADCC against human tumor cell lines overexpressing p185^{HER2} in the presence of human effector cells (Table 4) as anticipated for a human γ1 isotype (Brüggemann, M. *et al., J. Exp. Med.* **166**:1351-1361 (1987); Riechmann, L. *et al., Nature* **332**:323-327 (1988)).

Rapid humanization of huMAb4D5 was facilitated by the gene conversion mutagenesis strategy developed here using long preassembled oligonucleotides. This method requires less than half the amount of synthetic DNA as does total gene synthesis and does not require convenient restriction sites in the target DNA. Our method appears to be simpler and more reliable than a variant protocol recently reported (Rostapshov, V. M. *et al., FEBS Lett.* **249**:379-382 (1989)). Transient expression of huMAb4D5 in human embryonic kidney 293 cells permitted the isolation of a few hundred micrograms of huMAb4D5 variants for rapid characterization by growth inhibition and antigen binding affinity assays. Furthermore, different combinations of light and heavy chain were readily tested by co-transfection of corresponding cDNA expression vectors.

The crucial role of molecular modeling in the humanization of muMAb4D5 is illustrated by the designed variant huMAb4D5-8 which binds the p185^{HER2} ECD 250-fold more tightly than the simple CDR loop swap variant, huMAb4D5-1. It has previously been shown that the antigen binding affinity of a humanized antibody can be increased by mutagenesis based upon molecular modelling (Riechmann, L. *et al., Nature* **332**:323-327 (1988); Queen, C. *et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **86**:10029-10033 (1989)). Here we have extended this earlier work by others with a designed humanized antibody which binds its antigen 3-fold *more* tightly than the parent rodent antibody. While this result is gratifying, assessment of the success of the molecular modeling must await the outcome of X-ray structure determination. From analysis of huMAb4D5 variants (Table 3) it is apparent that their anti-proliferative activity is not a

simple function of their binding affinity for $p185^{HER2}$ ECD. For example the huMAb4D5-8 variant binds $p185^{HER2}$ 3-fold more tightly than muMAb4D5 but the humanized variant is slightly less potent in blocking the proliferation of SK-BR-3 cells. Additional huMAb4D5 variants are currently being constructed in an attempt to identify residues triggering the anti-proliferative activity and in an attempt to enhance this activity.

In addition to retaining tight receptor binding and the ability to inhibit cell growth, the huMAb4D5-8 also confers a secondary immune function (ADCC). This allows for direct cytotoxic activity of the humanized molecule in the presence of human effector cells. The apparent selectivity of the cytotoxic activity for cell types which overexpress $p185^{HER2}$ allows for the evolution of a straightforward clinic approach to those human cancers characterized by overexpression of the HER2 protooncogene.

Table 3. p185^{HER2} ECD binding affinity and anti-proliferative activities of MAb4D5 variants

	V_H Residue*					V_L Residue*			
MAb4D5 cell Variant proliferation‡	71 FR3	73 FR3	78 FR3	93 FR3	102 CDR3	55 CDR2	66 FR3	K_d† nM	Relative
huMAb4D5-1	R	D	L	A	V	E	G	25	102
huMAb4D5-2	Ala	D	L	A	V	E	G	4.7	101
huMAb4D5-3	Ala	Thr	Ala	Ser	V	E	G	4.4	66
huMAb4D5-4	Ala	Thr	L	Ser	V	E	Arg	0.82	56
huMAb4D5-5	Ala	Thr	Ala	Ser	V	E	Arg	1.1	48
huMAb4D5-6	Ala	Thr	Ala	Ser	V	Tyr	Arg	0.22	51
huMAb4D5-7	Ala	Thr	Ala	Ser	Tyr	E	Arg	0.62	53
huMAb4D5-8	Ala	Thr	Ala	Ser	Tyr	Tyr	Arg	0.10	54
muMAb4D5	Ala	Thr	Ala	Ser	Tyr	Tyr	Arg	0.30	37

* Human and murine residues are shown in one letter and three letter amino acid code respectively.

† K_d values for the p185^{HER2} ECD were determined using the method of Friguet *et al.* (43) and the standard error of each estimate is ≤ ± 10%.

‡ Proliferation of SK-BR-3 cells incubated for 96 hr with MAb4D5 variants shown as a percentage of the untreated control as described (Hudziak, R. M. *et al.*, *Molec. Cell. Biol.* **9**:1165-1172 (1989)). Data represent the maximal anti-proliferative effect for each variant (see Fig. 3A) calculated as the mean of triplicate determinations at a MAb4D5 concentration of 8 μg/ml. Data are all taken from the same experiment with an estimated standard error of

To 730

≤ ± 15%.

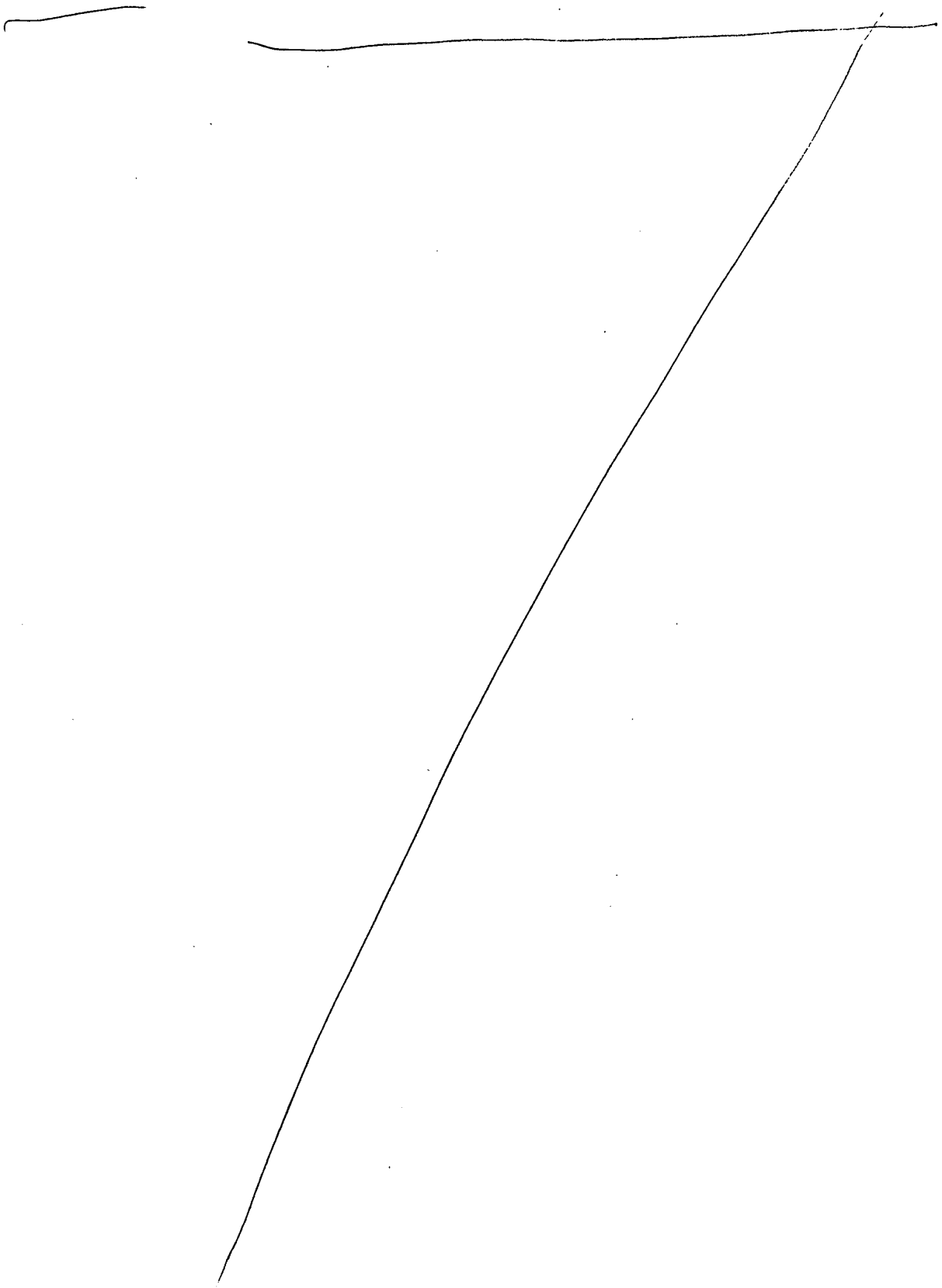


Table 4. Selectivity of antibody dependent tumor cell cytotoxicity mediated by huMAb4D5-8

Effector:Target ratio[†]	WI-38[*] muMAb4D5	WI-38[*] huMAb4D5-8	SK-BR-3 muMAb4D5	SK-BR-3 huMAb4D5-8	
A.[‡]	25:1	<1.0	9.3	7.5	40.6
	12.5:1	<1.0	11.1	4.7	36.8
	6.25:1	<1.0	8.9	0.9	35.2
	3.13:1	<1.0	8.5	4.6	19.6
B.	25:1	<1.0	3.1	6.1	33.4
	12.5:1	<1.0	1.7	5.5	26.2
	6.25:1	1.3	2.2	2.0	21.0
	3.13:1	<1.0	0.8	2.4	13.4

[*] Sensitivity to ADCC of two human cell lines (WI-38, normal lung epithelium; and SK-BR-3, human breast tumor cell line) are compared. WI-38 expresses a low level of $p185^{HER2}$ (0.6 pg per μg cell protein) and SK-BR-3 expresses a high level of $p185^{HER2}$ (64 pg $p185^{HER2}$ per μg cell protein), as determined by ELISA (Fendly *et al., J. Biol. Resp. Mod.* **9**:449-455 (1990)).

[†] ADCC assays were carried out as described in Brüggemann *et al., J. Exp. Med.* **166**:1351-1361 (1987). Effector to target ratios were of IL-2 activated human peripheral blood lymphocytes to either WI-38 fibroblasts or SK-BR-3 tumor cells in 96-well microtiter plates for 4 hours at 37 °C. Values given represent percent specific cell lysis as determined by ^{51}Cr release. Estimated standard error in these quadruplicate determinations was ≤ ±10%.

[‡] Monoclonal antibody concentrations used were 0.1 μg/ml (A) and 0.1 μg/ml (B).

EXAMPLE 2. Schematic Method for Humanizing an Antibody Sequence

This example illustrates one stepwise elaboration of the methods for creating a humanized sequence described above. It will be understood that not all of these steps are essential to the claimed invention, and that steps may be taken in different order.

1. ascertain a consensus human variable domain amino acid sequence and prepare from it a consensus structural model.
2. prepare model of import (the non-human domain to be humanized) variable domain sequences and note structural differences with respect to consensus human model.
3. identify CDR sequences in human and in import, both by using Kabat (*supra*, 1987) and crystal structure criteria. If there is any difference in CDR identity from the different criteria, use of crystal structure definition of the CDR, but retain the Kabat residues as important framework residues to import.
4. substitute import CDR sequences for human CDR sequences to obtain initial "humanized" sequence.
5. compare import non-CDR variable domain sequence to the humanized sequence and note divergences.
6. Proceed through the following analysis for each amino acid residue where the import diverges from the humanized.
    a. If the humanized residue represents a residue which is generally highly conserved across all species, use the residue in the humanized sequence. If the residue is not conserved across all species, proceed with the analysis described in 6b.
    b. If the residue is not generally conserved across all species, ask if the residue is generally conserved in humans.
        i. If the residue is generally conserved in humans but the import residue differs, examine the structural models of the import and human sequences and determine if the import residue would be likely to affect the binding or biological

activity of the CDRs by considering 1) could it bind antigen directly and 2) could it affect the conformation of the CDR. If the conclusion is that an affect on the CDRs is likely, substitute the import residue. If the conclusion is that a CDR affect is unlikely, leave the humanized residue unchanged.

ii. If the residue is also not generally conserved in humans, examine the structural models of the import and human sequences and determine if the import residue would be likely to affect the binding or biological activity of the CDRs be considering 1) could it bind antigen directly and 2) could it affect the conformation of the CDR. If the conclusion is that an affect on the CDRs is likely, substitute the import residue. If the conclusion is that a CDR affect is unlikely, proceed to the next step.

a) Examine the structural models of the import and human sequences and determine if the residue is exposed on the surface of the domain or is buried within. If the residue is exposed, use the residue in the humanized sequence. If the residue is buried, proceed to the next step.

(i) Examine the structural models of the import and human sequences and determine if the residue is likely to affect the V_L - V_H interface. Residues involved with the interface include: 34L, 36L, 38L, 43L, 33L, 36L, 85L, 87L, 89L, 91L, 96L, 98L, 35H, 37H, 39H, 43H, 45H, 47H, 60H, 91H, 93H, 95H, 100H, and 103H. If no effect is likely, use the residue in the humanized sequence. If some affect is likely, substitute the import residue.

7. Search the import sequence, the consensus sequence and the humanized sequence for glycosylation sites outside the CDRs, and determine if this glycosylation site is likely to have any affect on

antigen binding and/or biological activity. If no effect is likely, use the human sequence at that site; if some affect is likely, eliminate the glycosylation site or use the import sequence at that site.

8. After completing the above analysis, determine the planned humanized sequence and prepare and test a sample. If the sample does not bind well to the target antigen, examine the particular residues listed below, regardless of the question of residue identity between the import and humanized residues.

   a. Examine particular peripheral (non-CDR) variable domain residues that may, due to their position, possibly interact directly with a macromolecular antigen, including the following residues (where the * indicates residues which have been found to interact with antigen based on crystal structures):

      i. Variable light domain: 36, 46, **49***, 63-70

      ii. Variable heavy domain: 2, **47***, 68, 70, 73-76.

   b. Examine particular variable domain residues which could interact with, or otherwise affect, the conformation of variable domain CDRs, including the following (not including CDR residues themselves, since it is assumed that, because the CDRs interact with one another, any residue in one CDR could potentially affect the conformation of another CDR residue) (L= LIGHT, H=HEAVY, residues appearing in **bold** are indicated to be structurally important according the Chothia *et al.*, Nature 342:877 (1989), and residues appearing in *italic* were altered during humanization by Queen *et al.* (PDL), Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 86:10029 (1989) and Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 88:2869 (1991).):

      i. Variable light domain:

         a) CDR-1 (residues 24L-34L): **2L**, 4L, 66L-69L, **71L**

         b) CDR-2 (residues 50L-56L): 35L, 46L, *47L*, **48L**, *49L*, 58L, 62L, **64L**-66L, 71L, 73L

         c) CDR-3 (residues 89L-97L): 2L, 4L, 36L, 98L, 37H, 45H, 47H, 58H, 60H

      ii. Variable heavy domain:

a) CDR-1 (residues 26H-35H): 2H, 4H, 24H, 36H, 71H, 73H, 76H, 78H, 92H, ***94H***

b) CDR-2 (residues 50H-55H): 49H, 69H, 69H, **71H**, 73H, 78H

c) CDR-3 (residues 95H-102H): examine all residues as possible interaction partners with this loop, because this loop varies in size and conformation much more than the other CDRs.

9. If after step 8 the humanized variable domain still is lacking in desired binding, repeat step 8. In addition, re-investigate any buried residues which might affect the V_L - V_H interface (but which would not directly affect CDR conformation). Additionally, evaluate the accessibility of non-CDR residues to solvent.

EXAMPLE 3. Engineering a Humanized Bispecific F(ab')$_2$ Fragment

This example demonstrates the construction of a humanized bispecific antibody (BsF(ab')$_2$v1 by separate *E. coli* expression of each Fab' arm followed by directed chemical coupling *in vitro*. BsF(ab')$_2$ v1 (anti-CD3 / anti-p185^{HER2}) was demonstrated to retarget the cytotoxic activity of human CD3$^+$ CTL *in vitro* against the human breast tumor cell line, SK-BR-3, which overexpresses the p185^{HER2} product of the protooncogene *HER2*. This example demonstrates the minimalistic humanization strategy of installing as few murine residues as possible into a human antibody in order to recruit antigen-binding affinity and biological properties comparable to that of the murine parent antibody. This strategy proved very successful for the anti-p185^{HER2}arm of BsF(ab')$_2$v1. In contrast BsF(ab')$_2$ v1 binds to T cells *via* its anti-CD3 arm much less efficiently than does the chimeric BsF(ab')$_2$ which contains the variable domains of the murine parent anti-CD3 antibody. Here we have constructed additional BsF(ab')$_2$ fragments containing variant anti-CD3 arms with selected murine residues restored in an attempt to improve antibody binding to T cells. One such variant, Bs F(ab')$_2$ v9, was created by replacing six residues in the second hypervariable loop of the anti-CD3 heavy chain variable domain of BsF(ab')$_2$ v1 with their counterparts from the murine parent anti-CD3 antibody. BsF(ab')$_2$ v9 binds to T cells (Jurkat) much more efficiently than does BsF(ab')$_2$ v1 and almost as efficiently as the chimeric BsF(ab')$_2$. This improvement in the efficiency of T cell binding of the humanized BsF(ab')$_2$ is an important step in its development as a potential therapeutic agent for the treatment of p185^{HER2}-overexpressing cancers.

Bispecific antibodies (BsAbs) with specificities for tumor-associated antigens and surface markers on immune effector cells have proved effective for retargeting effector cells to kill tumor targets both *in vitro* and *in vivo* (reviewed by Fanger, M. W. *et al., Immunol. Today* **10**: 92-99 (1989); Fanger, M. W. *et al., Immunol. Today* **12**: 51-54 (1991); and Nelson, H., *Cancer Cells* **3**: 163-172 (1991)). BsF(ab')$_2$ fragments have often been used in preference to intact BsAbs in retargeted cellular cytotoxicity to avoid the risk of killing innocent bystander cells binding to the Fc region of the antibody. An additional advantage of BsF(ab')$_2$ over intact BsAbs is that they

are generally much simpler to prepare free of contaminating monospecific molecules (reviewed by Songsivilai, S. and Lachmann, P. J., *Clin. Exp. Immunol.* **79**: 315-321 (1990) and Nolan, O. and O'Kennedy, R., *Biochim. Biophys. Acta* **1040**: 1-11 (1990)).

$BsF(ab')_2$ fragments are traditionally constructed by directed chemical coupling of Fab' fragments obtained by limited proteolysis plus mild reduction of the parent rodent monoclonal Ab (Brennan, M. *et al., Science* **229**, 81-83 (1985) and *Glennie, M. J. et al., J. Immunol.* **139**: 2367-2375 (1987)). One such $BsF(ab')_2$ fragment (anti-glioma associated antigen / anti-CD3) was found to have clinical efficacy in glioma patients (Nitta, T. *et al., Lancet* **335**: 368-371 (1990) and another $BsF(ab')_2$ (anti-indium chelate / anti-carcinoembryonic antigen) allowed clinical imaging of colorectal carcinoma (Stickney, D. R. *et al., Antibody, Immunoconj. Radiopharm.* **2**: 1-13 (1989)). Future $BsF(ab')_2$ destined for clinical applications are likely to be constructed from antibodies which are either human or at least "humanized" (Riechmann, L. *et al., Nature* **332**: 323-327 (1988) to reduce their immunogenicity (Hale, G. *et al., Lancet* **i**: 1394-1399 (1988)).

Recently a facile route to a fully humanized $BsF(ab')_2$ fragment designed for tumor immunotherapy has been demonstrated (Shalaby, M. R. *et al., J. Exp. Med.* **175**: 217-225 (1992)). This approach involves separate *E. coli* expression of each Fab' arm followed by traditional directed chemical coupling *in vitro* to form the $BsF(ab')_2$. One arm of the $BsF(ab')_2$ was a humanized version (Carter, P. *et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* (1992a) and Carter, P., *et al., Bio/Technology* **10**: 163-167 (1992b)) of the murine monoclonal Ab 4D5 which is directed against the $p185^{HER2}$ product of the protooncogene *HER2* (c-*erbB*-2) (Fendly, B. M. *et al.. Cancer Res.* **50**: 1550-1558 (1989)). The humanization of the antibody 4D5 is shown in Example 1 of this application. The second arm was a minimalistically humanized anti-CD3 antibody (Shalaby *et al. supra*) which was created by installing the CDR loops from the variable domains of the murine parent monoclonal Ab UCHT1 (Beverley, P. C. L. and Callard, R. E., *Eur. J. Immunol.* **11**: 329-334 (1981)) into the humanized anti-$p185^{HER2}$ antibody. The $BsF(ab')_2$ fragment containing the most potent humanized anti-CD3 variant (v1) was demonstrated by flow cytometry to bind specifically to a tumor target

overexpressing $p185^{HER2}$ and to human peripheral blood mononuclear cells carrying CD3. In addition, Bs $F(ab')_2$ v1 enhanced the cytotoxic effects of activated human CTL 4-fold against SK-BR-3 tumor cells overexpressing $p185^{HER2}$. The example descries efforts to improve the antigen binding affinity of the humanized anti-CD3 arm by the judicious recruitment of a small number of additional murine residues into the minimalistically humanized anti-CD3 variable domains.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Construction of mutations in the anti-CD3 variable region genes.

The construction of genes encoding humanized anti-CD3 variant 1 (v1) variable light (V_L) and heavy (V_H) chain domains in phagemid pUC119 has been described (Shalaby *et al. supra*). Additional anti-CD3 variants were generated using an efficient site-directed mutagenesis method (Carter, P., *Mutagenesis: a practical approach*, (M. J. McPherson, Ed.), Chapter 1, IRL Press, Oxford, UK (1991)) using mismatched oligonucleotides which either install or remove unique restriction sites. Oligonucleotides used are listed below using lowercase to indicate the targeted mutations. Corresponding coding changes are denoted by the starting amino acid in one letter code followed by the residue numbered according to Kabat, E. A. *et al.*, *Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest*, 5th edition, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, USA (1991), then the replacement amino acid and finally the identity of the anti-CD3 variant:

HX11, 5' GTAGATAAATCCtctAACACAGCCTAtCTGCAAATG 3' (SEQ.ID. NO. 11) V_H K75S, v6;

HX12, 5' GTAGATAAATCCAAAtctACAGCCTAtCTGCAAATG 3' (SEQ.ID. NO. 12) V_H N76S, v7;

HX13, 5' GTAGATAAATCCtcttctACAGCCTAtCTGCAAATG 3' (SEQ.ID. NO. 13) V_H K75S:N76S, v8;

X14, 5' CTTATAAAGGTGTTtCcACCTATaaCcAgAaatTCAA GGatCGTTTCACgATAtcCGTAGATAAATCC 3' (SEQ.ID.NO. 14) V_H T57S:A60N:D61Q:S62K:V63F:G65D, v9;

LX6, 5' CTATACCTCCCGTCTgcatTCTGGAGTCCC 3' (SEQ.ID. NO. 15)

V_L E55H, v11.

Oligonucleotides HX11, HX12 and HX13 each remove a site for BspMI, whereas LX6 removes a site for XhoI and HX14 installs a site for EcoRV (bold). Anti-CD3 variant v10 was constructed from v9 by site-directed mutagenesis using oligonucleotide HX13. Mutants were verified by dideoxynucleotide sequencing (Sanger, F. *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **74**: 5463-5467 (1977)).

E. coli expression of Fab' fragments

The expression plasmid, pAK19, for the co-secretion of light chain and heavy chain Fd' fragment of the most preferred humanized anti-p185^{HER2} variant, HuMAb4D5-8, is described in Carter *et al.*, 1992b, *supra*. Briefly, the Fab' expression unit is bicistronic with both chains under the transcriptional control of the *phoA* promoter. Genes encoding humanized V_L and V_H domains are precisely fused on their 5' side to a gene segment encoding the heat-stable enterotoxin II signal sequence and on their 3' side to human k_1 C_L and IgG1 C_H1 constant domain genes, respectively. The C_H1 gene is immediately followed by a sequence encoding the hinge sequence CysAlaAla and followed by a bacteriophage λ t_0 transcriptional terminator. Fab' expression plasmids for chimeric and humanized anti-CD3 variants (v1 to v4, Shalaby *et al.*,*supra*; v6 to v12, this study) were created from pAK19 by precisely replacing anti-p185^{HER2} V_L and V_H gene segments with those encoding murine and corresponding humanized variants of the anti-CD3 antibody, respectively, by sub-cloning and site-directed mutagenesis. The Fab' expression plasmid for the most potent humanized anti-CD3 variant identified in this study (v9) is designated pAK22. The anti-p185^{HER2} Fab' fragment was secreted from *E. coli* K12 strain 25F2 containing plasmid pAK19 grown for 32 to 40 hr at 37°C in an aerated 10 liter fermentor. The final cell density was 120-150 OD_{550} and the titer of soluble and functional anti-p185^{HER2} Fab' was 1-2 g/liter as judged by antigen binding ELISA (Carter *et al.*, 1992b, *supra*). Anti-CD3 Fab' variants were secreted from *E. coli* containing corresponding expression plasmids using very similar fermentation protocols. The highest expression titers of chimeric and

humanized anti-CD3 variants were 200 mg/liter and 700 mg/liter, respectively, as judged by total immunoglobulin ELISA.

Construction of BsF(ab')$_2$ fragments

Fab' fragments were directly recovered from *E. coli* fermentation pastes in the free thiol form (Fab'-SH) by affinity purification on Streptococcal protein G at pH 5 in the presence of EDTA (Carter *et al.*, 1992b *supra*). Thioether linked BsF(ab')$_2$ fragments (anti-p185^{HER2} / anti-CD3) were constructed by the procedure of Glennie *et al. supra* with the following modifications. Anti-p185^{HER2} Fab'-SH in 100 mM Tris acetate, 5 mM EDTA (pH 5.0) was reacted with 0.1 vol of 40 mM N,N'-1,2-phenylenedimalemide (*o*-PDM) in dimethyl formamide for ~1.5 hr at 20 °C. Excess *o*-PDM was removed by protein G purification of the Fab' maleimide derivative (Fab'-mal) followed by buffer exchange into 20 mM sodium acetate, 5 mM EDTA (pH 5.3) (coupling buffer) using centriprep-30 concentrators (Amicon). The total concentration of Fab' variants was estimated from the measured absorbance at 280 nm (HuMAb4D5-8 Fab' $e^{0.1\%}$ = 1.56, Carter *et al.*, 1992b, *supra*). The free thiol content of Fab' preparations was estimated by reaction with 5, 5'-dithiobis(2-nitrobenzoic acid) as described by Creighton, T. E., *Protein structure: a practical approach*, (T. E. Creighton, Ed.), Chapter 7, IRL Press, Oxford, UK (1990). Equimolar amounts of anti-p185^{HER2} Fab'-mal (assuming quantitative reaction of Fab'-SH with *o*-PDM) and each anti-CD3 Fab'-SH variant were coupled together at a combined concentration of 1 to 2.5 mg/ml in the coupling buffer for 14 to 48 hr at 4 °C. The coupling reaction was adjusted to 4 mM cysteine at pH 7.0 and incubated for 15 min at 20 °C to reduce any unwanted disulfide-linked F(ab')$_2$ formed. These reduction conditions are sufficient to reduce inter-heavy chain disulfide bonds with virtually no reduction of the disulfide between light and heavy chains. Any free thiols generated were then blocked with 50 mM iodoacetamide. BsF(ab')$_2$ was isolated from the coupling reaction by S100-HR (Pharmacia) size exclusion chromatography (2.5 cm x 100 cm) in the presence of PBS. The BsF(ab')$_2$ samples were passed through a 0.2 mm filter flash frozen in liquid nitrogen and stored at −70 °C.

Flow cytometric analysis of F(ab')$_2$ binding to Jurkat cells

The Jurkat human acute T cell leukemia cell line was purchased from the American Type Culture Collection (~~Rockville, MD~~ Manassas, VA) (ATCC TIB 152) and grown as recommended by the ATCC.[1] Aliquots of 10^6 Jurkat cells were incubated with appropriate concentrations of BsF(ab')$_2$ (anti-p185^{HER2} / anti-CD3 variant) or control mono-specific anti-p185^{HER2} F(ab')$_2$ in PBS plus 0.1% (w/v) bovine serum albumin and 10 mM sodium azide for 45 min at 4 °C. The cells were washed and then incubated with fluorescein-conjugated goat anti-human F(ab')$_2$ (Organon Teknika, West Chester, PA) for 45 min at 4 °C. Cells were washed and analyzed on a FACScan® (Becton Dickinson and Co., Mountain View, CA). Cells (8 x 10^3) were acquired by list mode and gated by forward light scatter *versus* side light scatter excluding dead cells and debris.

RESULTS

Design of humanized anti-CD3 variants

The most potent humanized anti-CD3 variant previously identified, v1, differs from the murine parent antibody, UCHT1 at 19 out of 107 amino acid residues within V_L and at 37 out of 122 positions within V_H (Shalaby *et al.*, *supra*) 1992). Here we recruited back additional murine residues into anti-CD3 v1 in an attempt to improve the binding affinity for CD3. The strategy chosen was a compromise between minimizing both the number of additional murine residues recruited and the number of anti-CD3 variants to be analyzed. We focused our attentions on a few CDR residues which were originally kept as human sequences in our minimalistic humanization regime. Thus human residues in V_H CDR2 of anti-CD3 v1 were replaced *en bloc* with their murine counterparts to give anti-CD3 v9: T57S:A60N:D61Q:S62K:V63F:G65D (SEQ ID NO:20) (~~Fig. 5~~). Similarly, the human residue E55 in V_L CDR2 of anti-CD3 v1 was replaced with histidine from the murine anti-CD3 antibody to generate anti-CD3 v11. In addition, V_H framework region (FR) residues 75 and 76 in anti-CD3 v1 were also replaced with their murine counterparts to create anti-CD3 v8: K75S:N76S. V_H residues 75 and 76 are located in a loop close to V_H CDR1 and CDR2 and therefore might

influence antigen binding. Additional variants created by combining mutations at these three sites are described below.

Preparation of BsF(ab')$_2$ fragments

Soluble and functional anti-p185^{HER2} and anti-CD3 Fab' fragments were recovered directly from corresponding *E. coli* fermentation pastes with the single hinge cysteine predominantly in the free thiol form (75-100 % Fab'-SH) by affinity purification on Streptococcal protein G at pH 5 in the presence of EDTA (Carter *et al.*, 1992b, *supra*). Thioether-linked BsF(ab')$_2$ fragments were then constructed by directed coupling using *o*-PDM as described by Glennie *et al.*, *supra*. One arm was always the most potent humanized anti-p185^{HER2} variant, HuMAb4D5-8 (Carter *et al.*, 1992a, *supra*) and the other either a chimeric or humanized variant of the anti-CD3 antibody. Anti-p185^{HER2} Fab'-SH was reacted with *o*-PDM to form the maleimide derivative (Fab'-mal) and then coupled to the Fab'-SH for each anti-CD3 variant. F(ab')$_2$ was then purified away from unreacted Fab' by size exclusion chromatography as shown for a representative preparation (BsF(ab')$_2$ v8) in data not shown. The F(ab')$_2$ fragment represents ~54% of the total amount of antibody fragments (by mass) as judged by integration of the chromatograph peaks.

SDS-PAGE analysis of this BsF(ab')$_2$ v8 preparation under non-reducing conditions gave one major band with the expected mobility (M_r ~ 96 kD) as well as several very minor bands (data not shown). Amino-terminal sequence analysis of the major band after electroblotting on to polyvinylidene difluoride membrane Matsudaira, P., *J. Biol. Chem.* **262**: 10035-10038 (1987) gave the expected mixed sequence from a stoichiometric 1:1 mixture of light and heavy chains (V_L / V_H: D/E, I/V, Q/Q, M/L, T/V, Q/E, S/S) expected for BsF(ab')$_2$. The amino terminal region of both light chains are identical as are both heavy chains and correspond to consensus human FR sequences. We have previously demonstrated that F(ab')$_2$ constructed by directed chemical coupling carry both anti-p185^{HER2} and anti-CD3 antigen specificities (Shalaby *et al.*, *supra*). The level of contamination of the BsF(ab')$_2$ with monospecific F(ab')$_2$ is likely to be very low since mock coupling reactions with either anti-p185^{HER2} Fab'-mal or anti-CD3 Fab'-SH alone did not yield detectable

quantities of F(ab')$_2$. Furthermore the coupling reaction was subjected to a mild reduction step followed by alkylation to remove trace amounts of disulfide-linked F(ab')$_2$ that might be present. SDS-PAGE of the purified F(ab')$_2$ under reducing conditions gave two major bands with electrophoretic mobility and amino terminal sequence anticipated for free light chain and thioether-linked heavy chain dimers.

Scanning LASER densitometry of a *o*-PDM coupled F(ab')$_2$ preparation suggest that the minor species together represent ~10% of the protein. These minor contaminants were characterized by amino terminal sequence analysis and were tentatively identified on the basis of stoichiometry of light and heavy chain sequences and their electrophoretic mobility (data not shown). These data are consistent with the minor contaminants including imperfect F(ab')$_2$ in which the disulfide bond between light and heavy chains is missing in one or both arms, trace amounts of Fab' and heavy chain thioether-linked to light chain.

Binding of BsF(ab')$_2$ to Jurkat cells

Binding of BsF(ab')$_2$ containing different anti-CD3 variants to Jurkat cells (human acute T cell leukemia) was investigated by flow cytometry (data not shown). BsF(ab')$_2$ v9 binds much more efficiently to Jurkat cells than does our starting molecule, BsF(ab')$_2$ v1, and almost as efficiently as the chimeric BsF(ab')$_2$. Installation of additional murine residues into anti-CD3 v9 to create v10 (V_H K75S:N76S) and v12 (V_H K75S:N76S plus V_L E55H) did not further improve binding of corresponding BsF(ab')$_2$ to Jurkat cells. Nor did recruitment of these murine residues into anti-CD3 v1 improve Jurkat binding: V_H K75S (v6), V_H N76S (v7), V_H K75S:N76S (v8), V_L E55H (v11) (not shown). BsF(ab')$_2$ v9 was chosen for future study since it is amongst the most efficient variants in binding to Jurkat cells and contains fewest murine residues in the humanized anti-CD3 arm. A monospecific anti-p185^{HER2} F(ab')$_2$ did not show significant binding to Jurkat cells consistent with the interaction being mediated through the anti-CD3 arm.

DISCUSSION

A minimalistic strategy was chosen to humanize the anti-p185^{HER2}

(Carter *et al.*, 1992a, *supra*) and anti-CD3 arms (Shalaby *et al.*, *supra*) of the BsF(ab')$_2$ in this study in an attempt to minimize the potential immunogenicity of the resulting humanized antibody in the clinic. Thus we tried to install the minimum number of murine CDR and FR residues into the context of consensus human variable domain sequences as required to recruit antigen-binding affinity and biological properties comparable to the murine parent antibody. Molecular modeling was used firstly to predict the murine FR residues which might be important to antigen binding and secondly to predict the murine CDR residues that might *not* be required. A small number of humanized variants were then constructed to test these predictions.

Our humanization strategy was very successful for the anti-p185^{HER2} antibody where one out of eight humanized variants (HuMAb4D5-8, IgG1) was identified that bound the p185^{HER2} antigen ~3-fold more tightly than the parent murine antibody (Carter *et al.*, 1992a, *supra*). HuMAb4D5-8 contains a total of five murine FR residues and nine murine CDR residues, including V_H CDR2 residues 60-65, were discarded in favor of human counterparts. In contrast, BsF(ab')$_2$ v1 containing the most potent humanized anti-CD3 variant out of four originally constructed (Shalaby *et al.*, *supra*) binds J6 cells with an affinity (K_d) of 140 nM which is ~70-fold weaker than that of the corresponding chimeric BsF(ab')$_2$.

Here we have restored T cell binding of the humanized anti-CD3 close to that of the chimeric variant by replacing six human residues in V_H CDR2 with their murine counterparts: T57S:A60N:D61Q:S62K:V63F:G65D (anti-CD3 v9, Fig. 5). It appears more likely that these murine residues enhance antigen binding *indirectly* by influencing the conformation of residues in the N-terminal part of V_H CDR2 rather than by *directly* contacting antigen. Firstly, only N-terminal residues in V_H CDR2 (50-58) have been found to contact antigen in one or more of eight crystallographic structures of antibody/antigen complexes (Kabat *et al.*, *supra*; and Mian, I. S. *et al.*, *J. Mol. Biol.* **217**: 133-151 (1991), Fig. 5). Secondly, molecular modeling suggests that residues in the C-terminal part of V_H CDR2 are at least partially buried (Fig. 5). BsF(ab')$_2$ v9 binds to SK-BR-3 breast tumor cells with equal efficiency to BsF(ab')$_2$ v1 and chimeric BsF(ab')$_2$ as anticipated since the anti-p185^{HER2} arm is identical in all of these molecules (Shalaby *et al.*, *supra*, not

shown).

Our novel approach to the construction of BsF(ab')$_2$ fragments exploits an *E. coli* expression system which secretes humanized Fab' fragments at gram per liter titers and permits their direct recovery as Fab'-SH (Carter *et al.*, 1992b, *supra*). Traditional directed chemical coupling of Fab'-SH fragments is then used to form BsF(ab')$_2$ *in vitro* (Brennan *et al.*,*supra*; and Glennie *et al.*, *supra*). This route to Fab'-SH obviates problems which are inherent in their generation from intact antibodies: differences in susceptibility to proteolysis and nonspecific cleavage resulting in heterogeneity, low yield as well as partial reduction that is not completely selective for the hinge disulfide bonds. The strategy of using *E. coli*-derived Fab'-SH containing a single hinge cysteine abolishes some sources of heterogeneity in BsF(ab')$_2$ preparation such as intra-hinge disulfide formation and contamination with intact parent antibody whilst greatly diminishes others, eg. formation of F(ab')$_3$ fragments.

BsF(ab')2 fragments constructed here were thioether-linked as originally described by Glennie *et al.*, *supra* with future *in vivo* testing of these molecules in mind. Thioether bonds, unlike disulfide bonds, are not susceptible to cleavage by trace amounts of thiol, which led to the proposal that thioether-linked F(ab')$_2$ may be more stable than disulfide-linked F(ab')$_2$ *in vivo* (Glennie *et al.*, *supra*). This hypothesis is supported by our preliminary pharmacokinetic experiments in normal mice which suggest that thioether-linked BsF(ab')$_2$ v1 has a 3- fold longer plasma residence time than BsF(ab')$_2$ v1 linked by a single disulfide bond. Disulfide and thioether-linked chimeric BsF(ab')$_2$ were found to be indistinguishable in their efficiency of cell binding and in their retargeting of CTL cytotoxicity, which suggests that *o*-PDM directed coupling does not compromise binding of the BsF(ab')$_2$ to either antigen (not shown). Nevertheless the nature of the linkage appears not to be critical since a disulfide-linked BsF(ab')$_2$ (murine anti-p185^{HER2} / murine anti-CD3) was recently shown by others (Nishimura *et al.*, *Int. J. Cancer* **50**: 800-804 (1992) to have potent anti-tumor activity in nude mice. Our previous study (Shalaby *et al.*, *supra*) together with this one and that of Nishimura, T. *et al.*, *supra* improve the potential for using BsF(ab')$_2$ in targeted immunotherapy of p185^{HER2}-overexpressing cancers in humans.

EXAMPLE 4. Humanization of an anti-CD18 antibody

A murine antibody directed against the leukocyte adhesion receptor β-chain (known as the H52 antibody) was humanized following the methods described above. Figures 6A and 6B provide amino acid sequence comparisons for the murine and humanized antibody light chains and heavy chains.

CLAIMS

WE CLAIM:

1. A method for making a humanized antibody comprising amino acid sequence of a non-human, import antibody and a human antibody, comprising the steps of:

   a. obtaining the amino acid sequences of at least a portion of an import variable domain and of a consensus human variable domain;

   b. identifying Complementarity Determining Region (CDR) amino acid sequences in the import and the human amino variable domain sequences;

   c. substituting an import CDR amino acid sequence for the corresponding human CDR amino acid sequence;

   d. aligning the amino acid sequences of a Framework Region (FR) of the import antibody and the corresponding FR of the consensus antibody;

   e. identifying import antibody FR residues in the aligned FR sequences that are non-homologous to the corresponding consensus antibody residues;

   f. determining if the non-homologous import amino acid residue is reasonably expected to have at least one of the following effects:

      1. non-covalently binds antigen directly,
      2. interacts with a CDR; or
      3. participates in the V_L - V_H interface; and

   g. for any non-homologous import antibody amino acid residue which is reasonably expected to have at least one of these effects, substituting that residue for the corresponding amino acid residue in the consensus antibody FR sequence.

2. The method of claim 1, having an additional step of determining if any such non-homologous residues are exposed on the surface of the domain or buried within it, and if the residue is exposed, retaining the consensus residue.

3. The method of claim 1, having the additional steps of searching the import variable domain sequence for glycosylation sites, determining if any such glycosylation site is reasonably expected to affect the antigen binding or affinity of the antibody, and if so, substituting the glycosylation site into the consensus sequence.

4. The method of claim 1, having the additional steps of searching the consensus variable domain sequence for glycosylation sites which are not present at the corresponding amino acid in the import sequence, and if the glycosylation site is not present in the import sequence, substituting the import amino acid residues for the amino acid residues comprising the consensus glycosylation site.

5. The method of claim 1, having an additional step which comprises aligning import antibody and consensus antibody FR sequences, identifying import antibody FR residues which are non-homologous with the aligned consensus FR sequence, and for each such non-homologous import antibody FR residue, determining if the corresponding consensus antibody residue represents a residue which is highly conserved across all species at that site, and if it is so conserved, preparing a humanized antibody which comprises the consensus antibody amino acid residue at that site.

6. The method of claim 1, wherein the corresponding consensus antibody residues are selected from the group consisting of 4L, 35L, 36L, 38L, 43L, 44L, 46L, 58L, 62L, 63L, 64L, 65L, 66L, 67L, 68L, 69L, 70L, 71L, 73L, 85L, 87L, 98L, 2H, 4H, 24H, 36H, 37H, 39H, 43H, 45H, 49H, 58H, 60H, 67H, 68H, 69H, 70H, 73H, 74H, 75H, 76H, 78H, 91H, 92H, 93H, and 103H.

7. A method comprising providing at least a portion of an import, non-human antibody variable domain amino acid sequence having a CDR and a FR, obtaining the amino acid sequence of at least a portion of a consensus human antibody variable domain having a CDR and a FR,

substituting the non-human CDR for the human CDR in the consensus human antibody variable domain, and then substituting an amino acid residue for the consensus amino acid residue at at least one of the following sites:

4L, 35L, 36L, 38L, 43L, 44L, 46L, 58L, 62L, 63L, 64L, 65L, 66L, 67L, 68L, 69L, 70L, 71L, 73L, 85L, 87L, 98L, 2H, 4H, 24H, 36H, 37H, 39H, 43H, 45H, 49H, 58H, 60H, 67H, 68H, 69H, 70H, 73H, 74H, 75H, 76H, 78H, 91H, 92H, 93H, and 103H.

8. The method of claim 7, wherein the substituted residue is the residue found at the corresponding location of the non-human ~~antibody~~ variable domain.

9. The method of claim 1 ~~or 7~~, wherein the consensus human variable domain is a consensus based on human variable domains and additionally variable domains from species other than human.

10. A humanized antibody variable domain having a non-human CDR incorporated into a human antibody variable domain, wherein the improvement comprises substituting an amino acid residue for the human residue at a site selected from the group consisting of:
4L, 35L, 36L, 38L, 43L, 44L, 46L, 58L, 62L, 63L, 64L, 65L, 66L, 67L, 68L, 69L, 70L, 71L, 73L, 85L, 87L, 98L, 2H, 4H, 24H, 36H, 37H, 39H, 43H, 45H, 49H, 58H, 60H, 67H, 68H, 69H, 70H, 73H, 74H, 75H, 76H, 78H, 91H, 92H, 93H, and 103H.

11. The humanized antibody variable domain of claim 10, wherein the substituted residue is the residue found at the corresponding location of the non-human antibody from which the non-human CDR was obtained.

12. The humanized antibody variable domain of claim 10, wherein no human FR residue other than those set forth in the group has been substituted.

13. A polypeptide comprising the amino acid sequence:
DIQMTQSPSSLSASVGDRVTITCRASQDVNTAVAWYQQKPGKAPKLLI
YSASFLESGVPSRFSGSRSGTDFTLTISSLQPEDFATYYCQQHYTTPPTF
GQGTKVEIKRT

14. A polypeptide comprising the sequence:
EVQLVESGGGLVQPGGSLRLSCAASGFNIKDTYIHWVRQAPGKGLEWV
ARIYPTNGYTRYADSVKGRFTISADTSKNTAYLQMNSLRAEDTAVYYC
SRWGGDGFYAMDVWGQGTLVTVSS

15. A method for engineering a humanized antibody comprising introducing amino acid residues from an import antibody variable domain into an amino acid sequence representing a consensus of mammalian antibody variable domain sequences.

16. A computer comprising the sequence data of the following amino acid sequence:
a. DIQMTQSPSSLSASVGDRVTITCRASQDVSSYLAWYQQKPGKA
PKLLIYAASSLESGVPSRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQPEDFATYYCQ
QYNSLPYTFGQGTKVEIKRT, or
b. EVQLVESGGGLVQPGGSLRLSCAASGFTFSDYAMSWVRQAPGK
GLEWVAVISENGGYTRYADSVKGRFTISADTSKNTAYLQMNSLR
AEDTAVYYCSRWGGDGFYAMDVWGQGTLVTVSS

17. A computer representation of the following amino acid sequence:
a. DIQMTQSPSSLSASVGDRVTITCRASQDVSSYLAWYQQKPGKA
PKLLIYAASSLESGVPSRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQPEDFATYYCQ
QYNSLPYTFGQGTKVEIKRT, or
b. EVQLVESGGGLVQPGGSLRLSCAASGFTFSDYAMSWVRQAPGK
GLEWVAVISENGGYTRYADSVKGRFTISADTSKNTAYLQMNSLR
AEDTAVYYCSRWGGDGFYAMDVWGQGTLVTVSS

18. A method comprising storing a computer representation of the following amino acid sequence:

a. DIQMTQSPSSLSASVGDRVTITCRASQDVSSYLAWYQQKPGKA
PKLLIYAASSLESGVPSRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQPEDFATYYCQ
QYNSLPYTFGQGTKVEIKRT, or

b. EVQLVESGGGLVQPGGSLRLSCAAASGFTFSDYAMSWVRQAPGK
GLEWVAVISENGGYTRYADSVKGRFTISADTSKNTAYLQMNSLR
AEDTAVYYCSRWGGDGFYAMDVWGQGTLVTVSS

cold E6

cold 82

add J10 & O3

Abstract

Variant immunoglobulins, particularly humanized antibody polypeptides are provided, along with methods for their preparation and use. Consensus immunoglobulin sequences and structural models are also provided.

SEQUENCE LISTING

(1) GENERAL INFORMATION:

(i) APPLICANT: Genentech, Inc.

(ii) TITLE OF INVENTION: Immunoglobulin Variants

(iii) NUMBER OF SEQUENCES: 25

(iv) CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS:
(A) ADDRESSEE: Genentech, Inc.
(B) STREET: 460 Point San Bruno Blvd
(C) CITY: South San Francisco
(D) STATE: California
(E) COUNTRY: USA
(F) ZIP: 94080

(v) COMPUTER READABLE FORM:
(A) MEDIUM TYPE: 5.25 inch, 360 Kb floppy disk
(B) COMPUTER: IBM PC compatible
(C) OPERATING SYSTEM: PC-DOS/MS-DOS
(D) SOFTWARE: patin (Genentech)

(vi) CURRENT APPLICATION DATA:
(A) APPLICATION NUMBER:
(B) FILING DATE:
(C) CLASSIFICATION:

(vii) PRIOR APPLICATION DATA:
(A) APPLICATION NUMBER: 07/715272
(B) APPLICATION DATE: 14-JUN-1991

(viii) ATTORNEY/AGENT INFORMATION:
(A) NAME: Adler, Carolyn R.
(B) REGISTRATION NUMBER: 32,324
(C) REFERENCE/DOCKET NUMBER: 709P1

(ix) TELECOMMUNICATION INFORMATION:
(A) TELEPHONE: 415/225-2614
(B) TELEFAX: 415/952-9881
(C) TELEX: 910/371-7168

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:1:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 109 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:1:

```
Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val
 1               5                  10                  15

Gly Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Arg Ala Ser Gln Asp Val Asn
            20                  25                  30

Thr Ala Val Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys
        35                  40                  45

Leu Leu Ile Tyr Ser Ala Ser Phe Leu Glu Ser Gly Val Pro Ser
    50                  55                  60

Arg Phe Ser Gly Ser Arg Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Leu Thr Ile
65                  70                  75

Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln
                80                  85                  90

His Tyr Thr Thr Pro Pro Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu
            95                  100                 105

Ile Lys Arg Thr
        109
```

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:2:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 120 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:2:

```
Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly
 1               5                  10                  15

Gly Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Phe Asn Ile Lys
            20                  25                  30

Asp Thr Tyr Ile His Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu
        35                  40                  45

Glu Trp Val Ala Arg Ile Tyr Pro Thr Asn Gly Tyr Thr Arg Tyr
    50                  55                  60

Ala Asp Ser Val Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Ala Asp Thr Ser
65                  70                  75

Lys Asn Thr Ala Tyr Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp
                80                  85                  90
```

Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ser Arg Trp Gly Gly Asp Gly Phe Tyr
95 100 105

Ala Met Asp Val Trp Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser
110 115 120

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:3:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 109 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:3:

Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val
1 5 10 15

Gly Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Arg Ala Ser Gln Asp Val Ser
20 25 30

Ser Tyr Leu Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys
35 40 45

Leu Leu Ile Tyr Ala Ala Ser Ser Leu Glu Ser Gly Val Pro Ser
50 55 60

Arg Phe Ser Gly Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Leu Thr Ile
65 70 75

Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln
80 85 90

Tyr Asn Ser Leu Pro Tyr Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu
95 100 105

Ile Lys Arg Thr
109

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:4:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 120 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:4:

Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly
1 5 10 15

Gly Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Phe Thr Phe Ser
20 25 30

Asp Tyr Ala Met Ser Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu
35 40 45

Glu Trp Val Ala Val Ile Ser Glu Asn Gly Gly Tyr Thr Arg Tyr
50 55 60

Ala Asp Ser Val Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Ala Asp Thr Ser
65 70 75

Lys Asn Thr Ala Tyr Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp
80 85 90

Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ser Arg Trp Gly Gly Asp Gly Phe Tyr
95 100 105

Ala Met Asp Val Trp Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser
110 115 120

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:5:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 109 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:5:

Asp Ile Val Met Thr Gln Ser His Lys Phe Met Ser Thr Ser Val
1 5 10 15

Gly Asp Arg Val Ser Ile Thr Cys Lys Ala Ser Gln Asp Val Asn
20 25 30

Thr Ala Val Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly His Ser Pro Lys
35 40 45

Leu Leu Ile Tyr Ser Ala Ser Phe Arg Tyr Thr Gly Val Pro Asp
50 55 60

Arg Phe Thr Gly Asn Arg Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Phe Thr Ile
65 70 75

Ser Ser Val Gln Ala Glu Asp Leu Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln
80 85 90

His Tyr Thr Thr Pro Pro Thr Phe Gly Gly Gly Thr Lys Leu Glu
95 100 105

Ile Lys Arg Ala
109

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:6:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 120 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:6:

Glu Val Gln Leu Gln Gln Ser Gly Pro Glu Leu Val Lys Pro Gly
1 5 10 15

Ala Ser Leu Lys Leu Ser Cys Thr Ala Ser Gly Phe Asn Ile Lys
20 25 30

Asp Thr Tyr Ile His Trp Val Lys Gln Arg Pro Glu Gln Gly Leu
35 40 45

Glu Trp Ile Gly Arg Ile Tyr Pro Thr Asn Gly Tyr Thr Arg Tyr
50 55 60

Asp Pro Lys Phe Gln Asp Lys Ala Thr Ile Thr Ala Asp Thr Ser
65 70 75

Ser Asn Thr Ala Tyr Leu Gln Val Ser Arg Leu Thr Ser Glu Asp
80 85 90

Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ser Arg Trp Gly Gly Asp Gly Phe Tyr
95 100 105

Ala Met Asp Tyr Trp Gly Gln Gly Ala Ser Val Thr Val Ser Ser
110 115 120

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:7:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 27 bases
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:7:

TCCGATATCC AGCTGACCCA GTCTCCA 27

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:8:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 31 bases
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid

(C) STRANDEDNESS: single
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:8:

GTTTGATCTC CAGCTTGGTA CCXXCXCCGA A 31

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:9:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 22 bases
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:9:

AGGTXXAXCT GCAGXAGTCX GG 22

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:10:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 34 bases
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:10:

TGAGGAGACG GTGACCGTGG TCCCTTGGCC CCAG 34

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:11:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 36 bases
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:11:

GTAGATAAAT CCTCTAACAC AGCCTATCTG CAAATG 36

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:12:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 36 bases
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:12:

GTAGATAAAT CCAAATCTAC AGCCTATCTG CAAATG 36

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:13:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 36 bases
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:13:

GTAGATAAAT CCTCTTCTAC AGCCTATCTG CAAATG 36

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:14:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 68 bases
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:14:

CTTATAAAGG TGTTTCCACC TATAACCAGA AATTCAAGGA TCGTTTCACG 50

ATATCCGTAG ATAAATCC 68

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:15:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 30 bases
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:15:

CTATACCTCC CGTCTGCATT CTGGAGTCCC 30

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:16:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 107 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:16:

Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Thr Thr Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Leu
1 5 10 15

Gly Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Ser Cys Arg Ala Ser Gln Asp Ile Arg
20 25 30

Asn Tyr Leu Asn Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Asp Gly Thr Val Lys
35 40 45

Leu Leu Ile Tyr Tyr Thr Ser Arg Leu His Ser Gly Val Pro Ser
50 55 60

Lys Phe Ser Gly Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Tyr Ser Leu Thr Ile
65 70 75

Ser Asn Leu Glu Gln Glu Asp Ile Ala Thr Tyr Phe Cys Gln Gln
80 85 90

Gly Asn Thr Leu Pro Trp Thr Phe Ala Gly Gly Thr Lys Leu Glu
95 100 105

Ile Lys
107

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:17:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 107 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:17:

Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val
1 5 10 15

Gly Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Arg Ala Ser Gln Asp Ile Arg
20 25 30

Asn Tyr Leu Asn Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys
35 40 45

Leu Leu Ile Tyr Tyr Thr Ser Arg Leu Glu Ser Gly Val Pro Ser
50 55 60

Arg Phe Ser Gly Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Tyr Thr Leu Thr Ile
65 70 75

Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln
80 85 90

Gly Asn Thr Leu Pro Trp Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu
95 100 105

Ile Lys
107

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:18:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 107 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:18:

Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val
1 5 10 15

Gly Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Arg Ala Ser Gln Ser Ile Ser
20 25 30

Asn Tyr Leu Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys
35 40 45

Leu Leu Ile Tyr Ala Ala Ser Ser Leu Glu Ser Gly Val Pro Ser
50 55 60

Arg Phe Ser Gly Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Leu Thr Ile
65 70 75

Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln
80 85 90

Tyr Asn Ser Leu Pro Trp Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu
95 100 105

Ile Lys
107

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:19:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 129 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:19:

Glu Val Gln Leu Gln Gln Ser Gly Pro Glu Leu Val Lys Pro Gly
1 5 10 15

Ala Ser Met Lys Ile Ser Cys Lys Ala Ser Gly Tyr Ser Phe Thr
20 25 30

Gly Tyr Thr Met Asn Trp Val Lys Gln Ser His Gly Lys Asn Leu
35 40 45

Glu Trp Met Gly Leu Ile Asn Pro Tyr Lys Gly Val Ser Thr Tyr
50 55 60

Asn Gln Lys Phe Lys Asp Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Lys Ala Thr Leu
65 70 75

Thr Val Asp Lys Ser Ser Ser Thr Ala Tyr Leu Met Glu Leu Leu
80 85 90

Asn Ser Leu Thr Ser Glu Asp Ser Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ala Arg
95 100 105

Ser Gly Tyr Tyr Gly Asp Ser Asp Trp Tyr Phe Asp Val Trp Gly
110 115 120

Ala Gly Thr Thr Val Thr Val Ser Ser
125 129

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:20:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 122 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:20:

Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly
1 5 10 15

Gly Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Tyr Ser Phe Thr
20 25 30

Gly Tyr Thr Met Asn Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu
35 40 45

Glu Trp Val Ala Leu Ile Asn Pro Tyr Lys Gly Val Ser Thr Tyr
50 55 60

Asn Gln Lys Phe Lys Asp Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Val Asp Lys Ser
65 70 75

Lys Asn Thr Ala Tyr Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp
80 85 90

Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ala Arg Ser Gly Tyr Tyr Gly Asp Ser
95 100 105

Asp Trp Tyr Phe Asp Val Trp Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val
110 115 120

Ser Ser
122

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:21:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 122 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:21:

Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly
1 5 10 15

Gly Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Phe Thr Phe Ser
20 25 30

Ser Tyr Ala Met Ser Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu
35 40 45

Glu Trp Val Ser Val Ile Ser Gly Asp Gly Gly Ser Thr Tyr Tyr
50 55 60

Ala Asp Ser Val Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Arg Asp Asn Ser
65 70 75

Lys Asn Thr Leu Tyr Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp
80 85 90

Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ala Arg Gly Arg Val Gly Tyr Ser Leu
95 100 105

Ser Gly Leu Tyr Asp Tyr Trp Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val
110 115 120

Ser Ser
122

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:22:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 454 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:22:

```
Gln Val Gln Leu Gln Gln Ser Gly Pro Glu Leu Val Lys Pro Gly
 1               5                  10                  15

Ala Ser Val Lys Ile Ser Cys Lys Thr Ser Gly Tyr Thr Phe Thr
            20                  25                  30

Glu Tyr Thr Met His Trp Met Lys Gln Ser His Gly Lys Ser Leu
        35                  40                  45

Glu Trp Ile Gly Gly Phe Asn Pro Lys Asn Gly Gly Ser Ser His
    50                  55                  60

Asn Gln Arg Phe Met Asp Lys Ala Thr Leu Ala Val Asp Lys Ser
65                  70                  75

Thr Ser Thr Ala Tyr Met Glu Leu Arg Ser Leu Thr Ser Glu Asp
            80                  85                  90

Ser Gly Ile Tyr Tyr Cys Ala Arg Trp Arg Gly Leu Asn Tyr Gly
        95                  100                 105

Phe Asp Val Arg Tyr Phe Asp Val Trp Gly Ala Gly Thr Thr Val
    110                 115                 120

Thr Val Ser Ser Ala Ser Thr Lys Gly Pro Ser Val Phe Pro Leu
125                 130                 135

Ala Pro Ser Ser Lys Ser Thr Ser Gly Gly Thr Ala Ala Leu Gly
            140                 145                 150

Cys Leu Val Lys Asp Tyr Phe Pro Glu Pro Val Thr Val Ser Trp
        155                 160                 165

Asn Ser Gly Ala Leu Thr Ser Gly Val His Thr Phe Pro Ala Val
    170                 175                 180

Leu Gln Ser Ser Gly Leu Tyr Ser Leu Ser Ser Val Val Thr Val
185                 190                 195

Pro Ser Ser Ser Leu Gly Thr Gln Thr Tyr Ile Cys Asn Val Asn
            200                 205                 210

His Lys Pro Ser Asn Thr Lys Val Asp Lys Lys Val Glu Pro Lys
        215                 220                 225
```

Ser Cys Asp Lys Thr His Thr Cys Pro Pro Cys Pro Ala Pro Glu
230 235 240

Leu Leu Gly Gly Pro Ser Val Phe Leu Phe Pro Pro Lys Pro Lys
245 250 255

Asp Thr Leu Met Ile Ser Arg Thr Pro Glu Val Thr Cys Val Val
260 265 270

Val Asp Val Ser His Glu Asp Pro Glu Val Lys Phe Asn Trp Tyr
275 280 285

Val Asp Gly Val Glu Val His Asn Ala Lys Thr Lys Pro Arg Glu
290 295 300

Glu Gln Tyr Asn Ser Thr Tyr Arg Val Val Ser Val Leu Thr Val
305 310 315

Leu His Gln Asp Trp Leu Asn Gly Lys Glu Tyr Lys Cys Lys Val
320 325 330

Ser Asn Lys Ala Leu Pro Ala Pro Ile Glu Lys Thr Ile Ser Lys
335 340 345

Ala Lys Gly Gln Pro Arg Glu Pro Gln Val Tyr Thr Leu Pro Pro
350 355 360

Ser Arg Glu Glu Met Thr Lys Asn Gln Val Ser Leu Thr Cys Leu
365 370 375

Val Lys Gly Phe Tyr Pro Ser Asp Ile Ala Val Glu Trp Glu Ser
380 385 390

Asn Gly Gln Pro Glu Asn Asn Tyr Lys Thr Thr Pro Pro Val Leu
395 400 405

Asp Ser Asp Gly Ser Phe Phe Leu Tyr Ser Lys Leu Thr Val Asp
410 415 420

Lys Ser Arg Trp Gln Gln Gly Asn Val Phe Ser Cys Ser Val Met
425 430 435

His Glu Ala Leu His Asn His Tyr Thr Gln Lys Ser Leu Ser Leu
440 445 450

Ser Pro Gly Lys
454

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:23:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 557 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:23:

```
His His Gln Val Gln Leu Gln Gln Ser Gly Pro Glu Leu Val Lys
 1               5                  10                  15

Pro Gly Ala Ser Val Lys Ile Ser Cys Lys Thr Ser Gly Tyr Thr
            20                  25                  30

Phe Thr Glu Met Gly Trp Ser Cys Ile Ile Leu Phe Leu Val Ala
        35                  40                  45

Thr Ala Thr Gly Val His Ser Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly
    50                  55                  60

Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly Gly Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala
65                  70                  75

Thr Ser Gly Tyr Thr Phe Thr Glu Tyr Thr Met His Trp Met Arg
            80                  85                  90

Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu Glu Trp Val Ala Gly Ile Asn Pro
        95                  100                 105

Lys Asn Gly Gly Thr Ser His Asn Gln Arg Phe Met Asp Arg Phe
    110                 115                 120

Thr Ile Ser Val Asp Lys Ser Thr Ser Thr Ala Tyr Met Gln Met
125                 130                 135

Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ala Arg
            140                 145                 150

Trp Arg Gly Leu Asn Tyr Gly Phe Asp Val Arg Tyr Phe Asp Val
        155                 160                 165

Trp Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser Ala Ser Thr Lys
    170                 175                 180

Gly Pro Ser Val Phe Pro Leu Ala Pro Cys Ser Arg Ser Thr Ser
185                 190                 195

Glu Ser Thr Ala Ala Leu Gly Cys Leu Val Lys Asp Tyr Phe Pro
            200                 205                 210

Glu Pro Val Thr Val Ser Trp Asn Ser Gly Ala Leu Thr Ser Gly
        215                 220                 225

Val His Thr Phe Pro Ala Val Leu Gln Ser Ser Gly Leu Tyr Ser
    230                 235                 240

Leu Ser Ser Val Val Thr Val Thr Ser Ser Asn Phe Gly Thr Gln
245                 250                 255
```

```
Thr Tyr Thr Cys Asn Val Asp His Lys Pro Ser Asn Thr Lys Val
                260                 265                 270

Asp Lys Thr Val Glu Arg Lys Cys Cys Val Thr Cys Pro Pro Cys
                275                 280                 285

Pro Ala Pro Glu Leu Leu Gly Gly Pro Ser Val Phe Leu Phe Pro
                290                 295                 300

Pro Lys Pro Lys Asp Thr Leu Met Ile Ser Arg Thr Pro Glu Val
                305                 310                 315

Thr Cys Val Val Val Asp Val Ser His Glu Asp Pro Glu Val Lys
                320                 325                 330

Glu Cys Pro Pro Cys Pro Ala Pro Pro Val Ala Gly Pro Ser Val
                335                 340                 345

Phe Leu Phe Pro Pro Lys Pro Lys Asp Thr Leu Met Ile Ser Arg
                350                 355                 360

Thr Pro Glu Val Thr Cys Val Val Val Asp Val Ser His Glu Asp
                365                 370                 375

Pro Glu Val Gln Phe Asn Trp Tyr Val Asp Gly Met Glu Val His
                380                 385                 390

Asn Ala Lys Thr Lys Pro Arg Glu Glu Gln Phe Asn Ser Thr Phe
                395                 400                 405

Arg Val Val Ser Val Leu Thr Val Val His Gln Asp Trp Leu Asn
                410                 415                 420

Gly Lys Glu Tyr Lys Cys Lys Val Ser Asn Lys Gly Leu Pro Ala
                425                 430                 435

Pro Ile Glu Lys Thr Ile Ser Lys Thr Lys Gly Gln Pro Arg Glu
                440                 445                 450

Pro Gln Val Tyr Thr Leu Pro Pro Ser Arg Glu Glu Met Thr Lys
                455                 460                 465

Asn Gln Val Ser Leu Thr Cys Leu Val Lys Gly Phe Tyr Pro Ser
                470                 475                 480

Asp Ile Ala Val Glu Trp Glu Ser Asn Gly Gln Pro Glu Asn Asn
                485                 490                 495

Tyr Lys Thr Thr Pro Pro Met Leu Asp Ser Asp Gly Ser Phe Phe
                500                 505                 510

Leu Tyr Ser Lys Leu Thr Val Asp Lys Ser Arg Trp Gln Gln Gly
                515                 520                 525
```

Asn Val Phe Ser Cys Ser Val Met His Glu Ala Leu His Asn His
530 535 540

Tyr Thr Gln Lys Ser Leu Ser Leu Ser Pro Gly Lys
545 550 555

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:24:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 214 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:24:

Asp Val Gln Met Thr Gln Thr Thr Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Leu
1 5 10 15

Gly Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Asn Cys Arg Ala Ser Gln Asp Ile Asn
20 25 30

Asn Tyr Leu Asn Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Asn Gly Thr Val Lys
35 40 45

Leu Leu Ile Tyr Tyr Thr Ser Thr Leu His Ser Gly Val Pro Ser
50 55 60

Arg Phe Ser Gly Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Tyr Ser Leu Thr Ile
65 70 75

Ser Asn Leu Asp Gln Glu Asp Ile Ala Thr Tyr Phe Cys Gln Gln
80 85 90

Gly Asn Thr Leu Pro Pro Thr Phe Gly Gly Gly Thr Lys Val Glu
95 100 105

Ile Lys Arg Thr Val Ala Ala Pro Ser Val Phe Ile Phe Pro Pro
110 115 120

Ser Asp Glu Gln Leu Lys Ser Gly Thr Ala Ser Val Val Cys Leu
125 130 135

Leu Asn Asn Phe Tyr Pro Arg Glu Ala Lys Val Gln Trp Lys Val
140 145 150

Asp Asn Ala Leu Gln Ser Gly Asn Ser Gln Glu Ser Val Thr Glu
155 160 165

Gln Asp Ser Lys Asp Ser Thr Tyr Ser Leu Ser Ser Thr Leu Thr
170 175 180

Leu Ser Lys Ala Asp Tyr Glu Lys His Lys Val Tyr Ala Cys Glu
185 190 195

Val Thr His Gln Gly Leu Ser Ser Pro Val Thr Lys Ser Phe Asn
200 205 210

Arg Gly Glu Cys
214

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:25:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 233 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:25:

Met Gly Trp Ser Cys Ile Ile Leu Phe Leu Val Ala Thr Ala Thr
1 5 10 15

Gly Val His Ser Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu
20 25 30

Ser Ala Ser Val Gly Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Arg Ala Ser
35 40 45

Gln Asp Ile Asn Asn Tyr Leu Asn Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly
50 55 60

Lys Ala Pro Lys Leu Leu Ile Tyr Tyr Thr Ser Thr Leu His Ser
65 70 75

Gly Val Pro Ser Arg Phe Ser Gly Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Tyr
80 85 90

Thr Leu Thr Ile Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr
95 100 105

Tyr Cys Gln Gln Gly Asn Thr Leu Pro Pro Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly
110 115 120

Thr Lys Val Glu Ile Lys Arg Thr Val Ala Ala Pro Ser Val Phe
125 130 135

Ile Phe Pro Pro Ser Asp Glu Gln Leu Lys Ser Gly Thr Ala Ser
140 145 150

Val Val Cys Leu Leu Asn Asn Phe Tyr Pro Arg Glu Ala Lys Val
155 160 165

Gln Trp Lys Val Asp Asn Ala Leu Gln Ser Gly Asn Ser Gln Glu
170 175 180

Ser Val Thr Glu Gln Asp Ser Lys Asp Ser Thr Tyr Ser Leu Ser
185 190 195

Ser Thr Leu Thr Leu Ser Lys Ala Asp Tyr Glu Lys His Lys Val
200 205 210

Tyr Ala Cys Glu Val Thr His Gln Gly Leu Ser Ser Pro Val Thr
215 220 225

Lys Ser Phe Asn Arg Gly Glu Cys
230 233

DO/EO BIBLIOGRAPHIC DATA ENTRY

SERIAL NUMBER: 08 / 146206
IA NUMBER: PCT/ US92 / 05126
FAMILY NAME: CARTER
GIVEN NAME: PAUL J.
PRIORITY CLAIMED (Y/N): Y
NO BASIC FEE (Y/N): N
ATTORNEY DOCKET NUMBER: 709P1
CORRESPONDENTS NAME/ADDRESS:
CAROLYN R. ADLER
GENENTECH, INC.
460 POINT SAN BRUNO BOULEVARD
SOUTH SAN FRANCISCO, CALIFORNIA 94080

RECEIPT DATE: 11 / 17 / 93
IA FILING DATE: 06 / 15 / 92
DELAY WAIVED (Y/N): Y
DEMAND RECEIVED (Y/N): Y
PRIORITY DATE: 06 / 14 / 91
US DESIGNATED ONLY (Y/N): N
COUNTRY: USX

APPLICATION TITLES:
METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES

OK TO UPDATE? (Y OR N)

BAR CODE LABEL

U.S. PATENT APPLICATION

SERIAL NUMBER	FILING DATE	CLASS	GROUP ART UNIT
08/146,206	11/17/93	435	1804

APPLICANT

PAUL J. CARTER, SAN FRANCISCO, CA; LEONARD G. PRESTA, SAN FRANCISCO, CA.

CONTINUING DATA********
VERIFIED THIS APPLN IS A 371 OF /US92/05126 06/15/92

_____

FOREIGN/PCT APPLICATIONS********
VERIFIED PCT PCT/US92/05126 06/15/92

_____

STATE OR COUNTRY	SHEETS DRAWING	TOTAL CLAIMS	INDEPENDENT CLAIMS	FILING FEE RECEIVED	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.
CA	9	18	9	$1,592.00	709P1

ADDRESS

JANET E. HASAK
GENENTECH, INC.
460 POINT SAN BRUNO BOULEVARD
SOUTH SAN FRANCISCO, CA 94080-4990

TITLE

IMMUNOGLOBULIN VARIANTS

This is to certify that annexed hereto is a true copy from the records of the United States Patent and Trademark Office of the application which is identified above.

By authority of the
COMMISSIONER OF PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS

Date Certifying Officer

PATENT APPLICATION SERIAL NO. 08/146206

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
FEE RECORD SHEET

DS20021

OK Refund 172.0

MR10

PTO-1556
(5/87)

PATENT APPLICATION FEE DETERMINATION RECORD

Effective October 1, 1992

Application or Docket Number: 08/ 146,206

CLAIMS AS FILED - PART I

FOR	(Column 1) NUMBER FILED	(Column 2) NUMBER EXTRA	SMALL ENTITY RATE	SMALL ENTITY FEE	OR	OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY RATE	OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY FEE
BASIC FEE				475			950
				$355.00	OR		~~$710.00~~
TOTAL CLAIMS	24 minus 20 =	* 4	x$11=		OR	x$22=	
INDEPENDENT CLAIMS	9 minus 3 =	* 6	x 37=		OR	x 74=	
MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM PRESENT			+115=		OR	+230=	
			TOTAL		OR	TOTAL	

* If the difference in column 1 is less then zero, enter "0" in column 2

CLAIMS AS AMENDED - PART II

AMENDMENT A

	(Column 1) CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT		(Column 2) HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	(Column 3) PRESENT EXTRA
Total	*	Minus	**	=
Independent	*	Minus	***	=
FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM				

SMALL ENTITY RATE	SMALL ENTITY ADDITIONAL FEE	OR	OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY RATE	OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY ADDITIONAL FEE
x$11=		OR	x$22=	
x 37=		OR	x 74=	
+ 115=		OR	+230=	
TOTAL ADDIT. FEE		OR	TOTAL ADDIT. FEE	

AMENDMENT B

	(Column 1) CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT		(Column 2) HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	(Column 3) PRESENT EXTRA
Total	*	Minus	**	=
Independent	*	Minus	***	=
FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM				

SMALL ENTITY RATE	SMALL ENTITY ADDITIONAL FEE	OR	OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY RATE	OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY ADDITIONAL FEE
x$11=		OR	x$22=	
x 37=		OR	x 74=	
+ 115=		OR	+ 230=	
TOTAL ADDIT. FEE		OR	TOTAL ADDIT. FEE	

AMENDMENT C

	(Column 1) CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT		(Column 2) HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	(Column 3) PRESENT EXTRA
Total	*	Minus	**	=
Independent	*	Minus	***	=
FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM				

SMALL ENTITY RATE	SMALL ENTITY ADDITIONAL FEE	OR	OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY RATE	OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY ADDITIONAL FEE
x$11=		OR	x$22=	
x 37=		OR	x 74=	
+115=		OR	+230=	
TOTAL ADDIT. FEE		OR	TOTAL ADDIT. FEE	

* If the entry in column 1 is less than the entry in column 2, write "0" in column 3.
** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 20, enter "20".
*** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3".
The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" (Total or Independent) is the highest number found in the appropriate box in column 1.

FORM PTO-875
(Rev.10-92)

Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMEP

MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM FEE CALCULATION SHEET

(FOR USE WITH FORM PTO-875)

SERIAL NO.

FILING DATE

APPLICANT(S)

CLAIMS

	AS FILED		AFTER 1st AMENDMENT		AFTER 2nd AMENDMENT			*		*		*	
	IND.	DEP.	IND.	DEP.	IND.	DEP.		IND.	DEP.	IND.	DEP.	IND.	DEP.
1	1						51						
2		1					52						
3		1					53						
4		1					54						
5		1					55						
6		1					56						
7	1						57						
8		1					58						
9		9					59						
10	1						60						
11		1					61						
12		1					62						
13	1						63						
14	1						64						
15	1						65						
16	1						66						
17	1						67						
18	1						68						
19							69						
20							70						
21							71						
22							72						
23							73						
24							74						
25							75						
26							76						
27							77						
28							78						
29							79						
30							80						
31							81						
32							82						
33							83						
34							84						
35							85						
36							86						
37							87						
38							88						
39							89						
40							90						
41							91						
42							92						
43							93						
44							94						
45							95						
46							96						
47							97						
48							98						
49							99						
50							100						
TOTAL IND.	9						TOTAL IND.						
TOTAL DEP.	15						TOTAL DEP.						
TOTAL CLAIMS	24						TOTAL CLAIMS						

PTO-1360 (3-78)

*MAY BE U[illegible]D FOR ADDITIONAL CLAIMS OR AMENDMENTS

U.S. DEPARTMENT of COMMERCE
Patent and Trademark Office

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

PCT

From the INTERNATIONAL BUREAU

To:

United States Patent and Trademark Office
Washington, D.C.

in its capacity as elected Office

NOTIFICATION OF ELECTION

(PCT Rule 61.2)

Date of mailing: 09 February 1993 (09.02.93)	
International application No.: PCT/US92/05126	Applicant's or agent's file reference: 709P1
International filing date: 15 June 1992 (15.06.92)	Priority date: 14 June 1991 (14.06.91)
Applicant: CARTER, Paul, J. et al	

1. The designated Office is hereby notified of its election made:

[X] in the demand filed with the International preliminary Examining Authority on:

07 January 1993 (07.01.93)

[ ] in a notice effecting later election filed with the International Bureau on:

2. The election [X] was

[ ] was not

made before the expiration of 19 months from the priority date.

The International Bureau of WIPO 34, chemin des Colombettes 1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland Facsimile No.: (41-22) 740.14.35	Authorized officer: J. Leitao Telephone No.: (41-22) 730.91.11

Form PCT/IB/331 (July 1992)

000132072

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

PCT

REC'D 23 SEP. 1993
WIPO PCT

INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION REPORT

(PCT Article 36 and Rule 70)

Applicant's or agent's file reference	FOR FURTHER ACTION	See Notification of Transmittal of International Preliminary Examination Report (Form PCT/IPEA/416)
709P1		
International application No.	International filing date *(day/month/year)*	Priority date *(day/month/year)*
PCT/US 92/05126	15/06/1992	14/06/1991
International Patent Classification (IPC) or national classification and IPC		
C12N15/13		
Applicant		
GENENTECH, INC. et al.		

1. This international preliminary examination report has been prepared by this International Preliminary Examining Authority and is transmitted to the applicant according to Article 36.

2. This REPORT consists of a total of 8 sheets.

☒ This report is also accompanied by ANNEXES, i.e., sheets of the description, claims and/or drawings amended during international preliminary examination and/or containing rectifications made before this Authority.

These annexes consists of a total of 3 sheets.

3. This report contains indications and corresponding pages relating to the following items:

- I ☒ Basis of the report
- II ☐ Priority
- III ☒ Non-establishment of opinion with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability
- IV ☐ Lack of unity of invention
- V ☒ Reasoned statement with regard to novelty, inventive step or industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement
- VI ☐ Certain documents cited
- VII ☐ Certain defects in the international application
- VIII ☐ Certain observations on the international application

Date of submission of the demand	Date of completion of this report
07/01/1993	20.09.93
Name and mailing address of the IPEA/	Authorized officer
European Patent Office, Erhardtstrasse 27 W-8000 Munich 2 Tel. (+49-89) 2399-0, Tx: 523656 epmu d Fax: (+49-89) 2399-4465	C. Germinario

Intern. application No.

INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION REPORT

PCT/US92/05126

I. Basis of the report

1. This report has been drawn up on the basis of:

[ ] the international application as originally filed.

[x] the description, pages 1-107, as originally filed,
pages _____, filed with the demand,
pages _____, filed with the letter of _____,
pages _____, filed with the letter of _____,

[x] the claims, No. 10-17, as originally filed,
No. _____, as amended under Article 19,
No. _____, filed with the demand,
No. 1-9, 18, 19, filed with the letter of 12.06.93,
No. _____, filed with the letter of _____,

[x] the drawings, sheets/fig 1/9 - 9/9, as originally filed,
sheets/fig _____, filed with the demand,
sheets/fig _____, filed with the letter of _____,
sheets/fig _____, filed with the letter of _____.

2. The amendments have resulted in the cancellation of: pages: _____
sheets of drawings/figures No.: _____.

3. [ ] This report has been established as if (some of) the amendments had not been made, since they have been considered to go beyond the disclosure as filed:

4. Additional observations, if necessary:

III. Non-establishment of opinion with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability

The questions whether the claimed invention appears to be novel, to involve an inventive step (to be non-obvious), or to be industrially applicable have not been and will not be examined in respect of:

[ ] the entire international application,

[x] claims Nos. 17, 18

because:

[x] the said international application, or the said claims Nos. 17, 18 relate to the following subject matter which does not require an international preliminary examination (specify):

Claims 17 is directed to a mere presentation of information, namely the translation of the information inherent in an amino acid sequence into a message or a language readable by the computer.

Claim 18 would appear to be directed to a method of preparing a computer program.
According to Rule 67.1 (V) and (VI) no International Preliminary Examination (thus no preliminary Written Opinion) can be carried out for such a subject matter.

[x] the description, claims or drawings (indicate particular elements below) or said claims Nos. 16 are so unclear that no meaningful opinion could be formed (specify):

Claim 16 represents a novel claim-category; its subject matter is in fact a machine or an apparatus i.e. a computer.
Now an independent claim directed to a machine must cite all the essential technical features necessary to define said machine; the information saved in memory of a computer are not considered a characterizing part of the same. Therefore the subject matter of claim 16 is definitely not at all characterized as requested by Art.

6 PCT (see PCT Guidelines C III 4.4).

[ ] the claims, or said claims Nos. _____ are so inadequately supported by the description that no meaningful opinion could be formed.

[ ] no international search report has been established for said claims Nos. _____.

INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION REPORT

V. Reasoned statement under Article 35(2) with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement

1. STATEMENT

Novelty (N)	Claims 1-9, 12-15, 19	YES
	Claims 10, 11	NO
Inventive Step (IS)	Claims 2, 6-9, 13, 14, 19	YES
	Claims 1, 3-5, 12, 15	NO
Industrial Applicability (IA)	Claims 1-19	YES
	Claims	NO

2. CITATIONS AND EXPLANATIONS

1. The following document is referred to in the present IPER as the closest prior art:

WO-A-90/07861;

2. This earlier application describes a method for designing humanized antibodies which consists of all the steps a) to g) of the present claim 1.

More precisely the features under item a) that the amino acid sequences of both donor (import) and acceptor (consensus) antibody are from the variable domain and that the human sequence (acceptor) is a consensus sequence are disclosed at page 10, last two lines and page 11 first lines and page 12 "criterion I.
Steps under b) and c) are disclosed at page 5 line 8 to 31 and claim 18.
Steps under items d) to g) are disclosed in claims 19 to 21 and at page 5 line 32 to page 6 line 20 and more in details at page 11 line 19 to page 15 line 2.

Among the three criteria for selecting FR-residues convenient for substitution (item f), criterion 2. is disclosed at page 14 under "criterion IV" and criterion 1. is disclosed at page 14 lines 7 and 8.

2.1 Under "criterion I" at page 12 of the earlier WO application two different options are contemplated for the selection of the acceptor antibody; the first option is based on the homology with the framework of the donor immunoglobulin, the second on the use of a consensus framework from many human antibodies.
The IPEA recognizes that the latter possibility, which corresponds to the present invention, is not further disclosed with details or exemplified.
Therefore the use of a "consensus sequence" as acceptor is not actually an embodiment of the WO-A-90/07861 invention.
For this reason claims 1 to 9, 13 to 15 and 19 are regarded as novel.

2.2. Claims 10 to 12 do not comprise any reference to a consensus sequence as acceptor of the non-human CDR. Therefore the unique feature discriminating between the present invention and the subject matter of the earlier WO application is missing.
It should moreover be noted that the WO-A-90/07861 discloses in details the humanized Eu antibody light chain where the CDRs are replaced by the corresponding CDRs from anti-Tac light chain and where additionally other amino acids in the FR are replace by the corresponding anti-Tac amino acids (see Experimental, page 26, 27; Fig. 2 and explanation of the same at page 7).
From Fig. 2 and explanation of the same is evident that the site 63L of the Eu light chain, which is one of those contemplated by the present claim 10, is replaced by the corresponding amino acid from the anti-Tac light chain (see *).

For this reason claims 10 and 11 are not regarded as novel (Art. 33.2 PCT).

3. Though the WO-A-90/07861 does not discloses in details a consensus sequence, it nevertheless unambiguously suggests the use of a consensus framework from many human antibodies as acceptor sequence (criterion I, page 12). The existence of different criteria (thus not only that based on the homology) for selecting the acceptor sequence is moreover stressed on page 13, line 12, by the sentence ""Regardless of how the acceptor immunoglobulin is chosen..."

Since the reduction to practice of this suggesting is carried out merely by comparing known sequences taken from available collection and designing on paper the requested consensus sequence, the production of said sequence falls within the competence of the skilled person and therefore does not involve per se an inventive merit.

For this reason claims 1 and 15 are not regarded as inventive (Art. 33.3 PCT).

3.1 The ability of the glycosylation sites on the variable domain to influence antigen binding has been known since long time as recognized in the description (see page 3 last paragraph).
Claims 3 and 4 are therefore not regarded as involving an inventive step (Art.33.3 PCT).

3.2 The earlier WO application under "criterion II" at page 13 teaches that "rare residues" in the framework of human acceptor should be replaced by residues from the donor (import) sequence, should said residues (from the donor) be "common" for human sequences at that site.

The interpretation of this teaching by the skilled reader should be that "residues which are highly conserved across all different human antibody types should be conserved".
Therefore also the selecting criterion according to claim 5 is suggested in the earlier WO application .
Hence the subject matter of claim 5 is not regarded as involving an inventive step (Art. 33.3 EPC).

4. Claims 2 and claim 19 identify an additional not previously suggested criterion for the selection of the FR-residues suitable for substitution; the subject matter of the two claims is therefore recognized as involving an inventive step.

4.1 Claims 6 to 9 and 13 and 14 are directed to specific embodiments of the invention. Such embodiments do not appear to be disclosed or suggested in the prior art.
Said claims are thus recognized as novel and as involving an inventive step.

CLAIMS

WE CLAIM:

1. A method for making a humanized antibody comprising amino acid sequence of a non-human, import antibody and a human antibody, comprising the steps of:
   a. obtaining the amino acid sequences of at least a portion of an import variable domain and of a consensus human variable domain;
   b. identifying Complementarity Determining Region (CDR) amino acid sequences in the import and the human amino variable domain sequences;
   c. substituting an import CDR amino acid sequence for the corresponding human CDR amino acid sequence;
   d. aligning the amino acid sequences of a Framework Region (FR) of the import antibody and the corresponding FR of the consensus antibody;
   e. identifying import antibody FR residues in the aligned FR sequences that are non-homologous to the corresponding consensus antibody residues;
   f. determining if the non-homologous import amino acid residue is reasonably expected to have at least one of the following effects:
      1. non-covalently binds antigen directly,
      2. interacts with a CDR; or
      3. participates in the V_L - V_H interface; and
   g. for any non-homologous import antibody amino acid residue which is reasonably expected to have at least one of these effects, substituting that residue for the corresponding amino acid residue in the consensus antibody FR sequence.
2. The method of claim 1, having an additional step of determining if any such non-homologous residues are exposed on the surface of the domain or buried within it, and if the residue is exposed, retaining the consensus residue.
3. The method of claim 1 (or 19, having the additional steps of searching the import variable domain sequence for glycosylation sites, determining if any such glycosylation site is reasonably expected to affect the antigen binding or affinity of the antibody, and if so, substituting the glycosylation site into the consensus sequence.
4. The method of claim 1 (or 19, having the additional steps of searching the consensus variable domain sequence for glycosylation sites which are not present at the

corresponding amino acid in the import sequence, and if the glycosylation site is not present in the import sequence, substituting the import amino acid residues for the amino acid residues comprising the consensus glycosylation site.

5. The method of claim 1 (or 19,) having an additional step which comprises aligning import antibody and consensus antibody FR sequences, identifying import antibody FR residues which are non-homologous with the aligned consensus FR sequence, and for each such non-homologous import antibody FR residue, determining if the corresponding consensus antibody residue represents a residue which is highly conserved across all species at that site, and if it is so conserved, preparing a humanized antibody which comprises the consensus antibody amino acid residue at that site.

6. The method of claim 1, wherein the corresponding consensus antibody residues are selected from the group consisting of 4L, 35L, 36L, 38L, 43L, 44L, 46L, 58L, 62L, 63L, 64L, 65L, 66L, 67L, 68L, 69L, 70L, 71L, 73L, 85L, 87L, 98L, 2H, 4H, 24H, 36H, 37H, 39H, 43H, 45H, 49H, 58H, 60H, 67H, 68H, 69H, 70H, 73H, 74H, 75H, 76H, 78H, 91H, 92H, 93H, and 103H.

7. A method comprising providing at least a portion of an import, non-human antibody variable domain amino acid sequence having a CDR and a FR, obtaining the amino acid sequence of at least a portion of a consensus human antibody variable domain having a CDR and a FR, substituting the non-human CDR for the human CDR in the consensus human antibody variable domain, and then substituting an amino acid residue for the consensus amino acid residue at at least one of the following sites:

4L, 35L, 36L, 38L, 43L, 44L, 46L, 58L, 62L, 63L, 64L, 65L, 66L, 67L, 68L, 69L, 70L, 71L, 73L, 85L, 87L, 98L, 2H, 4H, 24H, 36H, 37H, 39H, 43H, 45H, 49H, 58H, 60H, 67H, 68H, 69H, 70H, 73H, 74H, 75H, 76H, 78H, 91H, 92H, 93H, and 103H.

8. The method of claim 7, wherein the substituted residue is the residue found at the corresponding location of the non-human antibody.

9. The method of claim 1 or 7, wherein the consensus human variable domain is a consensus based on human variable domains and additionally variable domains from species other than human.

10. A humanized antibody variable domain having a non-human CDR incorporated into a human antibody variable domain, wherein the improvement comprises

AVISENGGYTRYADSVKGRFTISADTSKNTAYLQMNSLRAEDTAVYYCS
RWGGDGFYAMDVWGQGTLVTVSS

18. A method comprising storing a computer representation of the following amino acid sequence:

a. DIQMTQSPSSLSASVGDRVTITCRASQDVSSYLAWYQQKPGKAPKLLIY
AASSLESGVPSRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQPEDFATYYCQQYNSLPYTFG
QGTKVEIKRT, or

b. EVQLVESGGGLVQPGGSLRLSCAASGFTFSDYAMSWVRQAPGKGLEWV
AVISENGGYTRYADSVKGRFTISADTSKNTAYLQMNSLRAEDTAVYYCS
RWGGDGFYAMDVWGQGTLVTVSS

19. A method for making a humanized antibody comprising amino acid sequence of a non-human, import antibody and a human antibody, comprising the steps of:

a. obtaining the amino acid sequences of at least a portion of an import variable domain and of a consensus human variable domain;

b. identifying Complementarity Determining Region (CDR) amino acid sequences in the import and the human amino variable domain sequences;

c. substituting an import CDR amino acid sequence for the corresponding human CDR amino acid sequence;

d. aligning the amino acid sequences of a Framework Region (FR) of the import antibody and the corresponding FR of the consensus antibody;

e. identifying import antibody FR residues in the aligned FR sequences that are non-homologous to the corresponding consensus antibody residues;

f. determining if the non-homologous import amino acid residue is reasonably expected to have at least one of the following effects:

1. non-covalently binds antigen directly,

2. interacts with a CDR; or

3. participates in the V_L - V_H interface;

g. for any non-homologous import antibody amino acid residue which is reasonably expected to have at least one of these effects, substituting that residue for the corresponding amino acid residue in the consensus antibody FR sequence; and

h. for any non-homologous import antibody amino acid residue, determining if any such non-homologous residue is exposed on the surface of the domain or buried within it, and if the residue is exposed, retaining the consensus residue.

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

München 21.09.93

From the
INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY EXAMINING AUTHORITY

PCT

To:
BARZ, Peter
P. BARZ & P. WEINHOLD
Siegfriedstrasse 8
D-80803 MÜNCHEN
ALLEMAGNE

NOTIFICATION OF TRANSMITTAL OF INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION REPORT

(PCT Rule 71.1)

Date of mailing *(day/month/year)*	20.09.93
Applicant's or agent's file reference: 709P1	IMPORTANT NOTIFICATION

International application No.	International filing date *(day/month/year)*	Priority date *(day/month/year)*
PCT/US 92/05126	15/06/1992	14/06/1991

Applicant

GENENTECH, INC. et al.

1. The applicant is hereby notified that this International Preliminary Examining Authority transmits herewith the international preliminary examination report and its annexes, if any, established on the international application.

2. A copy of the report and its annexes, if any, is being transmitted to the International Bureau for communication to all the elected Offices.

3. Where required by any of the elected Offices, the International Bureau will prepare an English translation of the report (but not of any annexes) and will transmit such translation to those Offices.

4. **REMINDER**

The applicant must enter the national phase before each elected Office by performing certain acts (filing translations and paying national fees) within 30 months from the priority date (or later in some Offices)(Article 39(1))(see also the reminder sent by the International Bureau with Form PCT/IB/301).

Where a translation of the international application must be furnished to an elected Office, that translation must contain a translation of any annexes to the international preliminary examination report. It is the applicant's responsibility to prepare and furnish such translation directly to each elected Office concerned.

For further details on the applicable time limits and requirements of the elected Offices, see Volume II of the PCT Applicant's Guide.

Name and mailing address of the IPEA/	Authorized officer
European Patent Office D-80298 Munich Tel. (+49-89) 2399-0, Tx: 523656 epmu d Fax: (+49-89) 2399-4465	H.-P. Dietenhofer

Form PCT/IPEA/416 (July 1992) P20473 (15/07/1993)

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

PCT

INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION REPORT

(PCT Article 36 and Rule 70)

Applicant's or agent's file reference	FOR FURTHER ACTION	See Notification of Transmittal of International Preliminary Examination Report (Form PCT/IPEA/416)
709P1		
International application No.	International filing date *(day/month/year)*	Priority date *(day/month/year)*
PCT/US 92/05126	15/06/1992	14/06/1991
International Patent Classification (IPC) or national classification and IPC		
C12N15/13		
Applicant		
GENENTECH, INC. et al.		

1. This international preliminary examination report has been prepared by this International Preliminary Examining Authority and is transmitted to the applicant according to Article 36.

2. This REPORT consists of a total of 8 sheets.

   [X] This report is also accompanied by ANNEXES, i.e., sheets of the description, claims and/or drawings amended during international preliminary examination and/or containing rectifications made before this Authority.

   These annexes consists of a total of 3 sheets.

3. This report contains indications and corresponding pages relating to the following items:

   I [X] Basis of the report

   II [ ] Priority

   III [X] Non-establishment of opinion with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability

   IV [ ] Lack of unity of invention

   V [X] Reasoned statement with regard to novelty, inventive step or industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement

   VI [ ] Certain documents cited

   VII [ ] Certain defects in the international application

   VIII [ ] Certain observations on the international application

Date of submission of the demand	Date of completion of this report
07/01/1993	20.09.93
Name and mailing address of the IPEA/	Authorized officer
European Patent Office, Erhardtstrasse 27 W-8000 Munich 2 Tel. (+49-89) 2399-0, Tx: 523656 epmu d Fax: (+49-89) 2399-4465	G. Germinario

Form PCT/IPEA/409 (cover sheet) (July 1992) P20476 (14/06/1993)

INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION REPORT

I. Basis of the report

1. This report has been drawn up on the basis of:

[ ] the international application as originally filed.

[x] the description, pages 1-107_____, as originally filed,
pages _____, filed with the demand,
pages _____, filed with the letter of _____,
pages _____, filed with the letter of _____,

[x] the claims, No. 10-17_____, as originally filed,
No. _____, as amended under Article 19,
No. q_____, filed with the demand,
No. 1-9, 18, 19_____, filed with the letter of 12.06.93,
No. _____, filed with the letter of _____,

[x] the drawings, sheets/fig 1/9 - 9/9_____, as originally filed,
sheets/fig _____, filed with the demand,
sheets/fig _____, filed with the letter of _____,
sheets/fig _____, filed with the letter of _____.

2. The amendments have resulted in the cancellation of: pages: _____
sheets of drawings/figures No.: _____.

3. [ ] This report has been established as if (some of) the amendments had not been made, since they have been considered to go beyond the disclosure as filed:

4. Additional observations, if necessary:

III. Non-establishment of opinion with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability

The questions whether the claimed invention appears to be novel, to involve an inventive step (to be non-obvious), or to be industrially applicable have not been and will not be examined in respect of:

[ ] the entire international application,

[x] claims Nos. 17, 18

because:

[x] the said international application, or the said claims Nos. 17, 18 relate to the following subject matter which does not require an international preliminary examination (specify):

Claims 17 is directed to a mere presentation of information, namely the translation of the information inherent in an amino acid sequence into a message or a language readable by the computer.

Claim 18 would appear to be directed to a method of preparing a computer program.
According to Rule 67.1 (V) and (VI) no International Preliminary Examination (thus no preliminary Written Opinion) can be carried out for such a subject matter.

[x] the description, claims or drawings (indicate particular elements below) or said claims Nos. 16 are so unclear that no meaningful opinion could be formed (specify):

Claim 16 represents a novel claim-category; its subject matter is in fact a machine or an apparatus i.e. a computer.
Now an independent claim directed to a machine must cite all the essential technical features necessary to define said machine; the information saved in memory of a computer are not considered a characterizing part of the same. Therefore the subject matter of claim 16 is definitely not at all characterized as requested by Art.

6 PCT (see PCT Guidelines C III 4.4).

[ ] the claims, or said claims Nos. _____ are so inadequately supported by the description that no meaningful opinion could be formed.

[ ] no international search report has been established for said claims Nos. _____.

V. Reasoned statement under Article 35(2) with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement

1. STATEMENT

Novelty (N)	Claims 1-9, 12-15, 19	YES
	Claims 10, 11	NO
Inventive Step (IS)	Claims 2, 6-9, 13, 14, 19	YES
	Claims 1, 3-5, 12, 15	NO
Industrial Applicability (IA)	Claims 1-19	YES
	Claims	NO

2. CITATIONS AND EXPLANATIONS

1. The following document is referred to in the present IPER as the closest prior art:

WO-A-90/07861;

2. This earlier application describes a method for designing humanized antibodies which consists of all the steps a) to g) of the present claim 1.

More precisely the features under item a) that the amino acid sequences of both donor (import) and acceptor (consensus) antibody are from the variable domain and that the human sequence (acceptor) is a consensus sequence are disclosed at page 10, last two lines and page 11 first lines and page 12 "criterion I.
Steps under b) and c) are disclosed at page 5 line 8 to 31 and claim 18.
Steps under items d) to g) are disclosed in claims 19 to 21 and at page 5 line 32 to page 6 line 20 and more in details at page 11 line 19 to page 15 line 2.

Among the three criteria for selecting FR-residues convenient for substitution (item f), criterion 2. is disclosed at page 14 under "criterion IV" and criterion 1. is disclosed at page 14 lines 7 and 8.

2.1 Under "criterion I" at page 12 of the earlier WO application two different options are contemplated for the selection of the acceptor antibody; the first option is based on the homology with the framework of the donor immunoglobulin, the second on the use of a consensus framework from many human antibodies.
The IPEA recognizes that the latter possibility, which corresponds to the present invention, is not further disclosed with details or exemplified.
Therefore the use of a "consensus sequence" as acceptor is not actually an embodiment of the WO-A-90/07861 invention.
For this reason claims 1 to 9, 13 to 15 and 19 are regarded as novel.

2.2. Claims 10 to 12 do not comprise any reference to a consensus sequence as acceptor of the non-human CDR. Therefore the unique feature discriminating between the present invention and the subject matter of the earlier WO application is missing.
It should moreover be noted that the WO-A-90/07861 discloses in details the humanized Eu antibody light chain where the CDRs are replaced by the corresponding CDRs from anti-Tac light chain and where additionally other amino acids in the FR are replace by the corresponding anti-Tac amino acids (see Experimental, page 26, 27; Fig. 2 and explanation of the same at page 7).
From Fig. 2 and explanation of the same is evident that the site 63L of the Eu light chain, which is one of those contemplated by the present claim 10, is replaced by the corresponding amino acid from the anti-Tac light chain (see *).

For this reason claims 10 and 11 are not regarded as novel (Art. 33.2 PCT).

3. Though the WO-A-90/07861 does not discloses in details a consensus sequence, it nevertheless unambiguously suggests the use of a consensus framework from many human antibodies as acceptor sequence (criterion I, page 12). The existence of different criteria (thus not only that based on the homology) for selecting the acceptor sequence is moreover stressed on page 13, line 12, by the sentence ""Regardless of how the acceptor immunoglobulin is chosen..."

Since the reduction to practice of this suggesting is carried out merely by comparing known sequences taken from available collection and designing on paper the requested consensus sequence, the production of said sequence falls within the competence of the skilled person and therefore does not involve per se an inventive merit.

For this reason claims 1 and 15 are not regarded as inventive (Art. 33.3 PCT).

3.1 The ability of the glycosylation sites on the variable domain to influence antigen binding has been known since long time as recognized in the description (see page 3 last paragraph).
Claims 3 and 4 are therefore not regarded as involving an inventive step (Art.33.3 PCT).

3.2 The earlier WO application under "criterion II" at page 13 teaches that "rare residues" in the framework of human acceptor should be replaced by residues from the donor (import) sequence, should said residues (from the donor) be "common" for human sequences at that site.

The interpretation of this teaching by the skilled reader should be that "residues which are highly conserved across all different human antibody types should be conserved".
Therefore also the selecting criterion according to claim 5 is suggested in the earlier WO application . Hence the subject matter of claim 5 is not regarded as involving an inventive step (Art. 33.3 EPC).

4. Claims 2 and claim 19 identify an additional not previously suggested criterion for the selection of the FR-residues suitable for substitution; the subject matter of the two claims is therefore recognized as involving an inventive step.

4.1 Claims 6 to 9 and 13 and 14 are directed to specific embodiments of the invention. Such embodiments do not appear to be disclosed or suggested in the prior art. Said claims are thus recognized as novel and as involving an inventive step.

ARTICLE 34

CLAIMS

WE CLAIM:

1. A method for making a humanized antibody comprising amino acid sequence of a non-human, import antibody and a human antibody, comprising the steps of:
   a. obtaining the amino acid sequences of at least a portion of an import variable domain and of a consensus human variable domain;
   b. identifying Complementarity Determining Region (CDR) amino acid sequences in the import and the human amino variable domain sequences;
   c. substituting an import CDR amino acid sequence for the corresponding human CDR amino acid sequence;
   d. aligning the amino acid sequences of a Framework Region (FR) of the import antibody and the corresponding FR of the consensus antibody;
   e. identifying import antibody FR residues in the aligned FR sequences that are non-homologous to the corresponding consensus antibody residues;
   f. determining if the non-homologous import amino acid residue is reasonably expected to have at least one of the following effects:
      1. non-covalently binds antigen directly,
      2. interacts with a CDR; or
      3. participates in the V_L - V_H interface; and
   g. for any non-homologous import antibody amino acid residue which is reasonably expected to have at least one of these effects, substituting that residue for the corresponding amino acid residue in the consensus antibody FR sequence.
2. The method of claim 1, having an additional step of determining if any such non-homologous residues are exposed on the surface of the domain or buried within it, and if the residue is exposed, retaining the consensus residue.
3. The method of claim 1 (or 19, having the additional steps of searching the import variable domain sequence for glycosylation sites, determining if any such glycosylation site is reasonably expected to affect the antigen binding or affinity of the antibody, and if so, substituting the glycosylation site into the consensus sequence.
4. The method of claim 1 (or 19, having the additional steps of searching the consensus variable domain sequence for glycosylation sites which are not present at the

ARTICLE 34

H 12-07-93

corresponding amino acid in the import sequence, and if the glycosylation site is not present in the import sequence, substituting the import amino acid residues for the amino acid residues comprising the consensus glycosylation site.

5. The method of claim 1 (or 19, having an additional step which comprises aligning import antibody and consensus antibody FR sequences, identifying import antibody FR residues which are non-homologous with the aligned consensus FR sequence, and for each such non-homologous import antibody FR residue, determining if the corresponding consensus antibody residue represents a residue which is highly conserved across all species at that site, and if it is so conserved, preparing a humanized antibody which comprises the consensus antibody amino acid residue at that site.

6. The method of claim 1, wherein the corresponding consensus antibody residues are selected from the group consisting of 4L, 35L, 36L, 38L, 43L, 44L, 46L, 58L, 62L, 63L, 64L, 65L, 66L, 67L, 68L, 69L, 70L, 71L, 73L, 85L, 87L, 98L, 2H, 4H, 24H, 36H, 37H, 39H, 43H, 45H, 49H, 58H, 60H, 67H, 68H, 69H, 70H, 73H, 74H, 75H, 76H, 78H, 91H, 92H, 93H, and 103H.

7. A method comprising providing at least a portion of an import, non-human antibody variable domain amino acid sequence having a CDR and a FR, obtaining the amino acid sequence of at least a portion of a consensus human antibody variable domain having a CDR and a FR, substituting the non-human CDR for the human CDR in the consensus human antibody variable domain, and then substituting an amino acid residue for the consensus amino acid residue at at least one of the following sites:

4L, 35L, 36L, 38L, 43L, 44L, 46L, 58L, 62L, 63L, 64L, 65L, 66L, 67L, 68L, 69L, 70L, 71L, 73L, 85L, 87L, 98L, 2H, 4H, 24H, 36H, 37H, 39H, 43H, 45H, 49H, 58H, 60H, 67H, 68H, 69H, 70H, 73H, 74H, 75H, 76H, 78H, 91H, 92H, 93H, and 103H.

8. The method of claim 7, wherein the substituted residue is the residue found at the corresponding location of the non-human antibody.

9. The method of claim 1 or 7, wherein the consensus human variable domain is a consensus based on human variable domains and additionally variable domains from species other than human.

10. A humanized antibody variable domain having a non-human CDR incorporated into a human antibody variable domain, wherein the improvement comprises

AVISENGGYTRYADSVKGRFTISADTSKNTAYLQMNSLRAEDTAVYYCS
RWGGDGFYAMDVWGQGTLVTVSS

18. A method comprising storing a computer representation of the following amino acid sequence:

a. DIQMTQSPSSLSASVGDRVTITCRASQDVSSYLAWYQQKPGKAPKLLIY
AASSLESGVPSRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQPEDFATYYCQQYNSLPYTFG
QGTKVEIKRT, or

b. EVQLVESGGGLVQPGGSLRLSCAASGFTFSDYAMSWVRQAPGKGLEWV
AVISENGGYTRYADSVKGRFTISADTSKNTAYLQMNSLRAEDTAVYYCS
RWGGDGFYAMDVWGQGTLVTVSS

19. A method for making a humanized antibody comprising amino acid sequence of a non-human, import antibody and a human antibody, comprising the steps of:

a. obtaining the amino acid sequences of at least a portion of an import variable domain and of a consensus human variable domain;

b. identifying Complementarity Determining Region (CDR) amino acid sequences in the import and the human amino variable domain sequences;

c. substituting an import CDR amino acid sequence for the corresponding human CDR amino acid sequence;

d. aligning the amino acid sequences of a Framework Region (FR) of the import antibody and the corresponding FR of the consensus antibody;

e. identifying import antibody FR residues in the aligned FR sequences that are non-homologous to the corresponding consensus antibody residues;

f. determining if the non-homologous import amino acid residue is reasonably expected to have at least one of the following effects:

1. non-covalently binds antigen directly,

2. interacts with a CDR; or

3. participates in the V_L - V_H interface;

g. for any non-homologous import antibody amino acid residue which is reasonably expected to have at least one of these effects, substituting that residue for the corresponding amino acid residue in the consensus antibody FR sequence; and

h. for any non-homologous import antibody amino acid residue, determining if any such non-homologous residue is exposed on the surface of the domain or buried within it, and if the residue is exposed, retaining the consensus residue.

INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

REQUEST

THE UNDERSIGNED REQUESTS THAT THE PRESENT INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION BE PROCESSED ACCORDING TO THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

(The following is to be filled in by the receiving Office)
INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION No. PCT/US 92/05126

INTERNATIONAL FILING DATE: 15 JUN 1992

(Stamp) PCT INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION RO/US
Name of receiving Office and "PCT International Application"

Applicant's or agent's file reference (indicated by applicant if desired) 709P1

Box No. I TITLE OF INVENTION

IMMUNOGLOBULIN VARIANTS

Box No. II APPLICANT (WHETHER OR NOT ALSO INVENTOR); DESIGNATED STATES FOR WHICH HE/SHE/IT IS APPLICANT. Use this box for indicating the applicant or, if there are several applicants, one of them. If more than one person (includes, where applicable, a legal entity) is involved, continue in Box No. III.

The person identified in this box is (mark one check-box only): ☐ applicant and inventor• ☒ applicant only

Name *and* address:••

GENENTECH, INC.
460 Point San Bruno Boulevard
South San Francisco, California 94080
United States of America

Telephone number (including area code): 415-225-1000 | Telegraphic address: | Teleprinter address: FAX: 415-952-9881

State of nationality: United States of America State of residence:• United States of America

The person identified in this box is *applicant* for the purposes of (mark one check-box only):
☐ all designated States ☒ all designated States except the United States of America ☐ the United States of America only ☐ the States indicated in the "Supplemental Box"

Box No. III FURTHER APPLICANTS, IF ANY; (FURTHER) INVENTORS, IF ANY; DESIGNATED STATES FOR WHICH THEY ARE APPLICANTS (IF APPLICABLE). A separate sub-box has to be filled in in respect of each person (includes, where applicable, a legal entity). If the following two sub-boxes are insufficient, continue in the "Supplemental Box," (giving there for each additional person the same indications as those requested in the following two sub-boxes) or by using a "continuation sheet."

The person identified in this sub-box is (mark one check-box only): ☒ applicant and inventor• ☐ applicant only ☐ inventor only•

Name *and* address:••

Paul J. CARTER ▲
2074 18th Avenue
San Francisco, California 94116
United States of America

If the person identified in this sub-box is *applicant (or applicant and inventor)*, indicate also:

State of nationality: United Kingdom State of residence:• United States of America

and whether that person is *applicant* for the purposes of (mark one check-box only):
☐ all designated States ☐ all designated States except the United States of America ☒ the United States of America only ☐ the States indicated in the "Supplemental Box"

The person identified in this sub-box is (mark one check-box only): ☒ applicant and inventor• ☐ applicant only ☐ inventor only•

Name *and* address:••

Leonard G. PRESTA ▲
1900 Gough Street, #206
San Francisco, California 94109
United States of America

If the person identified in this sub-box is *applicant (or applicant and inventor)*, indicate also:

State of nationality: United States of America State of residence:• United States of America

and whether that person is *applicant* for the purposes of (mark one check-box only):
☐ all designated States ☐ all designated States except the United States of America ☒ the United States of America only ☐ the States indicated in the "Supplemental Box"

• If the person indicated as "applicant and inventor" or as "inventor only" is not an *inventor* for the purposes of all the designated States, give the necessary indications in the "Supplemental Box."

•• Indicate the name of a natural person by giving his/her family name first followed by the given name(s). Indicate the name of a legal entity by its full official designation. In the address, include both the postal code (if any) and the State (name).

••• If residence is not indicated, it will be assumed that the State of residence is the same as the State indicated in the address.

Box No. IV AGENT (IF ANY) OR COMMON REPRESENTATIVE (IF ANY); ADDRESS FOR NOTIFICATIONS (IN CERTAIN CASES). A common representative may be appointed only if there are several applicants and if no agent is or has been appointed; the common representative must be one of the applicants.
The following person (includes, where applicable, a legal entity) is hereby/has been appointed as agent or common representative to act on behalf of the applicant(s) before the competent International Authorities:

Name *and* address, including postal code and country:

If the space below is used instead for an address for notifications, mark here: ☐

Carolyn R. ADLER ▲
GENENTECH, INC.
460 Point San Bruno Boulevard
South San Francisco, California 94080
United States of America

Telephone number (including area code): 415-225-1000

Telegraphic address:

Teleprinter address: FAX: 415-952-9881

Box No. V DESIGNATION OF GROUPS OF STATES OR STATES(1); CHOICE OF CERTAIN KINDS OF PROTECTION OR TREATMENT. The following designations are hereby made (please mark the applicable check-boxes):

Regional Patent

[X] **EP** **European Patent(2):** AT Austria, BE Belgium, CH and LI Switzerland and Liechtenstein, DE Germany, DK Denmark, ES Spain, FR France, GB United Kingdom, GR Greece, IT Italy, LU Luxembourg, MC Monaco, NL Netherlands, SE Sweden, and any other State which is a Contracting State of the European Patent Convention and of the PCT

[ ] **OA** **OAPI Patent:** Benin, Burkina Faso, Cameroon, Central African Republic, Chad, Congo, Côte d'Ivoire, Gabon, Guinea, Mali, Mauritania, Senegal, Togo, and any other State which is a Contracting State of OAPI and of the PCT; if other OAPI title desired, specify on dotted line(3):

.....

National Patent (if other kind of protection or treatment desired, specify on dotted line(3)

[ ]	AT	Austria(3)	[ ]	KR	Republic of Korea(3) .....
[X]	AU	Australia(3)	[ ]	LK	Sri Lanka
[ ]	BB	Barbados	[ ]	LU	Luxembourg(3) .....
[ ]	BG	Bulgaria(3)	[ ]	MG	Madagascar
[ ]	BR	Brazil(3)	[ ]	MN	Mongolia(3) .....
[X]	CA	Canada	[ ]	MW	Malawi(3) .....
[ ]	CH and LI	Switzerland and Liechtenstein	[ ]	NL	Netherlands
[ ]	CS	Czechoslovakia	[ ]	NO	Norway
[ ]	DE	Germany(3)	[ ]	PL	Poland(3) .....
[ ]	DK	Denmark	[ ]	RO	Romania
[ ]	ES	Spain(3)	[ ]	SD	Sudan
[ ]	FI	Finland	[ ]	SE	Sweden
[ ]	GB	United Kingdom	[ ]	SU	Soviet Union
[ ]	HU	Hungary	[X]	US	United States of America(3) ..... .continuation-in-part, ...
[X]	JP	Japan(3)			
[ ]	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea(3)			

Space reserved for designating States (for the purposes of a national patent) which have become party to the PCT after the issuance of this sheet:

.....

(1) The applicant's choice of the order of designations may be indicated by marking the check-boxes with sequential arabic numerals (see also the "Notes to Box No. V").
(2) The selection of particular States for a European patent can be made upon entering the national (regional) phase before the European Patent Office (see also the "Notes to Box No. V").
(3) If another kind of protection or a title of addition or, in the United States of America, treatment as a continuation or a continuation-in-part is desired, specify according to the instructions given in the "Notes to Box No. V."

Supplemental Box. Use this box [illegible] following cases:

(i) *if more than three persons are involved as applicants and/or inventors;* in such case, write "Continuation of Box No. III" and indicate for each additional person the same type of information as required in Box No. III;

(ii) *if, in Box No. II or any of the sub-boxes of Box No. III, the indication "the States indicated in the 'Supplemental Box,'" is checked;* in such case, write "Continuation of Box No. II" or "Continuation of Box No. III" or "Continuation of Boxes No. II and No. III" (as the case may be), indicate the name of the applicant(s) involved and, next to (each) such name, the State or States (or EP or OA, if applicable) for the purposes of which he/she/it is applicant;

(iii) *if, in Box No. II or any of the sub-boxes of Box No. III, a person indicated as "applicant and inventor" or "inventor only" is not inventor for the purposes of all designated States or for the purposes of the United States of America;* in such case, write "Continuation of Box No. II" or "Continuation of Box No. III" or "Continuation of Boxes No. II and No. III" (as the case may be), indicate the name of the inventor and, next to such name, the State or States (or EP or OA, if applicable) for the purposes of which the named person is inventor;

(iv) *if there is more than one agent and their addresses are not the same;* in such case, write "Continuation of Box No. IV" and indicate for each additional agent the same type of information as required in Box No. IV;

(v) *if, in Box No. V, the name of any country (or OAPI) is accompanied by the indication "patent of addition," "certificate of addition," or "inventor's certificate of addition," or if, in Box No. V, the name of the United States of America is accompanied by an indication "Continuation" or "Continuation-in-part";* in such case, write "Continuation of Box No. V" and the name of each State involved (or OAPI), and after the name of each such State (or OAPI), the number of the parent title or parent application and the date of grant of parent title or filing of parent application;

(vi) *if there are more than three earlier applications whose priority is claimed;* in such case, indicate "Continuation of Box No. VI" and indicate for each additional earlier application the same type of information as required in Box No. VI;

(vii) *if, in any of the Boxes, the space is insufficient to furnish all the information;* in such case, write "Continuation of Box No...." [indicate the number of the Box] and furnish the information in the same manner as required according to the captions of the Box in which the space was insufficient;

(viii) *if the applicant intends to claim, in respect of any designated Office, the benefit of provisions of the national law concerning non-prejudicial disclosures or exceptions to lack of novelty;* in such case, write "Statement Concerning Non-prejudicial Disclosures or Exceptions to Lack of Novelty" and furnish that statement below.

Continuation Box IV

Also: BUTING, Walter E., DREGER, Ginger R., FITTS, Renee A., HASAK, Janet E., HENSLEY, Max D., GLAISTER, Debra J., RAINES, Stephen, WINTER, Daryl B.

All of: GENENTECH, INC.
460 Point San Bruno Boulevard
South San Francisco, California 94080
United States of America

Continuation Box V

United States of America Application Serial Number 715,272 filed 14 June 1991.
(14.06.91)

If this Supplemental Box is not used, this sheet need not be included in the Request.

PCT/US 92/05126

Box No. VI PRIORITY CLAIM (IF ANY). The priority of the following earlier application(s) is hereby claimed:

Country (country in which it was filed if national application; one of the countries for which it was filed if regional or international application)	Filing Date (day, month, year)	Application No.	Office of filing (fill in only if the earlier application is an international application or a regional application)
(1) US	14 June 1991 (14.06.91)	715,272	
(2)			
(3)			

(Letter codes may be used to indicate country and/or Office of filing)

When the earlier application was filed with the Office which, for the purposes of the present international application, is the receiving Office, the applicant may, *against payment of the required fee*, ask the following:

[X] the receiving Office is hereby requested to prepare and transmit to the International Bureau a certified copy of the above-mentioned earlier application/of the earlier applications identified above by the numbers (insert the applicable numbers) (1)

Box No. VII EARLIER SEARCH (IF ANY). Fill in where a search (international, international-type or other) by the International Searching Authority has already been requested (or completed) and the said Authority is now requested to base the international search, to the extent possible, on the results of the said earlier search. Identify such search or request either by reference to the relevant application (or the translation thereof) or by reference to the search request.

International application number or number and country (or regional Office) of other application:

International/regional/national filing date:

Date of request for search:

Number (if available) given to search request:

Box No. VIII SIGNATURE OF APPLICANT(S) OR AGENT

(Stephen RAINES - Vice President Intellectual Property, GENENTECH, INC.)

(Carolyn R. ADLER, Agent for Paul J. CARTER, Leonard G. PRESTA)

If the present Request form is signed on behalf of any applicant by an agent, a separate power of attorney appointing the agent and signed by the applicant is required. If in such case it is desired to make use of a general power of attorney (deposited with the receiving Office), a copy thereof must be attached to this form.

Box No. IX CHECK LIST (To be filled in by the Applicant)

This international application contains the following number of sheets:

1. request	4	sheets	
2. description	107	sheets	
3. claims	5	sheets	
4. abstract	1	sheets	
5. drawings	9	sheets	
Total	126	sheets	

Figure number 2 of the drawings (if any) is suggested to accompany the abstract for publication.

This international application as filed is accompanied by the items marked below:

1. [X] separate signed power of attorney To be filed within 30 days
2. [ ] copy of general power of attorney
3. [X] priority document(s) (see Box No. VI) ordered above
4. [ ] receipt of the fees paid or revenue stamps
5. [ ] cheque for the payment of fees
6. [X] request to charge deposit account 07-0630
7. [X] other document (specify) Transmittal Sheet, Fee Calculation Sheet

(The following is to be filled in by the receiving Office)

1. Date of actual receipt of the purported international application: 13 Rec'd PCT/PC 15 JUN 1992
2. Corrected date of actual receipt due to later but timely received papers or drawings completing the purported international application:
3. Date of timely receipt of the required corrections under Article 11 of the PCT:
4. Drawings [ ] Received [ ] No Drawings

(The following is to be filled in by the International Bureau)

Date of receipt of the record copy:

THIS SHEET IS NOT PART OF AND DOES NOT COUNT AS A SHEET OF THE INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION

APPLICANT
GENENTECH, INC. et al.

This column for use by receiving Office

INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION NUMBER (to be filled in by the receiving Office)
PCT/US 92/05126

DATE STAMP OF RECEIVING OFFICE

FEE CALCULATION SHEET[1]

FEES SUBMITTED OR TO BE CHARGED TO DEPOSIT ACCOUNT

I. TRANSMITTAL FEE[2]	190	T	190
II. SEARCH FEE[3]	1320	S	1,320

International search to be effected by EP
(Please indicate, but only if the applicant has the choice between two or more International Searching Authorities, the name of the Authority to which the international application is to be transmitted. Note that the amount of the search fee depends on the identity of the International Searching Authority.)

III. INTERNATIONAL FEE[4]

BASIC FEE[5]

Indicate the number of SHEETS contained in the international application 126.

first 30 sheets	525	b_1	525
remaining 96 sheets × 10 =	960	b_2	960
Add amounts entered in boxes b_1 and b_2 and enter total in box B. This figure is the amount of the BASIC FEE	1485	B	1,485

DESIGNATION FEES[5]

Indicate the number of NATIONAL PATENTS which have been sought and multiply by the amount of the designation fee.	4 × 127 =	508	d_1	508
Indicate the number of REGIONAL PATENTS which have been sought and multiply by the amount of the designation fee.	1 × 127 =	127	d_2	127
Add amounts entered in boxes d_1 and d_2 and enter total in box D (if that total exceeds the figure which corresponds to the amount of the designation fee multiplied by ten, enter the latter figure in Box D)[6]. This figure is the amount of the DESIGNATION FEES		635	D	635
Add amounts entered in boxes B and D, and enter total in box I. This figure is the total amount of the INTERNATIONAL FEE		2120	I	2,120

IV. TOTAL OF PRESCRIBED FEES SUBMITTED OR TO BE CHARGED TO DEPOSIT ACCOUNT

Add amounts entered in boxes T, S and I, and enter total in the TOTAL box. This figure is the amount of the PRESCRIBED FEES SUBMITTED OR TO BE CHARGED TO DEPOSIT ACCOUNT: 3630. TOTAL — $3,630

THE APPLICANT MAY PAY THE PRESCRIBED FEES BY [CHEQUE, POSTAL MONEY ORDER, BANK DRAFT, CASH, REVENUE STAMPS, COUPONS, ETC.]. PAYMENT SHOULD BE MADE IN THE PRESCRIBED CURRENCY TO THE [ACCOUNT OF, ACCOUNT INDICATED BELOW OF, ORDER OF] THE RECEIVING OFFICE. PAYMENT MAY ALSO BE MADE BY AUTHORIZATION TO CHARGE A DEPOSIT ACCOUNT AT THE RECEIVING OFFICE IF THE LATTER HAS A DEPOSIT ACCOUNT SYSTEM.

DEPOSIT ACCOUNT AUTHORIZATION[7]

- [X] The RO/ US is hereby authorized to charge the total fees indicated above to my deposit account.
- [X] The RO/ US is hereby authorized to charge any deficiency or credit any overpayment in the total fees indicated above to my deposit account.
- [X] The RO/ US is hereby authorized to charge the fee for preparation and transmittal of the priority document to the International Bureau of WIPO to my deposit account.

07-0630	12 June 1992	Carolyn R. Adler
Deposit Account Number	Date	Signature

Form PCT/RO/101 (Annex) (January 1991)

See notes on reverse side

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

PCT

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

(PCT Article 18 and Rules 43 and 44)

Applicant's or agent's file reference	FOR FURTHER ACTION	see Notification of Transmittal of International Search Report (Form PCT/ISA/220) as well as, where applicable, item 5 below.
709P1		
International application No.	International filing date (day/month/year)	(Earliest) Priority Date (day/month/year)
PCT/US92/05126	15/06/92	14/06/91
Applicant		
GENENTECH, INC. et al.		

This international search report has been prepared by this International Searching Authority and is transmitted to the applicant according to Article 18. A copy is being transmitted to the International Bureau.

This international search report consists of a total of 4 sheets.

[X] It is also accompanied by a copy of each prior art document cited in this report.

1. [X] **Certain claims were found unsearchable** (see Box I).

2. [ ] **Unity of invention is lacking** (see Box II).

3. [ ] The international application contains disclosure of a **nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence listing** and the international search was carried out on the basis of the sequence listing

   [ ] filed with the international application.

   [ ] furnished by the applicant separately from the international application,

   [ ] but not accompanied by a statement to the effect that it did not include matter going beyond the disclosure in the international application as filed.

   [ ] Transcribed by this Authority

4. With regard to the **title,**

   [ ] the text is approved as submitted by the applicant.

   [X] the text has been established by this Authority to read as follows:

   METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES.

5. With regard to the **abstract,**

   [X] the text is approved as submitted by the applicant.

   [ ] the text has been established, according to Rule 38.2(b), by this Authority as it appears in Box III. The applicant may, within one month from the date of mailing of this international search report, submit comments to this Authority.

6. The figure of the **drawings** to be published with the abstract is:

   Figure No. 2

   [ ] as suggested by the applicant.

   [ ] because the applicant failed to suggest a figure.

   [ ] because this figure better characterizes the invention.

   [ ] None of the figures.

Form PCT/ISA/210 (first sheet) (July 1992)

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No PCT/US 92/05126

I. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER (if several classification symbols apply, indicate all)[6]

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both National Classification and IPC

Int.Cl. 5 C12N15/13; C12P21/08; C07K13/00; C12N5/10
G06F15/00

II. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum Documentation Searched[7]

Classification System	Classification Symbols
Int.Cl. 5	C07K ; C12N ; G06F

Documentation Searched other than Minimum Documentation to the Extent that such Documents are Included in the Fields Searched[8]

III. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT[9]

Category °	Citation of Document,[11] with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages[12]	Relevant to Claim No.[13]
Y	JOURNAL OF MOLECULAR BIOLOGY vol. 215, 1990, ACADEMIC PRESS pages 175 - 182 Tramontano, Anna; Chothia, Cyrus; Lesk, Arthur M. 'Framework residue 71 is a major determinant of the position and conformation of the second hypervariable region in the VH domains of immunoglobulins' cited in the application See the whole document, especially paragraph 7 ---	1-12,15
Y	WO,A,9 007 861 (PROTEIN DESIGN LABS, INC.) 26 July 1990 See pages 1-6; 9-25 --- -/--	1-12,15

° Special categories of cited documents :[10]

"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance

"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date

"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)

"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means

"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step

"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.

"&" document member of the same patent family

IV. CERTIFICATION

Date of the Actual Completion of the International Search	Date of Mailing of this International Search Report
07 OCTOBER 1992	02. 11. 92
International Searching Authority	**Signature of Authorized Officer**
EUROPEAN PATENT OFFICE	NAUCHE S.A.

2

See notes on accompanying sheet

Form PCT/ISA/210 (second sheet) (January 1985)

III. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT (CONTINUED FROM THE SECOND SHEET)

Category °	Citation of Document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to Claim No.
Y	NATURE. vol. 342, December 1989, LONDON GB pages 877 - 883 Chothia, Cyrus; Lesk, Arthur M.; Tramontano, Anna; Levitt, Michael; Smith-Gill, Sandra J.; Air, Gillian; Sheriff, Steven; Padlan, 'Conformations of immunoglobulin hypervariable region' cited in the application See the whole document, especially 'Discussion' ---	1-12,15
P,X	PROCEEDINGS OF THE NATIONAL ACADEMY OF SCIENCES OF USA. vol. 89, May 1992, WASHINGTON US pages 4285 - 4289 Carter, Paul et al. 'Humanization of an anti-p185HER2 antibody for human cancer therapy.' see the whole document -----	1-15

INTERNATIONAL S[redacted]RCH REPORT

International application No.
PCT/[redacted]92/05126

Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)

This international search report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. [X] Claims Nos.: 17-18
because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:
see PCT-Rule 39.1(iv)

2. [ ] Claims Nos.:
because they relate to parts of the international application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful international search can be carried out, specifically:

3. [ ] Claims Nos.:
because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

1. [ ] As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers all searchable claims.

2. [ ] As all searchable claims could be searches without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.

3. [ ] As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:

4. [ ] No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this international search report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

Remark on Protest

[ ] The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.

[ ] No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

Form PCT/ISA/210 (continuation of first sheet (1)) (July 1992)

ANNEX TO THE INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT ON INTERNATIONAL PATENT APPLICATION NO. US 9205126 SA 61838

This annex lists the patent family members relating to the patent documents cited in the above-mentioned international search report. The members are as contained in the European Patent Office EDP file on
The European Patent Office is in no way liable for these particulars which are merely given for the purpose of information. 07/10/92

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)		Publication date
WO-A-9007861	26-07-90	AU-A-	5153290	13-08-90
		CA-A-	2006865	28-06-90
		EP-A-	0451216	16-10-91

EPO FORM P0479

For more details about this annex : see Official Journal of the European Patent Office, No. 12/82

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

From the INTERNATIONAL BUREAU

PCT

NOTIFICATION CONCERNING
DOCUMENT TRANSMITTED

To:

United States Patent and Trademark
Office
Washington, D.C.

in its capacity as elected Office

Date of mailing: 24 September 1993 (24.09.93)	
International application No.: PCT/US92/05126	International filing date: 15 June 1992 (15.06.92)
Applicant: GENENTECH, INC. et al	

The International Bureau transmits herewith the following documents and number thereof:

_____ copy of the international preliminary examination report and annexes (Article 36(3)(a))

The International Bureau of WIPO
34, chemin des Colombettes
1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland

Facsimile No.: (41-22) 740.14.35

Authorised officer:

B. Fitzgerald

Telephone No.: (41-22) 730.91.11

DO/US WORKSHEET

U.S. Appl. No. 08/[redacted]206 International Appl No. 4592/5/26

Application filed by: ☐ 20 months ☑ 30 months

INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PAPERS IN THE APPLICATION FILE:

- ☑ International application (RECORD COPY)
- ☐ Article 19 amendments
- ☒ PCT/IB/331
- ☑ PCT/IPEA/409 IPER (PCT/IPEA/416 on front)
- ☑ Annexes to 409
- ☐ Priority document(s) No. _____
- ☐ INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION ON DOUBLE SIDED PAPER (COPIES MADE)
- ☒ Request form PCT/RO/101
- ☐ PCT/IB/302
- ☒ PCT/ISA/210-Search Report
- ☑ Search Report references
- ☐ Other 310

RECEIPTS FROM THE APPLICANT: (other than checked above)

- ☑ Basic National Fee (paid or authorized to charge)
- Translation of international application as filed:
  - ☐ Description
  - ☐ Claims
  - ☐ Words in the drawing figure(s)
  - ☐ Article 19 amendments
  - ☐ Annexes to 409
- ☑ Oath / Declaration
- ☑ DNA diskette
- ☑ Preliminary amendment(s) filed 17 NOV 1993
- ☐ Information Disclosure Statement
- ☐ Assignment document
- ☐ Power of attorney/Change of address
- ☐ Substitute specification
- ☐ Verified small status claim
- ☐ Other _____

Notes: ARTICLE 34 NOT ENTITY
CLAIMS ARE INCOMPLETE.

35 U.S.C. 371 - Receipt of Request (PTO-1390)	17 NOV 1993
Date acceptable oath / declaration received	17 NOV 1993
Date complete 35 U.S.C 371 requirements met	17 NOV 1993
102(e) Date	17 NOV 1993
Date of completion of DO/EO 906 - Notification of Missing 102(e) Requirements	
Date of completion of DO/EO 907 - Notification of Acceptance for 102(e) date	
Date of completion of DO/EO 911 - Application accepted under 35 U.S.C. 1.11	
Date of completion of DO/EO 905 - Notification of Missing Requirements	
Date of completion of DO/EO 916 - Notification of Defective Response	
Date of completion of DO/EO 903 - Notification of Acceptance	29 MAR 1994
Date of completion of DO/EO 909 - Notification of Abandonment	

WIPO Publication
Publication No.
WO/_____

Publication Date
_____

Publication Language
_____

Not Published
☐ U.S. only
Designated
☐ EP request

Screening done by: HANNIE

EXPRESS MAIL LABEL: HB214759258US
MAILED 17 NOVEMBER 1993

Attorney's Docket No. 709P1

COMBINED DECLARATION FOR PATENT APPLICATION AND POWER OF ATTORNEY

As a below named inventor, I hereby declare that:

My residence, post office and citizenship are as stated below next to my name,

I believe I am the original and sole inventor (if only one name is listed below) or an original, first and joint inventor (if plural names are listed below) of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought on the invention entitled:

METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES

the specification of which (check only one item below):

__ is attached hereto.

__ was filed as United States application Serial No. _____ on _____ and was amended on _____ (if applicable.).

_x_ was filed as PCT international application Number PCT/US92/05126 on 15 JUNE 1992 and was amended under PCT Article 19 on (if applicable).

I hereby state that I have reviewed and understand the contents of the above-identified specification, including the claims, as amended by any amendment referred to above.

I acknowledge the duty to disclose information which is material to the examination of this application in accordance with Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, §1.56(a).

I hereby claim foreign priority benefits under Title 35, United States Code, §119 of any foreign application(s) for patent or inventor's certificate or of any PCT international application(s) designating at least one country other than the United States of America listed below and have also identified below any foreign application(s) for patent or inventor's certificate or any PCT international application(s) designating at least one country other than the United States of America filed by me on the same subject matter having a filing date before that of the application(s) of which priority is claimed.

PRIOR FOREIGN/PCT APPLICATION(S) AND ANY PRIORITY CLAIMS UNDER 35 U.S.C. 119:

COUNTRY	APPLICATION NUMBER	DATE OF FILING (day, month, year)	PRIORITY CLAIMED UNDER 35 USC 119

I hereby claim the benefit under Title 35, United States Code, §120 of any United States application(s) or PCT international application(s) designating the United States of America that is/are listed below and, insofar as the subject matter of such of the claims of this application is not disclosed in that/those priori application(s) in the manner provided by the first paragraph of Title 35, United States Code §112, I acknowledge the duty to disclose material information a defined in Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, §1.56(a) which occurred between the filing date of the prior application(s) and the national or PCT international filing date of this application:

COMBINED DECLARATION FOR PATENT APPLICATION AND POWER OF ATTORNEY (Continued)

PRIOR U.S. APPLICATIONS OR PCT INTERNATIONAL APPLICATIONS DESIGNATING THE U.S. FOR BENEFIT UNDER 35 U.S.C. 120:

U.S. APPLICATIONS		STATUS *(Check one)*		
U.S. Application Number	U.S. Filing Date	Patented	Pending	Abandoned
07/715,272	14 June 1991		X	ABN

PCT APPLICATIONS DESIGNATING THE U.S.					
PCT Application No.	PCT Filing Date	U.S. Serial Numbers			

POWER OF ATTORNEY: As a named inventor, I hereby appoint the following attorney(s) and/or agent(s) to prosecute this application and transact all business in the Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith.

Carolyn R. Adler - Reg. No. 32,324
Renee A. Fitts - Reg. No. 35,136
Walter E. Buting - Reg. No. 23,092
Ginger R. Dreger - Reg. No. 33,055
Daryl B. Winter - Reg. No. 32,637
Sean A. Johnston - Reg. No. 35,910
Dennis G. Kleid - Reg. No. 32,037
Janet E. Hasak - Reg. No. 28,616
Stephen Raines - Reg. No. 25,912

Send correspondence to
Genentech, Inc.
Attn: Janet E. Hasak
460 Point San Bruno Boulevard
South San Francisco, CA 94080-4990
Telephone: (415) 225-1896

I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code and that willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issue thereon.

The undersigned hereby authorizes the U.S. attorney or agent named herein at accept and follow instructions from his foreign patent agent as to any action to be taken in the Patent and Trademark Office regarding this application without direct communication between the U.S. attorney or agent and the undersigned. In the event of a change in the persons from whom instructions may be taken, the U.S. attorney or agent named herein will be so notified by the undersigned.

Full name of sole or first inventor
Paul J. Carter

Inventor's signature Paul J. Carter Date 10/14/93

Residence
2074 18th Avenue, San Francisco, CA 94116 CA

Citizenship
United Kingdom

Post Office Address
2074 18th Avenue, San Francisco, CA 94116

Full name of second or joint inventor, if any
Leonard G. Presta

Second Inventor's signature Leonard G. Presta Date 10/14/93

Residence
1900 Gough Street, #206, San Francisco, CA 94109 CA

Citizenship
U.S.A.

Post Office Address
1900 Gough Street, #206, San Francisco, CA 94109

08/143,394
08/090,902
08/222,274
08/146,206

08/146206

05 Rec'd PCT/PTO 17 NOV 1993

1806

PATENT DOCKET 709P1

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

#6

In re Application of)
)
Paul J. Carter et al)
)
Serial No. To Be Assigned)
)
Filed: 17 November 1993)
)
For: METHOD OF MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES)

Art Unit: To Be Assigned

Examiner: To Be Assigned

460 Point San Bruno Boulevard
South San Francisco, CA 94080-4990
(415) 225-1896

PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT

Honorable Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks
Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

In the Specification:

Please amend the specification by inserting after page 76 the attached Sequence Listing as pages 77-92.

Please further amend the specification by renumbering pages 95-99 to be pages 93-97.

Remarks

This amendment is prepared for the purposes of introducing a substitute sequence listing into the application. In accordance with 37 C.F.R. § 1.821(f), I hereby state that this Sequence Listing is submitted in paper copy and in computer-readable copy, and that the content of these copies are the same, without adding any new matter.

Early entry of these amendments is requested. The inventors submit that this application is now in compliance with the requirement of 37 C.F.R. §1.821-1.825.

Respectfully submitted,

GENENTECH, INC.

Janet E. Hasak

Janet E. Hasak
Reg. No. 28,616

Date: November 17, 1993

SEQUENCE LISTING

(1) GENERAL INFORMATION:

(i) APPLICANT: Paul J. Carter
Leonard G. Presta

(ii) TITLE OF INVENTION: Method for Making Humanized Antibodies

(iii) NUMBER OF SEQUENCES: 25

(iv) CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS:
(A) ADDRESSEE: Genentech, Inc.
(B) STREET: 460 Point San Bruno Blvd
(C) CITY: South San Francisco
(D) STATE: California
(E) COUNTRY: USA
(F) ZIP: 94080

(v) COMPUTER READABLE FORM:
(A) MEDIUM TYPE: 5.25 inch, 360 Kb floppy disk
(B) COMPUTER: IBM PC compatible
(C) OPERATING SYSTEM: PC-DOS/MS-DOS
(D) SOFTWARE: patin (Genentech)

(vi) CURRENT APPLICATION DATA:
(A) APPLICATION NUMBER:
(B) FILING DATE:
(C) CLASSIFICATION:

(vii) PRIOR APPLICATION DATA:
(A) APPLICATION NUMBER: 07/715272
(B) FILING DATE: 14-JUN-1991

(viii) ATTORNEY/AGENT INFORMATION:
(A) NAME: Hasak, Janet E.
(B) REGISTRATION NUMBER: 28,616
(C) REFERENCE/DOCKET NUMBER: 709P1

(ix) TELECOMMUNICATION INFORMATION:
(A) TELEPHONE: 415/225-1896
(B) TELEFAX: 415/952-9881
(C) TELEX: 910/371-7168

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:1:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 109 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:1:

Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val
1 5 10 15

Gly Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Arg Ala Ser Gln Asp Val Asn

```
                    20                  25                  30

Thr Ala Val Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys
                    35                  40                  45

Leu Leu Ile Tyr Ser Ala Ser Phe Leu Glu Ser Gly Val Pro Ser
                    50                  55                  60

Arg Phe Ser Gly Ser Arg Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Leu Thr Ile
                    65                  70                  75

Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln
                    80                  85                  90

His Tyr Thr Thr Pro Pro Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu
                    95                 100                 105

Ile Lys Arg Thr
                109
```

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:2:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 120 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:2:

```
Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly
  1                 5                  10                  15

Gly Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Phe Asn Ile Lys
                    20                  25                  30

Asp Thr Tyr Ile His Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu
                    35                  40                  45

Glu Trp Val Ala Arg Ile Tyr Pro Thr Asn Gly Tyr Thr Arg Tyr
                    50                  55                  60

Ala Asp Ser Val Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Ala Asp Thr Ser
                    65                  70                  75

Lys Asn Thr Ala Tyr Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp
                    80                  85                  90

Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ser Arg Trp Gly Gly Asp Gly Phe Tyr
                    95                 100                 105

Ala Met Asp Val Trp Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser
                   110                 115                 120
```

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:3:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 109 amino acids

(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:3:

Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val
1 5 10 15

Gly Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Arg Ala Ser Gln Asp Val Ser
20 25 30

Ser Tyr Leu Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys
35 40 45

Leu Leu Ile Tyr Ala Ala Ser Ser Leu Glu Ser Gly Val Pro Ser
50 55 60

Arg Phe Ser Gly Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Leu Thr Ile
65 70 75

Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln
80 85 90

Tyr Asn Ser Leu Pro Tyr Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu
95 100 105

Ile Lys Arg Thr
109

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:4:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 120 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:4:

Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly
1 5 10 15

Gly Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Phe Thr Phe Ser
20 25 30

Asp Tyr Ala Met Ser Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu
35 40 45

Glu Trp Val Ala Val Ile Ser Glu Asn Gly Gly Tyr Thr Arg Tyr
50 55 60

Ala Asp Ser Val Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Ala Asp Thr Ser
65 70 75

Lys Asn Thr Ala Tyr Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp
80 85 90

Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ser Arg Trp Gly Gly Asp Gly Phe Tyr
95 100 105

Ala Met Asp Val Trp Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser
110 115 120

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:5:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 109 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:5:

Asp Ile Val Met Thr Gln Ser His Lys Phe Met Ser Thr Ser Val
1 5 10 15

Gly Asp Arg Val Ser Ile Thr Cys Lys Ala Ser Gln Asp Val Asn
20 25 30

Thr Ala Val Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly His Ser Pro Lys
35 40 45

Leu Leu Ile Tyr Ser Ala Ser Phe Arg Tyr Thr Gly Val Pro Asp
50 55 60

Arg Phe Thr Gly Asn Arg Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Phe Thr Ile
65 70 75

Ser Ser Val Gln Ala Glu Asp Leu Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln
80 85 90

His Tyr Thr Thr Pro Pro Thr Phe Gly Gly Gly Thr Lys Leu Glu
95 100 105

Ile Lys Arg Ala
109

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:6:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 120 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:6:

Glu Val Gln Leu Gln Gln Ser Gly Pro Glu Leu Val Lys Pro Gly
1 5 10 15

Ala Ser Leu Lys Leu Ser Cys Thr Ala Ser Gly Phe Asn Ile Lys
20 25 30

Asp Thr Tyr Ile His Trp Val Lys Gln Arg Pro Glu Gln Gly Leu
35 40 45

Glu Trp Ile Gly Arg Ile Tyr Pro Thr Asn Gly Tyr Thr Arg Tyr
50 55 60

Asp Pro Lys Phe Gln Asp Lys Ala Thr Ile Thr Ala Asp Thr Ser
65 70 75

Ser Asn Thr Ala Tyr Leu Gln Val Ser Arg Leu Thr Ser Glu Asp
80 85 90

Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ser Arg Trp Gly Gly Asp Gly Phe Tyr
95 100 105

Ala Met Asp Tyr Trp Gly Gln Gly Ala Ser Val Thr Val Ser Ser
110 115 120

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:7:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 27 bases
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:7:

TCCGATATCC AGCTGACCCA GTCTCCA 27

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:8:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 31 bases
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:8:

GTTTGATCTC CAGCTTGGTA CCHSCDCCGA A 31

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:9:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 22 bases
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:9:

AGGTSMARCT GCAGSAGTCW GG 22

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:10:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 34 bases
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:10:

TGAGGAGACG GTGACCGTGG TCCCTTGGCC CCAG 34

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:11:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 36 bases
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:11:

GTAGATAAAT CCTCTAACAC AGCCTATCTG CAAATG 36

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:12:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 36 bases
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:12:

GTAGATAAAT CCAAATCTAC AGCCTATCTG CAAATG 36

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:13:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 36 bases
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:13:

GTAGATAAAT CCTCTTCTAC AGCCTATCTG CAAATG 36

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:14:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 68 bases
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:14:

CTTATAAAGG TGTTTCCACC TATAACCAGA AATTCAAGGA TCGTTTCACG 50

ATATCCGTAG ATAAATCC 68

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:15:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 30 bases
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:15:

CTATACCTCC CGTCTGCATT CTGGAGTCCC 30

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:16:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 107 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:16:

Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Thr Thr Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Leu
1 5 10 15

Gly Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Ser Cys Arg Ala Ser Gln Asp Ile Arg
20 25 30

Asn Tyr Leu Asn Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Asp Gly Thr Val Lys
35 40 45

Leu Leu Ile Tyr Tyr Thr Ser Arg Leu His Ser Gly Val Pro Ser
50 55 60

Lys Phe Ser Gly Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Tyr Ser Leu Thr Ile
65 70 75

Ser Asn Leu Glu Gln Glu Asp Ile Ala Thr Tyr Phe Cys Gln Gln
80 85 90

Gly Asn Thr Leu Pro Trp Thr Phe Ala Gly Gly Thr Lys Leu Glu
95 100 105

Ile Lys
107

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:17:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 107 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:17:

Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val
1 5 10 15

Gly Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Arg Ala Ser Gln Asp Ile Arg
20 25 30

Asn Tyr Leu Asn Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys
35 40 45

Leu Leu Ile Tyr Tyr Thr Ser Arg Leu Glu Ser Gly Val Pro Ser
50 55 60

Arg Phe Ser Gly Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Tyr Thr Leu Thr Ile
65 70 75

Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln
80 85 90

Gly Asn Thr Leu Pro Trp Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu
95 100 105

Ile Lys
107

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:18:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 107 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:18:

Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val
1 5 10 15

Gly Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Arg Ala Ser Gln Ser Ile Ser
20 25 30

Asn Tyr Leu Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys

35 40 45

Leu Leu Ile Tyr Ala Ala Ser Ser Leu Glu Ser Gly Val Pro Ser
50 55 60

Arg Phe Ser Gly Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Leu Thr Ile
65 70 75

Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln
80 85 90

Tyr Asn Ser Leu Pro Trp Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu
95 100 105

Ile Lys
107

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:19:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 129 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:19:

Glu Val Gln Leu Gln Gln Ser Gly Pro Glu Leu Val Lys Pro Gly
1 5 10 15

Ala Ser Met Lys Ile Ser Cys Lys Ala Ser Gly Tyr Ser Phe Thr
20 25 30

Gly Tyr Thr Met Asn Trp Val Lys Gln Ser His Gly Lys Asn Leu
35 40 45

Glu Trp Met Gly Leu Ile Asn Pro Tyr Lys Gly Val Ser Thr Tyr
50 55 60

Asn Gln Lys Phe Lys Asp Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Lys Ala Thr Leu
65 70 75

Thr Val Asp Lys Ser Ser Ser Thr Ala Tyr Leu Met Glu Leu Leu
80 85 90

Asn Ser Leu Thr Ser Glu Asp Ser Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ala Arg
95 100 105

Ser Gly Tyr Tyr Gly Asp Ser Asp Trp Tyr Phe Asp Val Trp Gly
110 115 120

Ala Gly Thr Thr Val Thr Val Ser Ser
125 129

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:20:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 122 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid

(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:20:

Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly
1 5 10 15

Gly Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Tyr Ser Phe Thr
20 25 30

Gly Tyr Thr Met Asn Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu
35 40 45

Glu Trp Val Ala Leu Ile Asn Pro Tyr Lys Gly Val Ser Thr Tyr
50 55 60

Asn Gln Lys Phe Lys Asp Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Val Asp Lys Ser
65 70 75

Lys Asn Thr Ala Tyr Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp
80 85 90

Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ala Arg Ser Gly Tyr Tyr Gly Asp Ser
95 100 105

Asp Trp Tyr Phe Asp Val Trp Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val
110 115 120

Ser Ser
122

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:21:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 122 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:21:

Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly
1 5 10 15

Gly Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Phe Thr Phe Ser
20 25 30

Ser Tyr Ala Met Ser Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu
35 40 45

Glu Trp Val Ser Val Ile Ser Gly Asp Gly Gly Ser Thr Tyr Tyr
50 55 60

Ala Asp Ser Val Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Arg Asp Asn Ser
65 70 75

Lys Asn Thr Leu Tyr Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp
80 85 90

Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ala Arg Gly Arg Val Gly Tyr Ser Leu
95 100 105

Ser Gly Leu Tyr Asp Tyr Trp Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val
110 115 120

Ser Ser
122

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:22:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 454 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:22:

Gln Val Gln Leu Gln Gln Ser Gly Pro Glu Leu Val Lys Pro Gly
1 5 10 15

Ala Ser Val Lys Ile Ser Cys Lys Thr Ser Gly Tyr Thr Phe Thr
20 25 30

Glu Tyr Thr Met His Trp Met Lys Gln Ser His Gly Lys Ser Leu
35 40 45

Glu Trp Ile Gly Gly Phe Asn Pro Lys Asn Gly Gly Ser Ser His
50 55 60

Asn Gln Arg Phe Met Asp Lys Ala Thr Leu Ala Val Asp Lys Ser
65 70 75

Thr Ser Thr Ala Tyr Met Glu Leu Arg Ser Leu Thr Ser Glu Asp
80 85 90

Ser Gly Ile Tyr Tyr Cys Ala Arg Trp Arg Gly Leu Asn Tyr Gly
95 100 105

Phe Asp Val Arg Tyr Phe Asp Val Trp Gly Ala Gly Thr Thr Val
110 115 120

Thr Val Ser Ser Ala Ser Thr Lys Gly Pro Ser Val Phe Pro Leu
125 130 135

Ala Pro Ser Ser Lys Ser Thr Ser Gly Gly Thr Ala Ala Leu Gly
140 145 150

Cys Leu Val Lys Asp Tyr Phe Pro Glu Pro Val Thr Val Ser Trp
155 160 165

Asn Ser Gly Ala Leu Thr Ser Gly Val His Thr Phe Pro Ala Val
170 175 180

Leu Gln Ser Ser Gly Leu Tyr Ser Leu Ser Ser Val Val Thr Val
185 190 195

Pro Ser Ser Ser Leu Gly Thr Gln Thr Tyr Ile Cys Asn Val Asn

200 205 210

His Lys Pro Ser Asn Thr Lys Val Asp Lys Lys Val Glu Pro Lys
215 220 225

Ser Cys Asp Lys Thr His Thr Cys Pro Pro Cys Pro Ala Pro Glu
230 235 240

Leu Leu Gly Gly Pro Ser Val Phe Leu Phe Pro Pro Lys Pro Lys
245 250 255

Asp Thr Leu Met Ile Ser Arg Thr Pro Glu Val Thr Cys Val Val
260 265 270

Val Asp Val Ser His Glu Asp Pro Glu Val Lys Phe Asn Trp Tyr
275 280 285

Val Asp Gly Val Glu Val His Asn Ala Lys Thr Lys Pro Arg Glu
290 295 300

Glu Gln Tyr Asn Ser Thr Tyr Arg Val Val Ser Val Leu Thr Val
305 310 315

Leu His Gln Asp Trp Leu Asn Gly Lys Glu Tyr Lys Cys Lys Val
320 325 330

Ser Asn Lys Ala Leu Pro Ala Pro Ile Glu Lys Thr Ile Ser Lys
335 340 345

Ala Lys Gly Gln Pro Arg Glu Pro Gln Val Tyr Thr Leu Pro Pro
350 355 360

Ser Arg Glu Glu Met Thr Lys Asn Gln Val Ser Leu Thr Cys Leu
365 370 375

Val Lys Gly Phe Tyr Pro Ser Asp Ile Ala Val Glu Trp Glu Ser
380 385 390

Asn Gly Gln Pro Glu Asn Asn Tyr Lys Thr Thr Pro Pro Val Leu
395 400 405

Asp Ser Asp Gly Ser Phe Phe Leu Tyr Ser Lys Leu Thr Val Asp
410 415 420

Lys Ser Arg Trp Gln Gln Gly Asn Val Phe Ser Cys Ser Val Met
425 430 435

His Glu Ala Leu His Asn His Tyr Thr Gln Lys Ser Leu Ser Leu
440 445 450

Ser Pro Gly Lys
454

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:23:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 557 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid

(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:23:

```
His His Gln Val Gln Leu Gln Gln Ser Gly Pro Glu Leu Val Lys
 1               5                  10                  15

Pro Gly Ala Ser Val Lys Ile Ser Cys Lys Thr Ser Gly Tyr Thr
            20                  25                  30

Phe Thr Glu Met Gly Trp Ser Cys Ile Ile Leu Phe Leu Val Ala
        35                  40                  45

Thr Ala Thr Gly Val His Ser Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly
    50                  55                  60

Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly Gly Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala
65                  70                  75

Thr Ser Gly Tyr Thr Phe Thr Glu Tyr Thr Met His Trp Met Arg
            80                  85                  90

Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu Glu Trp Val Ala Gly Ile Asn Pro
        95                  100                 105

Lys Asn Gly Gly Thr Ser His Asn Gln Arg Phe Met Asp Arg Phe
    110                 115                 120

Thr Ile Ser Val Asp Lys Ser Thr Ser Thr Ala Tyr Met Gln Met
125                 130                 135

Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ala Arg
            140                 145                 150

Trp Arg Gly Leu Asn Tyr Gly Phe Asp Val Arg Tyr Phe Asp Val
        155                 160                 165

Trp Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser Ala Ser Thr Lys
    170                 175                 180

Gly Pro Ser Val Phe Pro Leu Ala Pro Cys Ser Arg Ser Thr Ser
185                 190                 195

Glu Ser Thr Ala Ala Leu Gly Cys Leu Val Lys Asp Tyr Phe Pro
            200                 205                 210

Glu Pro Val Thr Val Ser Trp Asn Ser Gly Ala Leu Thr Ser Gly
        215                 220                 225

Val His Thr Phe Pro Ala Val Leu Gln Ser Ser Gly Leu Tyr Ser
    230                 235                 240

Leu Ser Ser Val Val Thr Val Thr Ser Ser Asn Phe Gly Thr Gln
245                 250                 255

Thr Tyr Thr Cys Asn Val Asp His Lys Pro Ser Asn Thr Lys Val
            260                 265                 270
```

```
Asp Lys Thr Val Glu Arg Lys Cys Cys Val Thr Cys Pro Pro Cys
                275                 280                 285

Pro Ala Pro Glu Leu Leu Gly Gly Pro Ser Val Phe Leu Phe Pro
            290                 295                 300

Pro Lys Pro Lys Asp Thr Leu Met Ile Ser Arg Thr Pro Glu Val
        305                 310                 315

Thr Cys Val Val Val Asp Val Ser His Glu Asp Pro Glu Val Lys
    320                 325                 330

Glu Cys Pro Pro Cys Pro Ala Pro Pro Val Ala Gly Pro Ser Val
335                 340                 345

Phe Leu Phe Pro Pro Lys Pro Lys Asp Thr Leu Met Ile Ser Arg
            350                 355                 360

Thr Pro Glu Val Thr Cys Val Val Val Asp Val Ser His Glu Asp
        365                 370                 375

Pro Glu Val Gln Phe Asn Trp Tyr Val Asp Gly Met Glu Val His
    380                 385                 390

Asn Ala Lys Thr Lys Pro Arg Glu Glu Gln Phe Asn Ser Thr Phe
395                 400                 405

Arg Val Val Ser Val Leu Thr Val Val His Gln Asp Trp Leu Asn
            410                 415                 420

Gly Lys Glu Tyr Lys Cys Lys Val Ser Asn Lys Gly Leu Pro Ala
        425                 430                 435

Pro Ile Glu Lys Thr Ile Ser Lys Thr Lys Gly Gln Pro Arg Glu
    440                 445                 450

Pro Gln Val Tyr Thr Leu Pro Pro Ser Arg Glu Glu Met Thr Lys
455                 460                 465

Asn Gln Val Ser Leu Thr Cys Leu Val Lys Gly Phe Tyr Pro Ser
            470                 475                 480

Asp Ile Ala Val Glu Trp Glu Ser Asn Gly Gln Pro Glu Asn Asn
        485                 490                 495

Tyr Lys Thr Thr Pro Pro Met Leu Asp Ser Asp Gly Ser Phe Phe
    500                 505                 510

Leu Tyr Ser Lys Leu Thr Val Asp Lys Ser Arg Trp Gln Gln Gly
515                 520                 525

Asn Val Phe Ser Cys Ser Val Met His Glu Ala Leu His Asn His
            530                 535                 540

Tyr Thr Gln Lys Ser Leu Ser Leu Ser Pro Gly Lys
545                 550                 555
```

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:24:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 214 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:24:

```
Asp Val Gln Met Thr Gln Thr Thr Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Leu
 1               5                  10                  15

Gly Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Asn Cys Arg Ala Ser Gln Asp Ile Asn
            20                  25                  30

Asn Tyr Leu Asn Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Asn Gly Thr Val Lys
        35                  40                  45

Leu Leu Ile Tyr Tyr Thr Ser Thr Leu His Ser Gly Val Pro Ser
    50                  55                  60

Arg Phe Ser Gly Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Tyr Ser Leu Thr Ile
65                  70                  75

Ser Asn Leu Asp Gln Glu Asp Ile Ala Thr Tyr Phe Cys Gln Gln
                80                  85                  90

Gly Asn Thr Leu Pro Pro Thr Phe Gly Gly Gly Thr Lys Val Glu
            95                  100                 105

Ile Lys Arg Thr Val Ala Ala Pro Ser Val Phe Ile Phe Pro Pro
        110                 115                 120

Ser Asp Glu Gln Leu Lys Ser Gly Thr Ala Ser Val Val Cys Leu
    125                 130                 135

Leu Asn Asn Phe Tyr Pro Arg Glu Ala Lys Val Gln Trp Lys Val
140                 145                 150

Asp Asn Ala Leu Gln Ser Gly Asn Ser Gln Glu Ser Val Thr Glu
155                 160                 165

Gln Asp Ser Lys Asp Ser Thr Tyr Ser Leu Ser Ser Thr Leu Thr
            170                 175                 180

Leu Ser Lys Ala Asp Tyr Glu Lys His Lys Val Tyr Ala Cys Glu
        185                 190                 195

Val Thr His Gln Gly Leu Ser Ser Pro Val Thr Lys Ser Phe Asn
    200                 205                 210

Arg Gly Glu Cys
214
```

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:25:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 233 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:25:

```
Met Gly Trp Ser Cys Ile Ile Leu Phe Leu Val Ala Thr Ala Thr
 1               5                  10                  15

Gly Val His Ser Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu
            20                  25                  30

Ser Ala Ser Val Gly Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Arg Ala Ser
        35                  40                  45

Gln Asp Ile Asn Asn Tyr Leu Asn Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly
    50                  55                  60

Lys Ala Pro Lys Leu Leu Ile Tyr Tyr Thr Ser Thr Leu His Ser
65                  70                  75

Gly Val Pro Ser Arg Phe Ser Gly Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Tyr
            80                  85                  90

Thr Leu Thr Ile Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr
        95                  100                 105

Tyr Cys Gln Gln Gly Asn Thr Leu Pro Pro Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly
    110                 115                 120

Thr Lys Val Glu Ile Lys Arg Thr Val Ala Ala Pro Ser Val Phe
125                 130                 135

Ile Phe Pro Pro Ser Asp Glu Gln Leu Lys Ser Gly Thr Ala Ser
            140                 145                 150

Val Val Cys Leu Leu Asn Asn Phe Tyr Pro Arg Glu Ala Lys Val
        155                 160                 165

Gln Trp Lys Val Asp Asn Ala Leu Gln Ser Gly Asn Ser Gln Glu
    170                 175                 180

Ser Val Thr Glu Gln Asp Ser Lys Asp Ser Thr Tyr Ser Leu Ser
185                 190                 195

Ser Thr Leu Thr Leu Ser Lys Ala Asp Tyr Glu Lys His Lys Val
            200                 205                 210

Tyr Ala Cys Glu Val Thr His Gln Gly Leu Ser Ser Pro Val Thr
        215                 220                 225

Lys Ser Phe Asn Arg Gly Glu Cys
    230             233
```

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER OF PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS
Washington, D.C. 20231

#2

U.S APPLICATION NO.		FIRST NAMED APPLICANT	ATTY. DOCKET NO.
08/146,206		CARTER P	709P1

5611

CAROLYN R. ADLER
GENENTECH, INC.
460 POINT SAN BRUNO BOULEVARD
SOUTH SAN FRANCISCO, CALIFORNIA 94080

INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION NO.	
PCT/US92/05126	

I.A. FILING DATE	PRIORITY DATE
06/15/92	06/14/91

DATE MAILED: 04/04/94

NOTIFICATION OF ACCEPTANCE OF APPLICATION UNDER 35 U.S.C. 371 AND 37 CFR 1.494 OR 1.495

1. The applicant is hereby advised that the United States Patent and Trademark Office in its capacity as ☐ a Designated Office (37 CFR 1.494), ☑ an Elected Office (37 CFR 1.495), has determined that the above identified international application has met the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 371, and is **ACCEPTED** for national patentability examination in the United States Patent and Trademark Office.

2. The United States Application Number assigned to the application is shown above and the relevant dates are:

17 NOV 1993 — 35 U.S.C. 102(e) DATE

17 NOV 1993 — DATE OF RECEIPT OF 35 U.S.C. 371 REQUIREMENTS

3. ☑ A request for immediate examination under 35 U.S.C. 371(f) was received on 17 NOV 1993 and the application will be examined in turn.

4. The following items have been received:
- ☑ U.S. Basic National Fee.
- ☑ Copy of the international application in:
  - ☐ a non-English language.
  - ☑ English.
- ☐ Translation of the international application into English.
- ☑ Oath or Declaration of inventor(s) for DO/EO/US.
- ☐ Copy of Article 19 amendments. ☐ Translation of Article 19 amendments into English.
  The Article 19 amendments ☐ have ☐ have not been entered.
- ☑ The International Preliminary Examination Report in English and its Annexes, if any.
- ☐ Translation of Annexes to the International Preliminary Examination Report into English.
  The Annexes ☐ have ☐ have not been entered.
- ☑ Preliminary amendment(s) filed 17 NOV 1993 and _____.
- ☐ Information Disclosure Statement(s) filed _____ and _____.
- ☑ Assignment document.
- ☐ Power of Attorney and /or Change of Address.
- ☐ Substitute specification filed _____.
- ☐ Verified Statement Claiming Small Entity Status.
- ☐ Priority Document.
- ☑ Copy of the Search Report ☑ and copies of the references cited therein.
- ☑ Other: ARTICLE 34 AMENDMENTS NOT ENTITY, CLAIMS ARE INCOMPLETE.

A Filing Receipt (PTO-103X) will be issued for the present application in due course. Once the Filing Receipt has been received, send all correspondence to the Group Art Unit designated thereon.

Applicant is reminded that any communication to the United States Patent and Trademark Office must be mailed to the address given in the heading and include the U.S. application no. shown above. (37 CFR 1.5)

Marnie Brown
Telephone: (703) 305-3165

FORM PCT/DO/EO/903 (May 1993)

UNITED STATES PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE
Washington, D.C. 20231

REQUEST FOR PATENT FEE REFUND

1 Date of Request: 29 MAR 94 | 2 Serial/Patent # 08/146206

	3 Please refund the following fee(s):	4 PAPER NUMBER	5 DATE FILED	6 AMOUNT
✓	Filing	1	17NOV93	$ 172.00
	Amendment			$
	Extension of Time			$
	Notice of Appeal/Appeal			$
	Petition			$
	Issue			$
	Cert of Correction/Terminal Disc.			$
	Maintenance			$
	Assignment			$
	Other			$

7 TOTAL AMOUNT OF REFUND: $ 172.00

8 TO BE REFUNDED BY:

- [ ] Treasury Check
- [✓] Credit Deposit A/C #:

9 07--0630

10 REASON:

- [✓] Overpayment
- [ ] Duplicate Payment
- [ ] No Fee Due (Explanation):

EPO SEARCH

11 REFUND REQUESTED BY:

TYPED/PRINTED NAME: M PERSON TITLE: Paralegal Specialist

SIGNATURE: M. Person PCT PHONE: 3053737

OFFICE:

****

THIS SPACE RESERVED FOR FINANCE USE ONLY:

APPROVED: Mark S. Rynn DATE: 4/6/94

Instructions for completion of this form appear on the back. After completion, attach white and yellow copies to the official file and mail or hand-carry to:

Office of Finance
Refund Branch
Crystal Park One, Room 802B

FORM PTO 1577
(01/90)

only errored sequence is shown here: CL #4

RAW SEQUENCE LISTING
PATENT APPLICATION *US/08/146,206*

DATE: 04/15/94
TIME: 12:13:19

INPUT SET: S2658.raw

SEQUENCE LISTING

(1) General Information:

(i) APPLICANT: Paul J. Carter
Leonard G. Presta

(ii) TITLE OF INVENTION: Method for Making Humanized Antibodies

(iii) NUMBER OF SEQUENCES: 25

(iv) CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS:
(A) ADDRESSEE: Genentech, Inc.
(B) STREET: 460 Point San Bruno Blvd
(C) CITY: South San Francisco
(D) STATE: California
(E) COUNTRY: USA
(F) ZIP: 94080

(v) COMPUTER READABLE FORM:
(A) MEDIUM TYPE: 5.25 inch, 360 Kb floppy disk
(B) COMPUTER: IBM PC compatible
(C) OPERATING SYSTEM: PC-DOS/MS-DOS
(D) SOFTWARE: patin (Genentech)

(vi) CURRENT APPLICATION DATA:
(A) APPLICATION NUMBER:
(B) FILING DATE:
(C) CLASSIFICATION:

(vii) PRIOR APPLICATION DATA:
(A) APPLICATION NUMBER: 07/715272
(B) FILING DATE: 14-JUN-1991

(viii) ATTORNEY/AGENT INFORMATION:
(A) NAME: Hasak, Janet E.
(B) REGISTRATION NUMBER: 28,616
(C) REFERENCE/DOCKET NUMBER: 709P1

(ix) TELECOMMUNICATION INFORMATION:
(A) TELEPHONE: 415/225-1896
(B) TELEFAX: 415/952-9881
(C) TELEX: 910/371-7168

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:23:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
--> **(A) LENGTH: 557 amino acids**
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:23:

only 552 are shown. Please review discrepancy.

```
His His Gln Val Gln Leu Gln Gln Ser Gly Pro Glu Leu Val Lys
  1               5                  10                  15

Pro Gly Ala Ser Val Lys Ile Ser Cys Lys Thr Ser Gly Tyr Thr
                  20                  25                  30

Phe Thr Glu Met Gly Trp Ser Cys Ile Ile Leu Phe Leu Val Ala
                  35                  40                  45

Thr Ala Thr Gly Val His Ser Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly
                  50                  55                  60

Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly Gly Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala
                  65                  70                  75

Thr Ser Gly Tyr Thr Phe Thr Glu Tyr Thr Met His Trp Met Arg
                  80                  85                  90

Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu Glu Trp Val Ala Gly Ile Asn Pro
                  95                 100                 105

Lys Asn Gly Gly Thr Ser His Asn Gln Arg Phe Met Asp Arg Phe
                 110                 115                 120

Thr Ile Ser Val Asp Lys Ser Thr Ser Thr Ala Tyr Met Gln Met
                 125                 130                 135

Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ala Arg
                 140                 145                 150

Trp Arg Gly Leu Asn Tyr Gly Phe Asp Val Arg Tyr Phe Asp Val
                 155                 160                 165

Trp Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser Ala Ser Thr Lys
                 170                 175                 180

Gly Pro Ser Val Phe Pro Leu Ala Pro Cys Ser Arg Ser Thr Ser
                 185                 190                 195

Glu Ser Thr Ala Ala Leu Gly Cys Leu Val Lys Asp Tyr Phe Pro
                 200                 205                 210

Glu Pro Val Thr Val Ser Trp Asn Ser Gly Ala Leu Thr Ser Gly
                 215                 220                 225

Val His Thr Phe Pro Ala Val Leu Gln Ser Ser Gly Leu Tyr Ser
                 230                 235                 240

Leu Ser Ser Val Val Thr Val Thr Ser Ser Asn Phe Gly Thr Gln
                 245                 250                 255

Thr Tyr Thr Cys Asn Val Asp His Lys Pro Ser Asn Thr Lys Val
                 260                 265                 270
```

```
755
756   Asp Lys Thr Val Glu Arg Lys Cys Cys Val Thr Cys Pro Pro Cys
757                   275                 280                 285
758
759   Pro Ala Pro Glu Leu Leu Gly Gly Pro Ser Val Phe Leu Phe Pro
760                   290                 295                 300
761
762   Pro Lys Pro Lys Asp Thr Leu Met Ile Ser Arg Thr Pro Glu Val
763                   305                 310                 315
764
765   Thr Cys Val Val Val Asp Val Ser His Glu Asp Pro Glu Val Lys
766                   320                 325                 330
767
768   Glu Cys Pro Pro Cys Pro Ala Pro Pro Val Ala Gly Pro Ser Val
769                   335                 340                 345
770
771   Phe Leu Phe Pro Pro Lys Pro Lys Asp Thr Leu Met Ile Ser Arg
772                   350                 355                 360
773
774   Thr Pro Glu Val Thr Cys Val Val Val Asp Val Ser His Glu Asp
775                   365                 370                 375
776
777   Pro Glu Val Gln Phe Asn Trp Tyr Val Asp Gly Met Glu Val His
778                   380                 385                 390
779
780   Asn Ala Lys Thr Lys Pro Arg Glu Glu Gln Phe Asn Ser Thr Phe
781                   395                 400                 405
782
783   Arg Val Val Ser Val Leu Thr Val Val His Gln Asp Trp Leu Asn
784                   410                 415                 420
785
786   Gly Lys Glu Tyr Lys Cys Lys Val Ser Asn Lys Gly Leu Pro Ala
787                   425                 430                 435
788
789   Pro Ile Glu Lys Thr Ile Ser Lys Thr Lys Gly Gln Pro Arg Glu
790                   440                 445                 450
791
792   Pro Gln Val Tyr Thr Leu Pro Pro Ser Arg Glu Glu Met Thr Lys
793                   455                 460                 465
794
795   Asn Gln Val Ser Leu Thr Cys Leu Val Lys Gly Phe Tyr Pro Ser
796                   470                 475                 480
797
798   Asp Ile Ala Val Glu Trp Glu Ser Asn Gly Gln Pro Glu Asn Asn
799                   485                 490                 495
800
801   Tyr Lys Thr Thr Pro Pro Met Leu Asp Ser Asp Gly Ser Phe Phe
802                   500                 505                 510
803
804   Leu Tyr Ser Lys Leu Thr Val Asp Lys Ser Arg Trp Gln Gln Gly
805                   515                 520                 525
806
807   Asn Val Phe Ser Cys Ser Val Met His Glu Ala Leu His Asn His
```

```
808                 530                 535                 540
809
810  Tyr Thr Gln Lys Ser Leu Ser Leu Ser Pro Gly Lys
811                 545                 550                 555
812
```

only 552 are shown.

SEQUENCE VERIFICATION REPORT
PATENT APPLICATION *US/08/146,206*

DATE: 04/15/94
TIME: 12:13:37

INPUT SET: S2658.raw

Line	Error	Original Text
696	Entered (557) and Calc. Seq. Length (552) differ	(A) LENGTH: 557 amino acids

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER OF PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS
Washington, D.C. 20231

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED APPLICANT	ATTY. DOCKET NO./TITLE
08/146,206	11/17/93	CARTER	P 7090Ø1

03A1/0502

CAROLYN R. ADLER
GENENTECH, INC.
460 POINT SAN BRUNO BOULEVARD
SOUTH SAN FRANCISCO, CALIFORNIA 94080 0000

DATE MAILED: 05/02/94

NOTICE TO FILE MISSING PARTS OF APPLICATION FILING DATE GRANTED

An Application Number and Filing Date have been assigned to this application. However, the items indicated below are missing. The required items and fees identified below must be timely submitted **ALONG WITH THE PAYMENT OF A SURCHARGE** for items 1 and 3-6 only of $_____ for large entities or $_____ for small entities who have filed a verified statement claiming such status. The surcharge is set forth in 37 CFR 1.16(e).

If all required items on this form are filed within the period set below, the total amount owed by applicant as a ☐ large entity, ☐ small entity (verified statement filed), is $_____.

Applicant is given **ONE MONTH FROM THE DATE OF THIS LETTER, OR TWO MONTHS FROM THE FILING DATE** of this application, **WHICHEVER IS LATER,** within which to file all required items and pay any fees required above to avoid abandonment. Extensions of time may be obtained by filing a petition accompanied by the extension fee under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136(a).

1. ☐ The statutory basic filing fee is: ☐ missing ☐ insufficient. Applicant as a ☐ large entity ☐ small entity, must submit $_____ to complete the basic filing fee.

2. ☐ Additional claim fees of $_____ as a ☐ large entity, ☐ small entity, including any required multiple dependent claim fee, are required. Applicant must submit the additional claim fees or cancel the additional claims for which fees are due.

3. ☐ The oath or declaration:
   ☐ is missing.
   ☐ does not cover items omitted at time of execution.

   An oath or declaration in compliance with 37 CFR 1.63, identifying the application by the above Application Number and Filing Date is required.

4. ☐ The oath or declaration does not identify the application to which it applies. An oath or declaration in compliance with 37 CFR 1.63, identifying the application by the above Application Number and Filing Date, is required.

5. ☐ The signature to the oath or declaration is: ☐ missing; ☐ a reproduction; ☐ by a person other than the inventor or a person qualified under 37 CFR 1.42, 1.43, or 1.47. A properly signed oath or declaration in compliance with 37 CFR 1.63, identifying the application by the above Application Number and Filing Date, is required.

6. ☐ The signature of the following joint inventor(s) is missing from the oath or declaration:

   _____ An oath or declaration listing the names of all inventors and signed by the omitted inventor(s), identifying this application by the above Application Number and Filing Date, is required.

7. ☐ The application was filed in a language other than English. Applicant must file a verified English translation of the application and a fee of $_____ under 37 CFR 1.17(k), unless this fee has already been paid.

8. ☐ A $_____ processing fee is required for returned checks. (37 CFR 1.21(m)).

9. ☐ Your filing receipt was mailed in error because check was returned without payment.

10. ☑ The application does not comply with the Sequence Rules. See attached Notice to Comply with Sequence Rules 37 CFR 1.821-1.825.

11. ☐ Other.

Direct the response and any questions about this notice to C. Baines, Application Processing Division, Special Processing and Correspondence Branch (703) 308-1202.

A copy of this notice MUST be returned with the response.

FORM PTO-1533 (REV. 5-93) **OFFICE COPY**

Application No. 08/146,206

NOTICE TO COMPLY WITH REQUIREMENTS FOR PATENT APPLICATIONS CONTAINING NUCLEOTIDE SEQUENCE AND/OR AMINO ACID SEQUENCE DISCLOSURES

The nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence disclosure contained in this application does not comply with the requirements for such a disclosure as set forth in 37 CFR 1.821 - 1.825 for the following reason(s):

☐ 1. This application clearly fails to comply with the requirements of 37 CFR 1.821 - 1.825. Applicant's attention is directed to these regulations, published at 1114 OG 29, May 15, 1990 and at 55 FR 18230, May 1, 1990.

☐ 2. This application does not contain, as a separate part of the disclosure on paper copy, a "Sequence Listing" as required by 37 CFR 1.821(c).

☐ 3. A copy of the "Sequence Listing" in computer readable form has not been submitted as required by 37 CFR 1.821(e).

☑ 4. A copy of the "Sequence Listing" in computer readable form has been submitted. However, the content of the computer readable form does not comply with the requirements of 37 CFR 1.822 and/or 1.823, as indicated on the attached copy of the marked-up "Raw Sequence Listing."

☐ 5. The computer readable form that has been filed with this application has been found to be damaged and/or unreadable as indicated on the attached CRF Diskette Problem Report. A substitute computer readable form must be submitted as required by 37 CFR 1.825(d).

☐ 6. The paper copy of the "Sequence Listing" is not the same as the computer readable form of the "Sequence Listing" as required by 37 CFR 1.821(e).

☐ 7.

Other: _____

Applicant must provide:

☐ An initial or substitute computer readable form (CRF) copy of the "Sequence Listing"

☐ An initial or substitute paper copy of the "Sequence Listing", as well as an amendment directing its entry into the specification

☑ A statement that the content of the paper and computer readable copies are the same and, where applicable, include no new matter, as required by 37 CFR 1.821(e) or 1.821(f) or 1.821(g) or 1.825(b) or 1.825(d)

For questions regarding compliance with these requirements, please contact:

For Rules Interpretation, call (703) 308-1123
For CRF submission help, call (703) 308-4212
For PatentIn software help, call (703) 557-0400

Please return a copy of this notice with your response.

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER OF PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS
Washington, D.C. 20231

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED APPLICANT	ATTY. DOCKET NO./TITLE
08/146,206	11/17/93	CARTER	P 709P1

03A1/0502

CAROLYN R. ADLER
GENENTECH, INC.
460 POINT SAN BRUNO BOULEVARD
SOUTH SAN FRANCISCO, CALIFORNIA 94080 0000

DATE MAILED: 05/02/94

NOTICE TO FILE MISSING PARTS OF APPLICATION FILING DATE GRANTED

An Application Number and Filing Date have been assigned to this application. However, the items indicated below are missing. The required items and fees identified below must be timely submitted **ALONG WITH THE PAYMENT OF A SURCHARGE** for items 1 and 3-6 only of $_____ for large entities or $_____ for small entities who have filed a verified statement claiming such status. The surcharge is set forth in 37 CFR 1.16(e).

If all required items on this form are filed within the period set below, the total amount owed by applicant as a ☐ large entity, ☐ small entity (verified statement filed), is $_____.

Applicant is given **ONE MONTH FROM THE DATE OF THIS LETTER, OR TWO MONTHS FROM THE FILING DATE** of this application, **WHICHEVER IS LATER,** within which to file all required items and pay any fees required above to avoid abandonment. Extensions of time may be obtained by filing a petition accompanied by the extension fee under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136(a).

1. ☐ The statutory basic filing fee is: ☐ missing ☐ insufficient. Applicant as a ☐ large entity ☐ small entity, must submit $_____ to complete the basic filing fee.

2. ☐ Additional claim fees of $_____ as a ☐ large entity, ☐ small entity, including any required multiple dependent claim fee, are required. Applicant must submit the additional claim fees or cancel the additional claims for which fees are due.

3. ☐ The oath or declaration:
   ☐ is missing.
   ☐ does not cover items omitted at time of execution.

   An oath or declaration in compliance with 37 CFR 1.63, identifying the application by the above Application Number and Filing Date is required.

4. ☐ The oath or declaration does not identify the application to which it applies. An oath or declaration in compliance with 37 CFR 1.63, identifying the application by the above Application Number and Filing Date, is required.

5. ☐ The signature to the oath or declaration is: ☐ missing; ☐ a reproduction; ☐ by a person other than the inventor or a person qualified under 37 CFR 1.42, 1.43, or 1.47. A properly signed oath or declaration in compliance with 37 CFR 1.63, identifying the application by the above Application Number and Filing Date, is required.

6. ☐ The signature of the following joint inventor(s) is missing from the oath or declaration:

   _____ An oath or declaration listing the names of all inventors and signed by the omitted inventor(s), identifying this application by the above Application Number and Filing Date, is required.

7. ☐ The application was filed in a language other than English. Applicant must file a verified English translation of the application and a fee of $_____ under 37 CFR 1.17(k), unless this fee has already been paid.

8. ☐ A $_____ processing fee is required for returned checks. (37 CFR 1.21(m)).

9. ☐ Your filing receipt was mailed in error because check was returned without payment.

10. ☐ The application does not comply with the Sequence Rules. See attached Notice to Comply with Sequence Rules 37 CFR 1.821-1.825.

11. ☐ Other.

Direct the response and any questions about this notice to _____, Application Processing Division, Special Processing and Correspondence Branch (703) 308-1202.

A copy of this notice M[illegible]rned with the response.

FORM PTO-1533 (REV. 5-93) H RESPONSE

Application No. 08/146,286

NOTICE TO COMPLY WITH REQUIREMENTS FOR PATENT APPLICATIONS CONTAINING NUCLEOTIDE SEQUENCE AND/OR AMINO ACID SEQUENCE DISCLOSURES

The nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence disclosure contained in this application does not comply with the requirements for such a disclosure as set forth in 37 CFR 1.821 - 1.825 for the following reason(s):

☐ 1. This application clearly fails to comply with the requirements of 37 CFR 1.821 - 1.825. Applicant's attention is directed to these regulations, published at 1114 OG 29, May 15, 1990 and at 55 FR 18230, May 1, 1990.

☐ 2. This application does not contain, as a separate part of the disclosure on paper copy, a "Sequence Listing" as required by 37 CFR 1.821(c).

☐ 3. A copy of the "Sequence Listing" in computer readable form has not been submitted as required by 37 CFR 1.821(e).

☑ 4. A copy of the "Sequence Listing" in computer readable form has been submitted. However, the content of the computer readable form does not comply with the requirements of 37 CFR 1.822 and/or 1.823, as indicated on the attached copy of the marked-up "Raw Sequence Listing."

☐ 5. The computer readable form that has been filed with this application has been found to be damaged and/or unreadable as indicated on the attached CRF Diskette Problem Report. A substitute computer readable form must be submitted as required by 37 CFR 1.825(d).

☐ 6. The paper copy of the "Sequence Listing" is not the same as the computer readable form of the "Sequence Listing" as required by 37 CFR 1.821(e).

☐ 7.

Other: _____

Applicant must provide:

☐ An initial or substitute computer readable form (CRF) copy of the "Sequence Listing"

☐ An initial or substitute paper copy of the "Sequence Listing", as well as an amendment directing its entry into the specification

☑ A statement that the content of the paper and computer readable copies are the same and, where applicable, include no new matter, as required by 37 CFR 1.821(e) or 1.821(f) or 1.821(g) or 1.825(b) or 1.825(d)

For questions regarding compliance with these requirements, please contact:

For Rules Interpretation, call (703) 308-1123
For CRF submission help, call (703) 308-4212
For PatentIn software help, call (703) 557-0400

Please return a copy of this notice with your response.

PATENT DOCKET 709P1

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re Application of

PAUL J. CARTER et al.

Serial No. 08/146,206

Filed: 17 November 1993

For: METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES

Group Art Unit: Unknown

Examiner: Unassigned

CERTIFICATE OF MAILING
I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as first class mail in an envelope addressed to: Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, D.C. 20231 on

June 2, 1994
(Date of Deposit)

Elisa R. Hamby
Name of Depositing Party

Elisa R. Hamby
Signature of Depositing Party

6/2/94
Date of Signature

CERTIFICATE RE: SEQUENCE LISTING

BOX SEQUENCE
Honorable Commissioner of Patents
and Trademarks
Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

I hereby state that the Sequence Listing submitted with this application is submitted in paper copy and a computer-readable diskette, and that the content of the paper and computer readable copies are the same.

A copy of a document pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 10.9(b) is attached as proof of the authorization of the undersigned to prosecute the above-mentioned application. The original of this document is on file in the Office of Enrollment and Discipline.

Respectfully submitted,

GENENTECH, INC.

Date: 6/2/94

By: _____
Wendy M. Lee

460 Pt. San Bruno Blvd.
So. San Francisco, CA 94080-4990
Phone: (415) 225-1994
Fax: (415) 952-9881

18C

PATENT DOCKET 709P1

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re Application of

PAUL J. CARTER et al.

Serial No. 08/146,206

Filed: 17 November 1993

For: METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES

Group Art Unit: Unknown

Examiner: Unassigned

CERTIFICATE OF MAILING
I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as first class mail in an envelope addressed to: Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, D.C. 20231 on

June 2, 1994
(Date of Deposit)

Elisa R. Hamby
Name of Depositing Party

Elisa R. Hamby
Signature of Depositing Party

6/2/94
Date of Signature

AMENDMENT

BOX SEQUENCE
Honorable Commissioner of Patents
and Trademarks
Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

This is responsive to the Notice to File Missing Parts of Application - Filing Date Granted and Notice to Comply with Sequence Rules Pursuant to 37 CFR 1.821-1.825, mailed 2 May 1994. The due date for this response is 2 June 1994. This response is timely filed.

Please amend the application as follows:

IN THE SPECIFICATION

Please amend the specification by replacing the original Sequence Listing pages 77-94 with the attached corrected Sequence Listing as pages 77-94.

REMARKS

An error in the original Sequence Listing filed 11/17/93 was found in SEQ ID NO:23 in that there claimed to be 557 amino acids, and only 552 residues are shown. This error has been corrected and now corresponds to Figure 6A and the sequence entitled "pH52-8.0". Another error was found

in SEQ ID NO:19 which has also been corrected and now corresponds to Figure 5 (lower panel) and the sequence entitled "muxCD3".

The inventors submit that this application is now in compliance with the requirements of 37 CFR 1.821-1.825, and respectfully request further processing of this application.

A copy of a document pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 10.9(b) is attached as proof of the authorization of the undersigned to prosecute the above-mentioned application. The original of this document is on file in the Office of Enrollment and Discipline.

Respectfully submitted,
GENENTECH, INC.

Date: 6/2/94 By: _____
Wendy M. Lee

460 Pt. San Bruno Blvd.
So. San Francisco, CA 94080-4990
Phone: (415) 225-1994
Fax: (415) 952-9881

SEQUENCE LISTING

(1) GENERAL INFORMATION:

(i) APPLICANT: Carter, Paul J.
Presta, Leonard G.

(ii) TITLE OF INVENTION: Method for Making Humanized Antibodies

(iii) NUMBER OF SEQUENCES: 25

(iv) CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS:
(A) ADDRESSEE: Genentech, Inc.
(B) STREET: 460 Point San Bruno Blvd
(C) CITY: South San Francisco
(D) STATE: California
(E) COUNTRY: USA
(F) ZIP: 94080

(v) COMPUTER READABLE FORM:
(A) MEDIUM TYPE: 5.25 inch, 360 Kb floppy disk
(B) COMPUTER: IBM PC compatible
(C) OPERATING SYSTEM: PC-DOS/MS-DOS
(D) SOFTWARE: patin (Genentech)

(vi) CURRENT APPLICATION DATA:
(A) APPLICATION NUMBER: 08/146206
(B) FILING DATE: 17-NOV-1993
(C) CLASSIFICATION:

(vii) PRIOR APPLICATION DATA:
(A) APPLICATION NUMBER: 07/715272
(B) FILING DATE: 14-JUN-1991

(viii) ATTORNEY/AGENT INFORMATION:
(A) NAME: Hasak, Janet E.
(B) REGISTRATION NUMBER: 28,616
(C) REFERENCE/DOCKET NUMBER: 709P1

(ix) TELECOMMUNICATION INFORMATION:
(A) TELEPHONE: 415/225-1896
(B) TELEFAX: 415/952-9881
(C) TELEX: 910/371-7168

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:1:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 109 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:1:

Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val
1 5 10 15

Gly Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Arg Ala Ser Gln Asp Val Asn
20 25 30

Thr Ala Val Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys
35 40 45

Leu Leu Ile Tyr Ser Ala Ser Phe Leu Glu Ser Gly Val Pro Ser
50 55 60

Arg Phe Ser Gly Ser Arg Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Leu Thr Ile
65 70 75

Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln
80 85 90

His Tyr Thr Thr Pro Pro Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu
95 100 105

Ile Lys Arg Thr
109

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:2:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 120 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:2:

Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly
1 5 10 15

Gly Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Phe Asn Ile Lys
20 25 30

Asp Thr Tyr Ile His Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu
35 40 45

Glu Trp Val Ala Arg Ile Tyr Pro Thr Asn Gly Tyr Thr Arg Tyr
50 55 60

Ala Asp Ser Val Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Ala Asp Thr Ser
65 70 75

Lys Asn Thr Ala Tyr Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp
80 85 90

Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ser Arg Trp Gly Gly Asp Gly Phe Tyr
95 100 105

Ala Met Asp Val Trp Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser
110 115 120

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:3:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 109 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:3:

Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val
1 5 10 15

Gly Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Arg Ala Ser Gln Asp Val Ser
20 25 30

Ser Tyr Leu Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys
35 40 45

Leu Leu Ile Tyr Ala Ala Ser Ser Leu Glu Ser Gly Val Pro Ser
50 55 60

Arg Phe Ser Gly Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Leu Thr Ile
65 70 75

Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln
80 85 90

Tyr Asn Ser Leu Pro Tyr Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu
95 100 105

Ile Lys Arg Thr
109

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:4:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 120 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:4:

Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly
1 5 10 15

Gly Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Phe Thr Phe Ser
20 25 30

Asp Tyr Ala Met Ser Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu
35 40 45

Glu Trp Val Ala Val Ile Ser Glu Asn Gly Gly Tyr Thr Arg Tyr
50 55 60

Ala Asp Ser Val Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Ala Asp Thr Ser
65 70 75

Lys Asn Thr Ala Tyr Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp
80 85 90

Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ser Arg Trp Gly Gly Asp Gly Phe Tyr
95 100 105

Ala Met Asp Val Trp Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser
110 115 120

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:5:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 109 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:5:

Asp Ile Val Met Thr Gln Ser His Lys Phe Met Ser Thr Ser Val
1 5 10 15

Gly Asp Arg Val Ser Ile Thr Cys Lys Ala Ser Gln Asp Val Asn
20 25 30

Thr Ala Val Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly His Ser Pro Lys
35 40 45

Leu Leu Ile Tyr Ser Ala Ser Phe Arg Tyr Thr Gly Val Pro Asp
50 55 60

Arg Phe Thr Gly Asn Arg Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Phe Thr Ile
65 70 75

Ser Ser Val Gln Ala Glu Asp Leu Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln
80 85 90

His Tyr Thr Thr Pro Pro Thr Phe Gly Gly Gly Thr Lys Leu Glu
95 100 105

Ile Lys Arg Ala
109

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:6:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 120 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:6:

Glu Val Gln Leu Gln Gln Ser Gly Pro Glu Leu Val Lys Pro Gly
1 5 10 15

Ala Ser Leu Lys Leu Ser Cys Thr Ala Ser Gly Phe Asn Ile Lys
20 25 30

Asp Thr Tyr Ile His Trp Val Lys Gln Arg Pro Glu Gln Gly Leu
35 40 45

Glu Trp Ile Gly Arg Ile Tyr Pro Thr Asn Gly Tyr Thr Arg Tyr
50 55 60

Asp Pro Lys Phe Gln Asp Lys Ala Thr Ile Thr Ala Asp Thr Ser
65 70 75

Ser Asn Thr Ala Tyr Leu Gln Val Ser Arg Leu Thr Ser Glu Asp
80 85 90

Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ser Arg Trp Gly Gly Asp Gly Phe Tyr
95 100 105

Ala Met Asp Tyr Trp Gly Gln Gly Ala Ser Val Thr Val Ser Ser
110 115 120

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:7:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 27 bases
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:7:

TCCGATATCC AGCTGACCCA GTCTCCA 27

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:8:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 31 bases
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:8:

GTTTGATCTC CAGCTTGGTA CCHSCDCCGA A 31

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:9:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 22 bases
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:9:

AGGTSMARCT GCAGSAGTCW GG 22

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:10:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 34 bases
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:10:

TGAGGAGACG GTGACCGTGG TCCCTTGGCC CCAG 34

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:11:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 36 bases
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:11:

GTAGATAAAT CCTCTAACAC AGCCTATCTG CAAATG 36

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:12:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 36 bases
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:12:

GTAGATAAAT CCAAATCTAC AGCCTATCTG CAAATG 36

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:13:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 36 bases
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:13:

GTAGATAAAT CCTCTTCTAC AGCCTATCTG CAAATG 36

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:14:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 68 bases
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:14:

CTTATAAAGG TGTTTCCACC TATAACCAGA AATTCAAGGA TCGTTTCACG 50

ATATCCGTAG ATAAATCC 68

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:15:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 30 bases
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:15:

CTATACCTCC CGTCTGCATT CTGGAGTCCC 30

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:16:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 107 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:16:

Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Thr Thr Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Leu
1 5 10 15

Gly Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Ser Cys Arg Ala Ser Gln Asp Ile Arg
20 25 30

Asn Tyr Leu Asn Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Asp Gly Thr Val Lys
35 40 45

Leu Leu Ile Tyr Tyr Thr Ser Arg Leu His Ser Gly Val Pro Ser
50 55 60

Lys Phe Ser Gly Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Tyr Ser Leu Thr Ile
65 70 75

Ser Asn Leu Glu Gln Glu Asp Ile Ala Thr Tyr Phe Cys Gln Gln
80 85 90

Gly Asn Thr Leu Pro Trp Thr Phe Ala Gly Gly Thr Lys Leu Glu
95 100 105

Ile Lys
107

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:17:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 107 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:17:

```
Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val
 1               5                  10                  15

Gly Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Arg Ala Ser Gln Asp Ile Arg
            20                  25                  30

Asn Tyr Leu Asn Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys
            35                  40                  45

Leu Leu Ile Tyr Tyr Thr Ser Arg Leu Glu Ser Gly Val Pro Ser
            50                  55                  60

Arg Phe Ser Gly Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Tyr Thr Leu Thr Ile
            65                  70                  75

Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln
            80                  85                  90

Gly Asn Thr Leu Pro Trp Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu
            95                 100                 105

Ile Lys
107
```

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:18:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 107 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:18:

```
Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val
 1               5                  10                  15

Gly Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Arg Ala Ser Gln Ser Ile Ser
            20                  25                  30

Asn Tyr Leu Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys
            35                  40                  45
```

Leu Leu Ile Tyr Ala Ala Ser Ser Leu Glu Ser Gly Val Pro Ser
50 55 60

Arg Phe Ser Gly Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Leu Thr Ile
65 70 75

Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln
80 85 90

Tyr Asn Ser Leu Pro Trp Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu
95 100 105

Ile Lys
107

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:19:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 122 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:19:

Glu Val Gln Leu Gln Gln Ser Gly Pro Glu Leu Val Lys Pro Gly
1 5 10 15

Ala Ser Met Lys Ile Ser Cys Lys Ala Ser Gly Tyr Ser Phe Thr
20 25 30

Gly Tyr Thr Met Asn Trp Val Lys Gln Ser His Gly Lys Asn Leu
35 40 45

Glu Trp Met Gly Leu Ile Asn Pro Tyr Lys Gly Val Ser Thr Tyr
50 55 60

Asn Gln Lys Phe Lys Asp Lys Ala Thr Leu Thr Val Asp Lys Ser
65 70 75

Ser Ser Thr Ala Tyr Met Glu Leu Leu Ser Leu Thr Ser Glu Asp
80 85 90

Ser Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ala Arg Ser Gly Tyr Tyr Gly Asp Ser
95 100 105

Asp Trp Tyr Phe Asp Val Trp Gly Ala Gly Thr Thr Val Thr Val
110 115 120

Ser Ser
122

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:20:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 122 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:20:

```
Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly
 1               5                  10                  15

Gly Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Tyr Ser Phe Thr
            20                  25                  30

Gly Tyr Thr Met Asn Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu
        35                  40                  45

Glu Trp Val Ala Leu Ile Asn Pro Tyr Lys Gly Val Ser Thr Tyr
    50                  55                  60

Asn Gln Lys Phe Lys Asp Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Val Asp Lys Ser
65                  70                  75

Lys Asn Thr Ala Tyr Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp
            80                  85                  90

Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ala Arg Ser Gly Tyr Tyr Gly Asp Ser
        95                  100                 105

Asp Trp Tyr Phe Asp Val Trp Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val
    110                 115                 120

Ser Ser
122
```

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:21:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 122 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:21:

```
Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly
 1               5                  10                  15

Gly Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Phe Thr Phe Ser
            20                  25                  30
```

Ser Tyr Ala Met Ser Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu
35 40 45

Glu Trp Val Ser Val Ile Ser Gly Asp Gly Gly Ser Thr Tyr Tyr
50 55 60

Ala Asp Ser Val Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Arg Asp Asn Ser
65 70 75

Lys Asn Thr Leu Tyr Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp
80 85 90

Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ala Arg Gly Arg Val Gly Tyr Ser Leu
95 100 105

Ser Gly Leu Tyr Asp Tyr Trp Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val
110 115 120

Ser Ser
122

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:22:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 454 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:22:

Gln Val Gln Leu Gln Gln Ser Gly Pro Glu Leu Val Lys Pro Gly
1 5 10 15

Ala Ser Val Lys Ile Ser Cys Lys Thr Ser Gly Tyr Thr Phe Thr
20 25 30

Glu Tyr Thr Met His Trp Met Lys Gln Ser His Gly Lys Ser Leu
35 40 45

Glu Trp Ile Gly Gly Phe Asn Pro Lys Asn Gly Gly Ser Ser His
50 55 60

Asn Gln Arg Phe Met Asp Lys Ala Thr Leu Ala Val Asp Lys Ser
65 70 75

Thr Ser Thr Ala Tyr Met Glu Leu Arg Ser Leu Thr Ser Glu Asp
80 85 90

Ser Gly Ile Tyr Tyr Cys Ala Arg Trp Arg Gly Leu Asn Tyr Gly
95 100 105

```
Phe Asp Val Arg Tyr Phe Asp Val Trp Gly Ala Gly Thr Thr Val
                110                 115                 120

Thr Val Ser Ser Ala Ser Thr Lys Gly Pro Ser Val Phe Pro Leu
            125                 130                 135

Ala Pro Ser Ser Lys Ser Thr Ser Gly Gly Thr Ala Ala Leu Gly
        140                 145                 150

Cys Leu Val Lys Asp Tyr Phe Pro Glu Pro Val Thr Val Ser Trp
    155                 160                 165

Asn Ser Gly Ala Leu Thr Ser Gly Val His Thr Phe Pro Ala Val
170                 175                 180

Leu Gln Ser Ser Gly Leu Tyr Ser Leu Ser Ser Val Val Thr Val
            185                 190                 195

Pro Ser Ser Ser Leu Gly Thr Gln Thr Tyr Ile Cys Asn Val Asn
        200                 205                 210

His Lys Pro Ser Asn Thr Lys Val Asp Lys Lys Val Glu Pro Lys
    215                 220                 225

Ser Cys Asp Lys Thr His Thr Cys Pro Pro Cys Pro Ala Pro Glu
230                 235                 240

Leu Leu Gly Gly Pro Ser Val Phe Leu Phe Pro Pro Lys Pro Lys
                245                 250                 255

Asp Thr Leu Met Ile Ser Arg Thr Pro Glu Val Thr Cys Val Val
            260                 265                 270

Val Asp Val Ser His Glu Asp Pro Glu Val Lys Phe Asn Trp Tyr
        275                 280                 285

Val Asp Gly Val Glu Val His Asn Ala Lys Thr Lys Pro Arg Glu
    290                 295                 300

Glu Gln Tyr Asn Ser Thr Tyr Arg Val Val Ser Val Leu Thr Val
305                 310                 315

Leu His Gln Asp Trp Leu Asn Gly Lys Glu Tyr Lys Cys Lys Val
                320                 325                 330

Ser Asn Lys Ala Leu Pro Ala Pro Ile Glu Lys Thr Ile Ser Lys
            335                 340                 345

Ala Lys Gly Gln Pro Arg Glu Pro Gln Val Tyr Thr Leu Pro Pro
        350                 355                 360
```

Ser Arg Glu Glu Met Thr Lys Asn Gln Val Ser Leu Thr Cys Leu
365 370 375

Val Lys Gly Phe Tyr Pro Ser Asp Ile Ala Val Glu Trp Glu Ser
380 385 390

Asn Gly Gln Pro Glu Asn Asn Tyr Lys Thr Thr Pro Pro Val Leu
395 400 405

Asp Ser Asp Gly Ser Phe Phe Leu Tyr Ser Lys Leu Thr Val Asp
410 415 420

Lys Ser Arg Trp Gln Gln Gly Asn Val Phe Ser Cys Ser Val Met
425 430 435

His Glu Ala Leu His Asn His Tyr Thr Gln Lys Ser Leu Ser Leu
440 445 450

Ser Pro Gly Lys
454

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:23:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 469 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:23:

Met Gly Trp Ser Cys Ile Ile Leu Phe Leu Val Ala Thr Ala Thr
1 5 10 15

Gly Val His Ser Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu
20 25 30

Val Gln Pro Gly Gly Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Thr Ser Gly
35 40 45

Tyr Thr Phe Thr Glu Tyr Thr Met His Trp Met Arg Gln Ala Pro
50 55 60

Gly Lys Gly Leu Glu Trp Val Ala Gly Ile Asn Pro Lys Asn Gly
65 70 75

Gly Thr Ser His Asn Gln Arg Phe Met Asp Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser
80 85 90

Val Asp Lys Ser Thr Ser Thr Ala Tyr Met Gln Met Asn Ser Leu
95 100 105

```
Arg Ala Glu Asp Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ala Arg Trp Arg Gly
                110                 115                 120

Leu Asn Tyr Gly Phe Asp Val Arg Tyr Phe Asp Val Trp Gly Gln
            125                 130                 135

Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser Ala Ser Thr Lys Gly Pro Ser
        140                 145                 150

Val Phe Pro Leu Ala Pro Cys Ser Arg Ser Thr Ser Glu Ser Thr
    155                 160                 165

Ala Ala Leu Gly Cys Leu Val Lys Asp Tyr Phe Pro Glu Pro Val
170                 175                 180

Thr Val Ser Trp Asn Ser Gly Ala Leu Thr Ser Gly Val His Thr
185                 190                 195

Phe Pro Ala Val Leu Gln Ser Ser Gly Leu Tyr Ser Leu Ser Ser
200                 205                 210

Val Val Thr Val Thr Ser Ser Asn Phe Gly Thr Gln Thr Tyr Thr
215                 220                 225

Cys Asn Val Asp His Lys Pro Ser Asn Thr Lys Val Asp Lys Thr
230                 235                 240

Val Glu Arg Lys Cys Cys Val Glu Cys Pro Pro Cys Pro Ala Pro
245                 250                 255

Pro Val Ala Gly Pro Ser Val Phe Leu Phe Pro Pro Lys Pro Lys
260                 265                 270

Asp Thr Leu Met Ile Ser Arg Thr Pro Glu Val Thr Cys Val Val
275                 280                 285

Val Asp Val Ser His Glu Asp Pro Glu Val Gln Phe Asn Trp Tyr
290                 295                 300

Val Asp Gly Met Glu Val His Asn Ala Lys Thr Lys Pro Arg Glu
305                 310                 315

Glu Gln Phe Asn Ser Thr Phe Arg Val Val Ser Val Leu Thr Val
320                 325                 330

Val His Gln Asp Trp Leu Asn Gly Lys Glu Tyr Lys Cys Lys Val
335                 340                 345

Ser Asn Lys Gly Leu Pro Ala Pro Ile Glu Lys Thr Ile Ser Lys
350                 355                 360
```

Thr Lys Gly Gln Pro Arg Glu Pro Gln Val Tyr Thr Leu Pro Pro
365 370 375

Ser Arg Glu Glu Met Thr Lys Asn Gln Val Ser Leu Thr Cys Leu
380 385 390

Val Lys Gly Phe Tyr Pro Ser Asp Ile Ala Val Glu Trp Glu Ser
395 400 405

Asn Gly Gln Pro Glu Asn Asn Tyr Lys Thr Thr Pro Pro Met Leu
410 415 420

Asp Ser Asp Gly Ser Phe Phe Leu Tyr Ser Lys Leu Thr Val Asp
425 430 435

Lys Ser Arg Trp Gln Gln Gly Asn Val Phe Ser Cys Ser Val Met
440 445 450

His Glu Ala Leu His Asn His Tyr Thr Gln Lys Ser Leu Ser Leu
455 460 465

Ser Pro Gly Lys
469

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:24:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 214 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:24:

Asp Val Gln Met Thr Gln Thr Thr Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Leu
1 5 10 15

Gly Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Asn Cys Arg Ala Ser Gln Asp Ile Asn
20 25 30

Asn Tyr Leu Asn Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Asn Gly Thr Val Lys
35 40 45

Leu Leu Ile Tyr Tyr Thr Ser Thr Leu His Ser Gly Val Pro Ser
50 55 60

Arg Phe Ser Gly Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Tyr Ser Leu Thr Ile
65 70 75

Ser Asn Leu Asp Gln Glu Asp Ile Ala Thr Tyr Phe Cys Gln Gln
80 85 90

Gly Asn Thr Leu Pro Pro Thr Phe Gly Gly Gly Thr Lys Val Glu
95 100 105

Ile Lys Arg Thr Val Ala Ala Pro Ser Val Phe Ile Phe Pro Pro
110 115 120

Ser Asp Glu Gln Leu Lys Ser Gly Thr Ala Ser Val Val Cys Leu
125 130 135

Leu Asn Asn Phe Tyr Pro Arg Glu Ala Lys Val Gln Trp Lys Val
140 145 150

Asp Asn Ala Leu Gln Ser Gly Asn Ser Gln Glu Ser Val Thr Glu
155 160 165

Gln Asp Ser Lys Asp Ser Thr Tyr Ser Leu Ser Ser Thr Leu Thr
170 175 180

Leu Ser Lys Ala Asp Tyr Glu Lys His Lys Val Tyr Ala Cys Glu
185 190 195

Val Thr His Gln Gly Leu Ser Ser Pro Val Thr Lys Ser Phe Asn
200 205 210

Arg Gly Glu Cys
214

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:25:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 233 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:25:

Met Gly Trp Ser Cys Ile Ile Leu Phe Leu Val Ala Thr Ala Thr
1 5 10 15

Gly Val His Ser Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu
20 25 30

Ser Ala Ser Val Gly Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Arg Ala Ser
35 40 45

Gln Asp Ile Asn Asn Tyr Leu Asn Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly
50 55 60

Lys Ala Pro Lys Leu Leu Ile Tyr Tyr Thr Ser Thr Leu His Ser
65 70 75

```
Gly Val Pro Ser Arg Phe Ser Gly Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Tyr
                 80                  85                  90

Thr Leu Thr Ile Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr
                 95                 100                 105

Tyr Cys Gln Gln Gly Asn Thr Leu Pro Pro Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly
                110                 115                 120

Thr Lys Val Glu Ile Lys Arg Thr Val Ala Ala Pro Ser Val Phe
                125                 130                 135

Ile Phe Pro Pro Ser Asp Glu Gln Leu Lys Ser Gly Thr Ala Ser
                140                 145                 150

Val Val Cys Leu Leu Asn Asn Phe Tyr Pro Arg Glu Ala Lys Val
                155                 160                 165

Gln Trp Lys Val Asp Asn Ala Leu Gln Ser Gly Asn Ser Gln Glu
                170                 175                 180

Ser Val Thr Glu Gln Asp Ser Lys Asp Ser Thr Tyr Ser Leu Ser
                185                 190                 195

Ser Thr Leu Thr Leu Ser Lys Ala Asp Tyr Glu Lys His Lys Val
                200                 205                 210

Tyr Ala Cys Glu Val Thr His Gln Gly Leu Ser Ser Pro Val Thr
                215                 220                 225

Lys Ser Phe Asn Arg Gly Glu Cys
                230         233
```

RAW SEQUENCE LISTING
PATENT APPLICATION *US/08/146,206A*

DATE: 06/14/94
TIME: 17:05:48

INPUT SET: S8112.raw

#8

This Raw Listing contains the General Information Section and up to the first 5 pages.

ENTERED

SEQUENCE LISTING

(1) General Information:

(i) APPLICANT: Carter, Paul J.
Presta, Leonard G.

(ii) TITLE OF INVENTION: Method for Making Humanized Antibodies

(iii) NUMBER OF SEQUENCES: 25

(iv) CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS:
(A) ADDRESSEE: Genentech, Inc.
(B) STREET: 460 Point San Bruno Blvd
(C) CITY: South San Francisco
(D) STATE: California
(E) COUNTRY: USA
(F) ZIP: 94080

(v) COMPUTER READABLE FORM:
(A) MEDIUM TYPE: 5.25 inch, 360 Kb floppy disk
(B) COMPUTER: IBM PC compatible
(C) OPERATING SYSTEM: PC-DOS/MS-DOS
(D) SOFTWARE: patin (Genentech)

(vi) CURRENT APPLICATION DATA:
--> **(A) APPLICATION NUMBER: 08/146206**
(B) FILING DATE: 17-NOV-1993
(C) CLASSIFICATION:

(vii) PRIOR APPLICATION DATA:
(A) APPLICATION NUMBER: 07/715272
(B) FILING DATE: 14-JUN-1991

(viii) ATTORNEY/AGENT INFORMATION:
(A) NAME: Hasak, Janet E.
(B) REGISTRATION NUMBER: 28,616
(C) REFERENCE/DOCKET NUMBER: 709P1

(ix) TELECOMMUNICATION INFORMATION:
(A) TELEPHONE: 415/225-1896
(B) TELEFAX: 415/952-9881
(C) TELEX: 910/371-7168

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:1:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 109 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:1:

```
Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val
 1               5                  10                  15

Gly Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Arg Ala Ser Gln Asp Val Asn
            20                  25                  30

Thr Ala Val Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys
        35                  40                  45

Leu Leu Ile Tyr Ser Ala Ser Phe Leu Glu Ser Gly Val Pro Ser
    50                  55                  60

Arg Phe Ser Gly Ser Arg Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Leu Thr Ile
65                  70                  75

Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln
                80                  85                  90

His Tyr Thr Thr Pro Pro Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu
            95                 100                 105

Ile Lys Arg Thr
        109
```

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:2:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 120 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:2:

```
Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly
 1               5                  10                  15

Gly Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Phe Asn Ile Lys
            20                  25                  30

Asp Thr Tyr Ile His Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu
        35                  40                  45

Glu Trp Val Ala Arg Ile Tyr Pro Thr Asn Gly Tyr Thr Arg Tyr
    50                  55                  60

Ala Asp Ser Val Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Ala Asp Thr Ser
```

```
100                   65                  70                  75
101
102   Lys Asn Thr Ala Tyr Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp
103                   80                  85                  90
104
105   Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ser Arg Trp Gly Gly Asp Gly Phe Tyr
106                   95                 100                 105
107
108   Ala Met Asp Val Trp Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser
109                  110                 115                 120
110
111
112  (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:3:
113
114     (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
115         (A) LENGTH: 109 amino acids
116         (B) TYPE: amino acid
117         (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
118
119    (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:3:
120
121   Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val
122     1               5                  10                  15
123
124   Gly Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Arg Ala Ser Gln Asp Val Ser
125                   20                  25                  30
126
127   Ser Tyr Leu Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys
128                   35                  40                  45
129
130   Leu Leu Ile Tyr Ala Ala Ser Ser Leu Glu Ser Gly Val Pro Ser
131                   50                  55                  60
132
133   Arg Phe Ser Gly Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Leu Thr Ile
134                   65                  70                  75
135
136   Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln
137                   80                  85                  90
138
139   Tyr Asn Ser Leu Pro Tyr Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu
140                   95                 100                 105
141
142   Ile Lys Arg Thr
143               109
144
145  (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:4:
146
147     (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
148         (A) LENGTH: 120 amino acids
149         (B) TYPE: amino acid
150         (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
151
152    (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:4:
```

```
153
154   Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly
155     1               5                  10                  15
156
157   Gly Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Phe Thr Phe Ser
158                   20                  25                  30
159
160   Asp Tyr Ala Met Ser Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu
161                   35                  40                  45
162
163   Glu Trp Val Ala Val Ile Ser Glu Asn Gly Gly Tyr Thr Arg Tyr
164                   50                  55                  60
165
166   Ala Asp Ser Val Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Ala Asp Thr Ser
167                   65                  70                  75
168
169   Lys Asn Thr Ala Tyr Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp
170                   80                  85                  90
171
172   Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ser Arg Trp Gly Gly Asp Gly Phe Tyr
173                   95                 100                 105
174
175   Ala Met Asp Val Trp Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser
176                  110                 115                 120
177
178
179  (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:5:
180
181     (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
182         (A) LENGTH: 109 amino acids
183         (B) TYPE: amino acid
184         (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
185
186      (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:5:
187
188   Asp Ile Val Met Thr Gln Ser His Lys Phe Met Ser Thr Ser Val
189     1               5                  10                  15
190
191   Gly Asp Arg Val Ser Ile Thr Cys Lys Ala Ser Gln Asp Val Asn
192                   20                  25                  30
193
194   Thr Ala Val Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly His Ser Pro Lys
195                   35                  40                  45
196
197   Leu Leu Ile Tyr Ser Ala Ser Phe Arg Tyr Thr Gly Val Pro Asp
198                   50                  55                  60
199
200   Arg Phe Thr Gly Asn Arg Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Phe Thr Ile
201                   65                  70                  75
202
203   Ser Ser Val Gln Ala Glu Asp Leu Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln
204                   80                  85                  90
205
```

```
206   His Tyr Thr Thr Pro Pro Thr Phe Gly Gly Gly Thr Lys Leu Glu
207                   95                  100                 105
208
209   Ile Lys Arg Ala
210               109
211
212  (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:6:
213
214     (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
215         (A) LENGTH: 120 amino acids
216         (B) TYPE: amino acid
217         (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
218
219    (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:6:
220
221   Glu Val Gln Leu Gln Gln Ser Gly Pro Glu Leu Val Lys Pro Gly
222     1               5                  10                  15
223
224   Ala Ser Leu Lys Leu Ser Cys Thr Ala Ser Gly Phe Asn Ile Lys
225                   20                  25                  30
226
227   Asp Thr Tyr Ile His Trp Val Lys Gln Arg Pro Glu Gln Gly Leu
228                   35                  40                  45
229
230   Glu Trp Ile Gly Arg Ile Tyr Pro Thr Asn Gly Tyr Thr Arg Tyr
231                   50                  55                  60
232
233   Asp Pro Lys Phe Gln Asp Lys Ala Thr Ile Thr Ala Asp Thr Ser
234                   65                  70                  75
235
236   Ser Asn Thr Ala Tyr Leu Gln Val Ser Arg Leu Thr Ser Glu Asp
237                   80                  85                  90
238
239   Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ser Arg Trp Gly Gly Asp Gly Phe Tyr
240                   95                 100                 105
241
242   Ala Met Asp Tyr Trp Gly Gln Gly Ala Ser Val Thr Val Ser Ser
243                  110                 115                 120
244
245
246  (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:7:
247
248     (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
249         (A) LENGTH: 27 bases
250         (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
251         (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
252         (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
253
254    (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:7:
255
256
257   TCCGATATCC AGCTGACCCA GTCTCCA 27
258
```

SEQUENCE VERIFICATION REPORT
PATENT APPLICATION *US/08/146,206A*

DATE: 06/14/94
TIME: 17:06:53

INPUT SET: S8112.raw

Line	Error	Original Text
27	Wrong application Serial Number	(A) APPLICATION NUMBER: 08/146206

#9 A/N

PATENT DOCKET 709P1

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re Application of

PAUL J. CARTER et al.

Serial No. 08/146,206

Filed: 17 November 1993

For: METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES

Group Art Unit: 1804

Examiner: Unassigned

CERTIFICATE OF MAILING
I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as first class mail in an envelope addressed to: Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, D.C. 20231 on
June 24, 1994
(Date of Deposit)
Elisa R. Hamby
Name of Depositing Party
Signature of Depositing Party
6/24/94
Date of Signature

REQUEST FOR A CORRECTED FILING RECEIPT

Honorable Commissioner of Patents
and Trademarks
Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

Attached is a copy of the Official Filing Receipt received from the PTO in the above application for which issuance of a corrected filing receipt is respectfully requested. Please make the correction as follows: Under "CONTINUING DATA..." please add --WHICH IS A CIP OF 07/715,272 06/14/91--; and please correct the title to read --METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES--.

The correction is not due to any error by applicant and no fee is believed to be due. However, in the event that the Patent Office determines that fees are due in connection with the filing of this document, we hereby authorize the Commissioner to charge such fees to our Deposit Account No. 07-0630.

A copy of a document pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 10.9(b) is attached as proof of the authorization of the undersigned to prosecute the above-mentioned application. The original of this document is on file in the Office of Enrollment and Discipline.

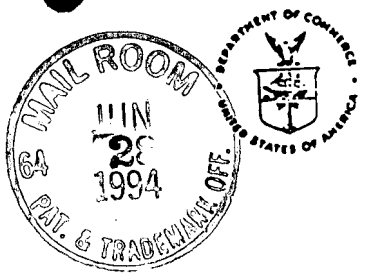
Respectfully submitted,
GENENTECH, INC.

Date: 6/24/94

By: _____
Wendy M. Lee

460 Pt. San Bruno Blvd.
So. San Francisco, CA 94080-4990
Phone: (415) 225-1994
Fax: (415) 952-9881

07/22/94



UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Patent and Trademark Office
ASSISTANT SECRETARY AND COMMISSIONER
OF PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS
Washington, D.C. 20231

LIMITED RECOGNITION UNDER 37 CFR § 10.9(b)

Wendy M. Lee is hereby given limited recognition under 37 CFR § 10.9(b) as an employee of Genentech, Inc. to prepare and prosecute patent applications and to represent patent applicants wherein Genentech, Inc. is the assignee of record of the entire interest. This limited recognition shall expire on the date appearing below, or when whichever of the following events first occurs prior to December 9, 1994: (i) Wendy M. Lee ceases to lawfully reside in the United States, (ii) Wendy M. Lee's employment with Genentech, Inc. ceases or is terminated, or (iii) Wendy M. Lee ceases to remain or reside in the United States on an H-1 visa.

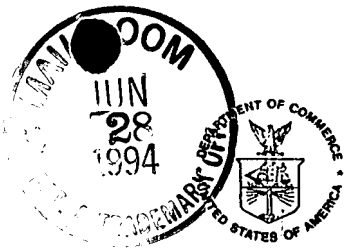
This document constitutes proof of such recognition. The original of this document is on file in the Office of Enrollment and Discipline of the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office.

Expires: December 9, 1994

Cameron Weiffenbach, Director
Office of Enrollment and Discipline

PTO-103X
(Rev. 7-93)

FILING RECEIPT



UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Patent and Trademark Office
ASSISTANT SECRETARY AND COMMISSIONER
OF PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS
Washington, D.C. 20231

EH

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING DATE	GRP ART UNIT	FIL FEE REC'D	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	DRWGS	TOT CL	IND CL
08/146,206	11/17/93	1804	$1,592.00	709P1	9	18	9

JANET E. HASAK
GENENTECH, INC.
460 POINT SAN BRUNO BOULEVARD
SOUTH SAN FRANCISCO, CA 94080-4990

RECEIVED
MAY 1 3 1994
GENENTECH, INC. LEGAL DEPT.

Receipt is acknowledged of this patent application. It will be considered in its order and you will be notified as to the results of the examination. Be sure to provide the U.S. APPLICATION NUMBER, FILING DATE, NAME OF APPLICANT, and TITLE OF INVENTION when inquiring about this application. Fees transmitted by check or draft are subject to collection. Please verify the accuracy of the data presented on this receipt. If an error is noted on this Filing Receipt, please write to the Application Processing Division's Customer Correction Branch within 10 days of receipt. Please provide a copy of the Filing Receipt with the changes noted thereon.

Applicant(s) PAUL J. CARTER, SAN FRANCISCO, CA; LEONARD G. PRESTA, SAN FRANCISCO, CA.

CONTINUING DATA AS CLAIMED BY APPLICANT-
THIS APPLN IS A 371 OF /US92/05126 06/15/92

FOREIGN/PCT APPLICATIONS-PCT PCT/US92/05126 06/15/92

TITLE
IMMUNOGLOBULIN VARIANTS

PRELIMINARY CLASS: 435

PCT WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
International Bureau

INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification 5 :
C12N 15/13, C12P 21/08
C07K 13/00, C12N 5/10
G06F 15/00

A1

(11) International Publication Number: WO 92/22653

(43) International Publication Date: 23 December 1992 (23.12.92)

(21) International Application Number: PCT/US92/05126

(22) International Filing Date: 15 June 1992 (15.06.92)

(30) Priority data:
715,272 14 June 1991 (14.06.91) US

(60) Parent Application or Grant
(63) Related by Continuation
US 715,272 (CIP)
Filed on 14 June 1991 (14.06.91)

(71) Applicant *(for all designated States except US)*: GENENTECH, INC. [US/US]; 460 Point San Bruno Boulevard, South San Francisco, CA 94080 (US).

(72) Inventors; and
(75) Inventors/Applicants *(for US only)* : CARTER, Paul, J. [GB/US]; 2074 18th Avenue, San Francisco, CA 94116 (US). PRESTA, Leonard, G. [US/US]; 1900 Gough Street, #206, San Francisco, CA 94109 (US).

(74) Agents: ADLER, Carolyn, R. et al.; Genentech, Inc., 460 Point San Bruno Boulevard, South San Francisco, CA 94080 (US).

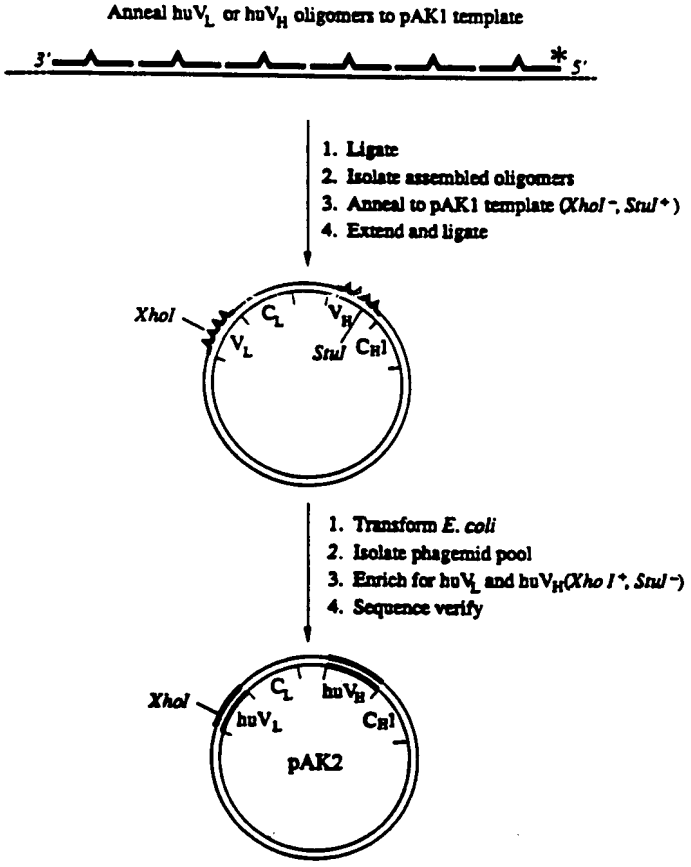
(81) Designated States: AT (European patent), AU, BE (European patent), CA, CH (European patent), DE (European patent), DK (European patent), ES (European patent), FR (European patent), GB (European patent), GR (European patent), IT (European patent), JP, LU (European patent), MC (European patent), NL (European patent), SE (European patent), US.

Published
With international search report.
Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.

(54) Title: METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES

(57) Abstract

Variant immunoglobulins, particularly humanized antibody polypeptides are provided, along with methods for their preparation and use. Consensus immunoglobulin sequences and structural models are also provided.



08/146,206

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER OF PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS
Washington, D.C. 20231

SERIAL NUMBER	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED APPLICANT	ATTORNEY DOCKETT NO.

EXAMINER	
ART UNIT	PAPER NUMBER
	53

DATE MAILED: 8/15/94

EXAMINER INTERVIEW SUMMARY RECORD

All participants (applicant, applicant's representative, PTO personnel):

(1) Julie Burke (PTO) (3) Wendy Lee

(2) Lila Feisee (PTO) (4)

Date of interview 23 Aug 94

Type: ☐ Telephonic ☒ Personal (copy is given to ☐ applicant ☒ applicant's representative).

Exhibit shown or demonstration conducted: ☐ Yes ☐ No. If yes, brief description: None

Agreement ☐ was reached with respect to some or all of the claims in question. ☒ was not reached.

Claims discussed: All pending

Identification of prior art discussed: Reichmann

Description of the general nature of what was agreed to if an agreement was reached, or any other comments: Applicants intend to file TD for claim 111. Applicants intend to add an upper limit to affinity in claim 113 + 128.

(A fuller description, if necessary, and a copy of the amendments, if available, which the examiner agreed would render the claims allowable must be attached. Also, where no copy of the amendments which would render the claims allowable is available, a summary thereof must be attached.)

☐ 1. It is not necessary for applicant to provide a separate record of the substance of the interview.

Unless the paragraph below has been checked to indicate to the contrary, A FORMAL WRITTEN RESPONSE TO THE LAST OFFICE ACTION IS NOT WAIVED AND MUST INCLUDE THE SUBSTANCE OF THE INTERVIEW (e.g., items 1-7 on the reverse side of this form). If a response to the last Office action has already been filed, then applicant is given one month from this interview date to provide a statement of the substance of the interview.

☐ 2. Since the examiner's interview summary above (including any attachments) reflects a complete response to each of the objections, rejections and requirements that may be present in the last Office action, and since the claims are now allowable, this completed form is considered to fulfill the response requirements of the last Office action. Applicant is not relieved from providing a separate record of the substance of the interview unless box 1 above is also checked.

Julie C Burke
Examiner's Signature

PTOL-413 (REV. 2 -93)

ORIGINAL FOR INSERTION IN RIGHT HAND FLAP OF FILE WRAPPER

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Patent and Trademark Office

Address : COMMISSIONER OF PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS
Washington, D.C. 20231

SERIAL NUMBER	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO
08/146,206	11/17/93	CARTER	P 709P1

EXAMINER	
ADAMS,D	

ART UNIT	PAPER NUMBER
1806	10

18M2/0826

JANET E. HASAK
GENENTECH, INC.
460 POINT SAN BRUNO BOULEVARD
SOUTH SAN FRANCISCO, CA 94080-4990

DATE MAILED: 08/26/94

This is a communication from the examiner in charge of your application.
COMMISSIONER OF PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS

☐ This application has been examined ☐ Responsive to communication filed on _____ ☐ This action is made final.

A shortened statutory period for response to this action is set to expire Ø month(s), 30 days from the date of this letter.
Failure to respond within the period for response will cause the application to become abandoned. 35 U.S.C. 133

Part I THE FOLLOWING ATTACHMENT(S) ARE PART OF THIS ACTION:

1. ☐ Notice of References Cited by Examiner, PTO-892.
2. ☐ Notice re Patent Drawing, PTO-948.
3. ☐ Notice of Art Cited by Applicant, PTO-1449.
4. ☐ Notice of Informal Patent Application, Form PTO-152.
5. ☐ Information on How to Effect Drawing Changes, PTO-1474.
6. ☐ _____

Part II SUMMARY OF ACTION

1. ☒ Claims 1-18 are pending in the application.

   Of the above, claims _____ are withdrawn from consideration.

2. ☐ Claims _____ have been cancelled.

3. ☐ Claims _____ are allowed.

4. ☐ Claims _____ are rejected.

5. ☐ Claims _____ are objected to.

6. ☒ Claims 1-18 are subject to restriction or election requirement.

7. ☐ This application has been filed with informal drawings under 37 C.F.R. 1.85 which are acceptable for examination purposes.

8. ☐ Formal drawings are required in response to this Office action.

9. ☐ The corrected or substitute drawings have been received on _____. Under 37 C.F.R. 1.84 these drawings are ☐ acceptable. ☐ not acceptable (see explanation or Notice re Patent Drawing, PTO-948).

10. ☐ The proposed additional or substitute sheet(s) of drawings, filed on _____ has (have) been ☐ approved by the examiner. ☐ disapproved by the examiner (see explanation).

11. ☐ The proposed drawing correction, filed on _____, has been ☐ approved. ☐ disapproved (see explanation).

12. ☐ Acknowledgment is made of the claim for priority under U.S.C. 119. The certified copy has ☐ been received ☐ not been received ☐ been filed in parent application, serial no. _____; filed on _____

13. ☐ Since this application appears to be in condition for allowance except for formal matters, prosecution as to the merits is closed in accordance with the practice under Ex parte Quayle, 1935 C.D. 11; 453 O.G. 213.

14. ☐ Other

EXAMINER'S ACTION

PTOL-326 (Rev. 9-89)

15. Restriction to one of the following inventions is required under 35 U.S.C. § 121:

I. Claims 1-12, 15 and 19, drawn to a method of making a humanized antibody, classified in Class 435, subclasses 69.6, 69.7, 70.21, 91, 172.2, 240.1, 240.27, 252.3, 320.1 and Class 536, subclass 23.53

II. Claim 13, drawn to a polypeptide, classified in Class 530, subclass 325.

III. Claim 14, drawn to a polypeptide, classified in Class 530, subclass 325.

IV. Claim 16, drawn to a computer, classified in Class 364, subclass 413.

V. Claim 17, drawn to a computer representation, classified in Class 36, subclass 223.3, 223.4, 224.1, 224.91, 225.9 and 226.1

VI. Claim 18, drawn to a method of storing a computer representation, classified in Class 369, subclass 13+

16. The inventions are distinct, each from the other because of the following reasons:

17. The inventions of Groups I-III are not related. The method of making a humanized antibody of Group I is distinct from the polypeptides of either Groups II or III. The polypeptides are not humanized antibodies. Thus the method of Group I is not expected to produce the polypeptides of Groups II or III. The Groups therefore have different issues regarding patentability and enablement and represent patentably distinct subject matter.

18. The inventions of Group I and Group VI are distinct methods. They differ with respect to ingredients and method steps. They have different issues regarding patentability and enablement and represent patentably distinct subject matter.

19. The products of Groups II-V are distinct and unrelated. The peptides of Groups II and III differ chemically and physically from a computer and computer representation. Additionally, the peptides have different sequences and thus differed structures and pharmacokinetic properties. The Groups therefore have different issues regarding patentability and enablement and represent patentably distinct subject matter.

20. The method of Group I is distinct from the products of Groups [IV and V]. The method of Group I can in no manner produce a computer or computer representation as claimed in Groups IV and V. The Groups therefore have different issues regarding patentability and enablement and represent patentably distinct subject matter.

21. The products of Groups II and III can not be produced by the method of Group VI. They therefore have different issues regarding patentability and enablement and represent patentably distinct subject matter.

22. The computer of Group IV is distinct from both a method of storing a computer representation of Group VI and a computer representation Group V. The program required for (1) storing or (2) providing a representation (i.e. word processing text) are distinct components from the architecture of a computer system. Thus the Groups are separate and patentably distinct from each other. They have different issues regarding patentability and enablement.

23. The computer representation of Group V is distinct from a method of storing a computer representation. The logic required for these two applications are distinct and unrelated. The Groups have different issues regarding patentability and enablement and represent patentably distinct subject matter.

24. Because these inventions are distinct for the reasons given above and have acquired a separate status in the art shown by their different classification, in addition to their recognized divergent subject matter, they represent an undue burden on the examiner and restriction for examination purposes as indicated is proper.

25. Applicant is advised that the response to this requirement to be complete must include an election of the invention to be examined even though the requirement be traversed.

26. Applicant is reminded that upon the cancellation of claims to a non-elected invention, the inventorship must be amended in compliance with 37 C.F.R. § 1.48(b) if one or more of the currently named inventors is no longer an inventor of at least one claim remaining in the application. Any amendment of inventorship must be accompanied by a diligently-filed petition under 37 C.F.R. § 1.48(b) and by the fee required under 37 C.F.R. § 1.17(h).

27. A telephone call was made to Ms. Hasak on August 24, 1994 to request an oral election to the above restriction requirement, but did not result in an election being made.

28. Papers related to this application may be submitted to Group 180 by facsimile transmission. Papers should be faxed to Group 180 via the PTO Fax Center located in Crystal Mall 1. The faxing of such papers must conform with the notice published in the Official Gazette, 1096 OG 30 (November 15, 1989). The CM1 Fax Center telephone number is (703) 308-4227.

29. Any inquiry concerning this communication or earlier communications from the examiner should be directed to Donald E. Adams whose telephone number is (703) 308-0570. The examiner can normally be reached Monday through Thursday from 7:30 am to 6:00 pm. A message may be left on the examiners voice mail service. If attempts to reach the examiner by telephone are unsuccessful, the examiner's supervisor, Mr. David Lacey can be reached on (703) 308-3535. The fax phone number for Group 180 is (703) 305-3014 or (703) 308-4227. Any inquiry of a general nature or relating to the status of this application should be directed to the Group 180 receptionist whose telephone number is (703) 308-0196.

August 25, 1994

Donald E. Adams, Ph.D.
Patent Examiner
Group 1800

PATENT DOCKET 709P1

#11

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re Application of

Paul J. Carter et al.

Serial No. 08/146,206

Filed: 17 November 1993

For: METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES

Group Art Unit: 1806

Examiner: D. Adams

CERTIFICATE OF MAILING

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as first class mail in an envelope addressed to: Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, D.C. 20231 on

September 22, 1994
(Date of Deposit)

Elisa R. Hamby
Name of Depositing Party

Elisa R. Hamby
Signature of Depositing Party

9/22/94
Date of Signature

TRANSMITTAL LETTER

Honorable Commissioner of Patents
and Trademarks
Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

Transmitted herewith is a Response to Restriction Requirement in the above-identified application.

The fee has been calculated as shown below.

	Claims Remaining After Amendment		Highest No. Previously Paid For	Present Extra	Rate	Additional Fee(s)
Total	20	Minus	23	= 0	x 22 =	$ 0
Indep.	7	Minus	10	= 0	x 74 =	$ 0
___ First Presentation of Multiple Dependent Claim					+ 230 =	$ 0
					TOTAL	**$ 0**

__X__ No additional fee is required.

____ The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge Deposit Account No. 07-0630 in the amount of $. **A duplicate copy of this transmittal is enclosed.**

____ Petition for Extension of Time is enclosed.

The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge any additional fees required under 37 CFR 1.16 and 1.17, or credit overpayment to Deposit Account No. 07-0630. **A duplicate copy of this sheet is enclosed.**

A copy of a document pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 10.9(b) is attached as proof of the authorization of the undersigned to prosecute the above-mentioned application. The original of this document is on file in the Office of Enrollment and Discipline.

Respectfully submitted,
GENENTECH, INC.

Date: September 22, 1994

By: _____
Wendy M. Lee

460 Pt. San Bruno Blvd.
So. San Francisco, CA 94080-4990
Phone: (415) 225-1994
Fax: (415) 952-9881

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Patent and Trademark Office
ASSISTANT SECRETARY AND COMMISSIONER
OF PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS
Washington, D.C. 20231

LIMITED RECOGNITION UNDER 37 CFR § 10.9(b)

Wendy M. Lee is hereby given limited recognition under 37 CFR § 10.9(b) as an employee of Genentech, Inc. to prepare and prosecute patent applications and to represent patent applicants wherein Genentech, Inc. is the assignee of record of the entire interest. This limited recognition shall expire on the date appearing below, or when whichever of the following events first occurs prior to December 9, 1994: (i) Wendy M. Lee ceases to lawfully reside in the United States, (ii) Wendy M. Lee's employment with Genentech, Inc. ceases or is terminated, or (iii) Wendy M. Lee ceases to remain or reside in the United States on an H-1 visa.

This document constitutes proof of such recognition. The original of this document is on file in the Office of Enrollment and Discipline of the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office.

Expires: December 9, 1994

Cameron Weiffenbach, Director
Office of Enrollment and Discipline

PATENT DOCKET 709P1

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re Application of

Paul J. Carter et al.

Serial No. 08/146,206

Filed: 17 November 1993

For: METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES

Group Art Unit: 1806

Examiner: D. Adams

CERTIFICATE OF MAILING

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as first class mail in an envelope addressed to: Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, D.C. 20231 on

September 22, 1994
(Date of Deposit)

Elisa R. Hamby
Name of Depositing Party

Elisa R. Hamby
Signature of Depositing Party

9/22/94
Date of Signature

RESPONSE TO RESTRICTION REQUIREMENT

Honorable Commissioner of Patents
and Trademarks
Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

This is responsive to the restriction requirement mailed 8/26/94. The period for response has been set for 30 days making this response due on or before 9/25/94. This response is timely filed. Please amend the application as follows:

IN THE CLAIMS:

Please cancel claims 16-18 without prejudice.

REMARKS

The Examiner required restriction to one of the following inventions under 35 USC §121:

I. Claims 1-12 and 15, drawn to a method of making a humanized antibody.

II. Claim 13 drawn to a polypeptide.

III. Claim 14 drawn to a polypeptide.

IV. Claim 16 drawn to a computer.

V. Claim 17 drawn to a computer representation.

VI. Claim 18 drawn to a method of storing a computer representation.

The Examiner urges that the inventions of Groups I-III are not related insofar as the polypeptides of either Groups II or III are "not humanized antibodies" and are therefore distinct from the method of making a humanized antibody recited in claim 1. The Examiner has also taken the position that the method of Group I is not expected to produce the polypeptides of Groups II or III.

Applicants hereby elect Group I, with traverse. The restriction requirement is submitted to be improper as regards the separate treatment of Groups I, II, and III. The claims in the remaining Groups IV, V, and VI have been canceled from this application, without prejudice to file a continuing application directed thereto.

It is submitted that the inventions of Groups I, II, and III as hereinabove defined are not distinct. These inventions are all respectively related as method of making a humanized antibody (Group I) and the humanized antibody made using the method of claim 1. Applicants submit that the assumption made that the polypeptides of claims 13 and 14 are not humanized antibodies is clearly in error. In particular, claims 13 and 14 encompass the light chain and heavy chain variable domain, respectively, of humanized MAb4D5 made using the method of claim 1 (see page 7, lines 13-21 and Example 1 which describes humanization of muMAb4D5). Surely, the Examiner will agree that the claim encompassing the light chain variable domain of the humanized MAb4D5 (claim 13) and the claim to the heavy chain variable domain of this humanized antibody (claim 14) should be examined together, since both a heavy chain and a light chain are required to form the antibody variable domain. Hence, the separate treatment of Groups II and III is clearly erroneous. Furthermore, since the humanized antibody variable domains of claims 13 and 14 are made using the humanization technique of claim 1, these claims should be examined together.

With respect to the search required to determine the patentability of the inventions defined by the claims of Groups I, II, and III, applicants represent that it is impossible to conduct an exhaustive search for a method of making a humanized antibody without searching for humanized antibodies made using the method. Similarly, the search for the claimed humanized antibody is bound to reveal information concerning the technique for humanizing it. In the same token, a search of the amino acid sequence encoding the humanized heavy chain variable domain of the antibody would lead to the discovery of information concerning the humanized light chain variable domain. Accordingly, performing the entire search covering the method and products made by the method is less burdensome on the Examiner than the separate search, which necessarily involves duplication of searching efforts.

In view of the foregoing arguments, the Examiner is requested to reconsider and withdraw the restriction requirement.

A copy of a document pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 10.9(b) is attached as proof of the authorization of the undersigned to prosecute the above-mentioned application. The original of this document is on file in the Office of Enrollment and Discipline.

Respectfully submitted,

GENENTECH, INC.

Date: Sept 22, 1994

By: _____
Wendy M. Lee

460 Pt. San Bruno Blvd.
So. San Francisco, CA 94080-4990
Phone: (415) 225-1994
Fax: (415) 952-9881

Gly Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Phe Thr Phe Ser
20 25 30

Ser Tyr Ala Met Ser Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu
35 40 45

Glu Trp Val Ser Val Ile Ser Gly Asp Gly Gly Ser Thr Tyr Tyr
50 55 60

Ala Asp Ser Val Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Arg Asp Asn Ser
65 70 75

Lys Asn Thr Leu Tyr Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp
80 85 90

Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ala Arg Gly Arg Val Gly Tyr Ser Leu
95 100 105

Ser Gly Leu Tyr Asp Tyr Trp Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val
110 115 120

Ser Ser
122

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:22:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 454 amino acids
(B) TYPE: Amino Acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: Linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:22:

Gln Val Gln Leu Gln Gln Ser Gly Pro Glu Leu Val Lys Pro Gly
1 5 10 15

Ala Ser Val Lys Ile Ser Cys Lys Thr Ser Gly Tyr Thr Phe Thr
20 25 30

Glu Tyr Thr Met His Trp Met Lys Gln Ser His Gly Lys Ser Leu
35 40 45

Glu Trp Ile Gly Gly Phe Asn Pro Lys Asn Gly Gly Ser Ser His
50 55 60

Asn Gln Arg Phe Met Asp Lys Ala Thr Leu Ala Val Asp Lys Ser
65 70 75

Thr Ser Thr Ala Tyr Met Glu Leu Arg Ser Leu Thr Ser Glu Asp
80 85 90

Ser Gly Ile Tyr Tyr Cys Ala Arg Trp Arg Gly Leu Asn Tyr Gly
95 100 105

Phe Asp Val Arg Tyr Phe Asp Val Trp Gly Ala Gly Thr Thr Val
110 115 120

Thr Val Ser Ser Ala Ser Thr Lys Gly Pro Ser Val Phe Pro Leu
125 130 135

Ala Pro Ser Ser Lys Ser Thr Ser Gly Gly Thr Ala Ala Leu Gly
140 145 150

Cys Leu Val Lys Asp Tyr Phe Pro Glu Pro Val Thr Val Ser Trp
155 160 165

Asn Ser Gly Ala Leu Thr Ser Gly Val His Thr Phe Pro Ala Val
170 175 180

Leu Gln Ser Ser Gly Leu Tyr Ser Leu Ser Ser Val Val Thr Val
185 190 195

Pro Ser Ser Ser Leu Gly Thr Gln Thr Tyr Ile Cys Asn Val Asn
200 205 210

His Lys Pro Ser Asn Thr Lys Val Asp Lys Lys Val Glu Pro Lys
215 220 225

Ser Cys Asp Lys Thr His Thr Cys Pro Pro Cys Pro Ala Pro Glu
230 235 240

Leu Leu Gly Gly Pro Ser Val Phe Leu Phe Pro Pro Lys Pro Lys
245 250 255

Asp Thr Leu Met Ile Ser Arg Thr Pro Glu Val Thr Cys Val Val
260 265 270

Val Asp Val Ser His Glu Asp Pro Glu Val Lys Phe Asn Trp Tyr
275 280 285

Val Asp Gly Val Glu Val His Asn Ala Lys Thr Lys Pro Arg Glu
290 295 300

F1 Glu Gln Tyr Asn Ser Thr Tyr Arg Val Val Ser Val Leu Thr Val
305 310 315

Leu His Gln Asp Trp Leu Asn Gly Lys Glu Tyr Lys Cys Lys Val
320 325 330

Ser Asn Lys Ala Leu Pro Ala Pro Ile Glu Lys Thr Ile Ser Lys
335 340 345

Ala Lys Gly Gln Pro Arg Glu Pro Gln Val Tyr Thr Leu Pro Pro
350 355 360

Ser Arg Glu Glu Met Thr Lys Asn Gln Val Ser Leu Thr Cys Leu
365 370 375

Val Lys Gly Phe Tyr Pro Ser Asp Ile Ala Val Glu Trp Glu Ser
380 385 390

Asn Gly Gln Pro Glu Asn Asn Tyr Lys Thr Thr Pro Pro Val Leu
395 400 405

Asp Ser Asp Gly Ser Phe Phe Leu Tyr Ser Lys Leu Thr Val Asp
410 415 420

Lys Ser Arg Trp Gln Gln Gly Asn Val Phe Ser Cys Ser Val Met
425 430 435

His Glu Ala Leu His Asn His Tyr Thr Gln Lys Ser Leu Ser Leu
440 445 450

Ser Pro Gly Lys
454

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:23:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 469 amino acids
(B) TYPE: Amino Acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: Linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:23:

Met Gly Trp Ser Cys Ile Ile Leu Phe Leu Val Ala Thr Ala Thr
1 5 10 15

Gly Val His Ser Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu
20 25 30

Val Gln Pro Gly Gly Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Thr Ser Gly
35 40 45

Tyr Thr Phe Thr Glu Tyr Thr Met His Trp Met Arg Gln Ala Pro
50 55 60

Gly Lys Gly Leu Glu Trp Val Ala Gly Ile Asn Pro Lys Asn Gly
65 70 75

Gly Thr Ser His Asn Gln Arg Phe Met Asp Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser
80 85 90

Val Asp Lys Ser Thr Ser Thr Ala Tyr Met Gln Met Asn Ser Leu
95 100 105

Arg Ala Glu Asp Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ala Arg Trp Arg Gly
110 115 120

Leu Asn Tyr Gly Phe Asp Val Arg Tyr Phe Asp Val Trp Gly Gln
125 130 135

Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser Ala Ser Thr Lys Gly Pro Ser
140 145 150

Val Phe Pro Leu Ala Pro Cys Ser Arg Ser Thr Ser Glu Ser Thr
155 160 165

Ala Ala Leu Gly Cys Leu Val Lys Asp Tyr Phe Pro Glu Pro Val
170 175 180

Thr Val Ser Trp Asn Ser Gly Ala Leu Thr Ser Gly Val His Thr
185 190 195

Phe Pro Ala Val Leu Gln Ser Ser Gly Leu Tyr Ser Leu Ser Ser
200 205 210

Val Val Thr Val Thr Ser Ser Asn Phe Gly Thr Gln Thr Tyr Thr
215 220 225

Cys Asn Val Asp His Lys Pro Ser Asn Thr Lys Val Asp Lys Thr
230 235 240

Val Glu Arg Lys Cys Cys Val Glu Cys Pro Pro Cys Pro Ala Pro
245 250 255

Pro Val Ala Gly Pro Ser Val Phe Leu Phe Pro Pro Lys Pro Lys
260 265 270

Asp Thr Leu Met Ile Ser Arg Thr Pro Glu Val Thr Cys Val Val
275 280 285

Val Asp Val Ser His Glu Asp Pro Glu Val Gln Phe Asn Trp Tyr
290 295 300

Val Asp Gly Met Glu Val His Asn Ala Lys Thr Lys Pro Arg Glu
305 310 315

Glu Gln Phe Asn Ser Thr Phe Arg Val Val Ser Val Leu Thr Val
320 325 330

Val His Gln Asp Trp Leu Asn Gly Lys Glu Tyr Lys Cys Lys Val
335 340 345

Ser Asn Lys Gly Leu Pro Ala Pro Ile Glu Lys Thr Ile Ser Lys
350 355 360

Thr Lys Gly Gln Pro Arg Glu Pro Gln Val Tyr Thr Leu Pro Pro
365 370 375

Ser Arg Glu Glu Met Thr Lys Asn Gln Val Ser Leu Thr Cys Leu
380 385 390

Val Lys Gly Phe Tyr Pro Ser Asp Ile Ala Val Glu Trp Glu Ser
395 400 405

Asn Gly Gln Pro Glu Asn Asn Tyr Lys Thr Thr Pro Pro Met Leu
410 415 420

Asp Ser Asp Gly Ser Phe Phe Leu Tyr Ser Lys Leu Thr Val Asp
425 430 435

Lys Ser Arg Trp Gln Gln Gly Asn Val Phe Ser Cys Ser Val Met
440 445 450

His Glu Ala Leu His Asn His Tyr Thr Gln Lys Ser Leu Ser Leu
455 460 465

Ser Pro Gly Lys
469

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:24:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 214 amino acids
(B) TYPE: Amino Acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: Linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:24:

```
Asp Val Gln Met Thr Gln Thr Thr Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Leu
 1               5                  10                  15

Gly Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Asn Cys Arg Ala Ser Gln Asp Ile Asn
            20                  25                  30

Asn Tyr Leu Asn Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Asn Gly Thr Val Lys
            35                  40                  45

Leu Leu Ile Tyr Tyr Thr Ser Thr Leu His Ser Gly Val Pro Ser
            50                  55                  60

Arg Phe Ser Gly Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Tyr Ser Leu Thr Ile
            65                  70                  75

Ser Asn Leu Asp Gln Glu Asp Ile Ala Thr Tyr Phe Cys Gln Gln
            80                  85                  90

Gly Asn Thr Leu Pro Pro Thr Phe Gly Gly Gly Thr Lys Val Glu
            95                  100                 105

Ile Lys Arg Thr Val Ala Ala Pro Ser Val Phe Ile Phe Pro Pro
            110                 115                 120

Ser Asp Glu Gln Leu Lys Ser Gly Thr Ala Ser Val Val Cys Leu
            125                 130                 135

Leu Asn Asn Phe Tyr Pro Arg Glu Ala Lys Val Gln Trp Lys Val
            140                 145                 150

Asp Asn Ala Leu Gln Ser Gly Asn Ser Gln Glu Ser Val Thr Glu
            155                 160                 165

Gln Asp Ser Lys Asp Ser Thr Tyr Ser Leu Ser Ser Thr Leu Thr
            170                 175                 180

Leu Ser Lys Ala Asp Tyr Glu Lys His Lys Val Tyr Ala Cys Glu
            185                 190                 195

Val Thr His Gln Gly Leu Ser Ser Pro Val Thr Lys Ser Phe Asn
            200                 205                 210

Arg Gly Glu Cys
        214
```

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:25:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 233 amino acids
(B) TYPE: Amino Acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: Linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:25:

```
Met Gly Trp Ser Cys Ile Ile Leu Phe Leu Val Ala Thr Ala Thr
 1               5                  10                  15

Gly Val His Ser Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu
            20                  25                  30
```

Ser Ala Ser Val Gly Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Arg Ala Ser
35 40 45

Gln Asp Ile Asn Asn Tyr Leu Asn Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly
50 55 60

Lys Ala Pro Lys Leu Leu Ile Tyr Tyr Thr Ser Thr Leu His Ser
65 70 75

Gly Val Pro Ser Arg Phe Ser Gly Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Tyr
80 85 90

Thr Leu Thr Ile Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr
95 100 105

Tyr Cys Gln Gln Gly Asn Thr Leu Pro Pro Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly
110 115 120

Thr Lys Val Glu Ile Lys Arg Thr Val Ala Ala Pro Ser Val Phe
125 130 135

Ile Phe Pro Pro Ser Asp Glu Gln Leu Lys Ser Gly Thr Ala Ser
140 145 150

Val Val Cys Leu Leu Asn Asn Phe Tyr Pro Arg Glu Ala Lys Val
155 160 165

Gln Trp Lys Val Asp Asn Ala Leu Gln Ser Gly Asn Ser Gln Glu
170 175 180

Ser Val Thr Glu Gln Asp Ser Lys Asp Ser Thr Tyr Ser Leu Ser
185 190 195

F1

Ser Thr Leu Thr Leu Ser Lys Ala Asp Tyr Glu Lys His Lys Val
200 205 210

Tyr Ala Cys Glu Val Thr His Gln Gly Leu Ser Ser Pro Val Thr
215 220 225

Lys Ser Phe Asn Arg Gly Glu Cys
230 233

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:26:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 122 amino acids
(B) TYPE: Amino Acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: Linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:26:

Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly
1 5 10 15

Gly Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Tyr Ser Phe Thr
20 25 30

Gly Tyr Thr Met Asn Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu
35 40 45

```
Glu Trp Val Ala Leu Ile Asn Pro Tyr Lys Gly Val Thr Thr Tyr
                  50                  55                  60

Ala Asp Ser Val Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Val Asp Lys Ser
                  65                  70                  75

Lys Asn Thr Ala Tyr Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp
                  80                  85                  90

Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ala Arg Ser Gly Tyr Tyr Gly Asp Ser
                  95                 100                 105

Asp Trp Tyr Phe Asp Val Trp Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val
                 110                 115                 120

Ser Ser
    122
```

F 1

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Patent and Trademark Office

Address : COMMISSIONER OF PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS
Washington, D.C. 20231

SERIAL NUMBER	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.
08/146,206	11/17/93	CARTER	P 709P1

EXAMINER
ADAMS, D

18M2/1209

JANET E. HASAK
GENENTECH, INC.
460 POINT SAN BRUNO BOULEVARD
SOUTH SAN FRANCISCO, CA 94080-4990

ART UNIT	PAPER NUMBER
1806	12

DATE MAILED: 12/09/94

This is a communication from the examiner in charge of your application.
COMMISSIONER OF PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS

Election, Amdt C

☒ This application has been examined ☒ Responsive to communication filed on 9/26/94 ☐ This action is made final.

A shortened statutory period for response to this action is set to expire 3 month(s), 0 days from the date of this letter. Failure to respond within the period for response will cause the application to become abandoned. 35 U.S.C. 133

Part I THE FOLLOWING ATTACHMENT(S) ARE PART OF THIS ACTION:

1. ☒ Notice of References Cited by Examiner, PTO-892.
2. ☒ Notice re Patent Drawing, PTO-948.
3. ☒ Notice of Art Cited by Applicant, PTO-1449.
4. ☐ Notice of Informal Patent Application, Form PTO-152.
5. ☒ Information on How to Effect Drawing Changes, PTO-1474.
6. ☐ _____

Part II SUMMARY OF ACTION

1. ☒ Claims 1-15 are pending in the application.
   Of the above, claims 13 & 14 are withdrawn from consideration.
2. ☒ Claims 16-18 have been cancelled.
3. ☐ Claims _____ are allowed.
4. ☒ Claims 1-12 & 15 are rejected.
5. ☐ Claims _____ are objected to.
6. ☐ Claims _____ are subject to restriction or election requirement.
7. ☒ This application has been filed with informal drawings under 37 C.F.R. 1.85 which are acceptable for examination purposes.
8. ☐ Formal drawings are required in response to this Office action.
9. ☐ The corrected or substitute drawings have been received on _____. Under 37 C.F.R. 1.84 these drawings are ☐ acceptable. ☐ not acceptable (see explanation or Notice re Patent Drawing, PTO-948).
10. ☐ The proposed additional or substitute sheet(s) of drawings, filed on _____ has (have) been ☐ approved by the examiner. ☐ disapproved by the examiner (see explanation).
11. ☐ The proposed drawing correction, filed on _____, has been ☐ approved. ☐ disapproved (see explanation).
12. ☐ Acknowledgment is made of the claim for priority under U.S.C. 119. The certified copy has ☐ been received ☐ not been received ☐ been filed in parent application, serial no. _____; filed on _____.
13. ☐ Since this application appears to be in condition for allowance except for formal matters, prosecution as to the merits is closed in accordance with the practice under Ex parte Quayle, 1935 C.D. 11; 453 O.G. 213.
14. ☐ Other

EXAMINER'S ACTION

PTOL-326 (Rev. 9-89)

15. Applicant's election with traverse of Group I, claims 1-12 and 15 in Paper No. 11 is acknowledged. The traversal is on the ground(s) that:
(1) the inventions are all respectively related as method of making a humanized antibody. Contrary to applicant's belief the polypeptides of claim 13 (admittedly drawn to the light chain of humanized MAb4D5) and claim 14 (admittedly drawn to the heavy chain of humanized Mab4D5) are not methods.

(2) the assumption made that the polypeptides of claims 13 and 14 are not humanized antibodies is clearly in error. Applicant is invited to reconsider this position since the antibodies of Group I are composed of a heavy and light chains. A polypeptide of just the light chain (claims 13) or just the heavy chain (claim 14) is not an antibody as prepared by Group I. The Groups therefore have different issues regarding patentability and enablement and represent patentably distinct subject matter.

(3) applicants represent that it is impossible to conduct an exhaustive search for a method of making a humanized antibody without searching for humanized antibodies made using the method. To demonstrate the problem with this argument applicant is invited to consider the classification of the Groups found in the restriction requirement. Note that the Groups are classified into distinct classifications. Thus, an exhaustive search would clearly not require searching for polypeptides. Additionally, the light chain (claim 13) and heavy chain (claim 14) are distinct from the antibodies of Group I. Again, a search of Group I would not require the search of a polypeptide.

As a whole applicant's arguments were not found persuasive.
The requirement is still deemed proper and is therefore made FINAL.

16. Claims 16-18 have been cancelled.

17. Claims 13 and 14 have been withdrawn as directed to a non-elected invention.

18. Claims 1-12 and 15 are currently under consideration.

19. The oath or declaration is defective. A new oath or declaration in compliance with 37 C.F.R. § 1.67(a) identifying this application by its Serial Number and filing date is required. See M.P.E.P. §§ 602.01 and 602.02.

20. The oath or declaration is defective because:
It does not state that the person making the oath or declaration in a continuation-in-part application filed under the conditions specified in 35 U.S.C. § 120 which discloses and

claims subject matter in addition to that disclosed in the prior copending application, acknowledges the duty to disclose material information as defined in 37 C.F.R. § 1.56(a) which occurred between the filing date of the prior application and the national or PCT international filing date of the continuation-in-part application.

21. This application has been filed with informal drawings which are acceptable for examination purposes only. Formal drawings will be required when the application is allowed.

22. Applicant is required to submit a proposed drawing correction in response to this Office action. However, correction of the noted defect can be deferred until the application is allowed by the examiner.

23. The following is a quotation of the first paragraph of 35 U.S.C. § 112:

> The specification shall contain a written description of the invention, and of the manner and process of making and using it, in such full, clear, concise, and exact terms as to enable any person skilled in the art to which it pertains, or with which it is most nearly connected, to make and use the same and shall set forth the best mode contemplated by the inventor of carrying out his invention.

24. The specification is objected to under 35 U.S.C. § 112, first paragraph, as failing to provide an adequate written description of the invention and for failing to adequately teach how to make and/or use the invention, i.e. for failing to provide an enabling disclosure.

A) Applicants have not disclosed to one of any skill in the art how to use the claimed antibody or antibody produced by the claimed methods. The scope of the claims reads on any antibody. It is unclear from the specification if the methods or antibodies claimed will all have a diagnostic or therapeutic utility. Applicant has exemplified only one such antibody specifically MAb4D5, as having diagnostic utility for the detection of $p185^{HER2}$. It is unclear if any other antibody will have a diagnostic or therapeutic utility. Determining which other antibodies are useful would be an unpredictable event and would require undue experimentation for a person of any skill in the art to get from what the specification has disclosed to the claimed invention.

25. Claims 1-12 and 15 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. § 112, first paragraph, for the reasons set forth in the objection to the specification.

26. Claims 1, 2, 4-12 and 15 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. § 103 as being unpatentable over Winter [EP 0239400], Riechmann et al. [Nature 332:323-327 (1988)] and Queen et al. [Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 86:10029-10033 (1989)]. Briefly the claims are drawn to a method for producing humanized antibodies and humanized antibodies. Winter, teaches the production of altered, chimeric, antibodies by replacing the complementarily determining regions (CDRs), see abstract. Winter, teaches the requirements for CDR fusions, see page 6 to page 8, line 29. Particularly, page 8, lines 11-18, where Winter, teaches that "merely by replacing one or more CDRs with complementary CDRs may not always result in a functional altered antibody..... it will be well within the competence of the man skilled in the art, either by carrying out routine experimentation or by trail and error testing to obtain a functional altered antibody. Note at page 8, last full paragraph that Winter states that framework region replacement and sequence changing may be necessary to obtain a functional humanized antibody. On page 9, lines 13-16, Winter suggests that the antibodies would be of importance for use in human therapy. Winter, teaches a method of producing the antibody, see page 10, paragraph 3 to page 15, paragraph 2. Consistent with Winter, Riechmann et al. teach a method of reshaping human antibodies for therapy by CDR grafting, see whole document and Queen et al. teach the humanization of antibodies by CDR grafting, see entire document. Riechmann et al. teach altering the sequence of the antibody to restore packing or to increase binding affinity, see page 326, first column, first full paragraph. Queen et al. teach the use of computer modeling to assist in the production of humanized antibodies, specifically to predict which amino acids to change thereby effecting molecular interactions, note that of the amino acids predicted to change include those identified by applicant in claims 7 and 10. A person of ordinary skill in the art would have realized that dependent upon the framework region selected and the sequence of the CDR regions amino acid changes would need to be made and they would depend upon the precise amino acid interactions of the polypeptide. The combination of Winter, Riechmann et al. and Queen et al. teach a comprehensive method for producing humanized antibodies which include the steps outlined in applicant's claims. Therefore, it would have been prima facia obvious to a person of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to take the combined teachings of Winter, Riechmann et al. and Queen et al. to produce a method of making a humanized antibody and to have a humanized antibody for either diagnostic or therapeutic use.

27. Claims 1, 2, 4-12 and 15 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. § 103 as being unpatentable over Winter [EP 0239400], Riechmann et al. [Nature 332:323-327 (1988)] and Queen et al. [Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 86:10029-10033 (1989)] in view of In re Durden 226 U.S.P.Q. 359 (Fed. Cir. 1985). Briefly the claims are drawn to a method

for producing humanized antibodies and humanized antibodies. As discussed above the combination of Winter, Riechmann et al. and Queen et al. teach humanized antibodies and methods for their production. Applicant's claimed invention does not appear to differ from what has previously known in the art.

28. Claim 3 is rejected under 35 U.S.C. § 103 as being unpatentable over Winter [EP 0239400], Riechmann et al. [Nature 332:323-327 (1988)] and Queen et al. [Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 86:10029-10033 (1989)] as applied to claims 1, 2, 4-12 and 15 and further in view of Roitt [Immunology, published 1985, by Gower Medical Publishing Ltd. (London, England) page 5.5]. Briefly the claim is drawn to a method for producing humanized antibodies having the additional steps of searching the import variable domain sequence for glycosylation sites, determining if any such glycosylation site is reasonable expected to affect the antigen binding or affinity of the antibody and if so substituting the glycosylation site into the consensus sequence. As discussed above the combination of Winter, Riechmann et al. and Queen et al. teach humanized antibodies and methods of producing humanized antibodies. The combination of Winter, Riechmann et al. and Queen et al. do not teach the importance of carbohydrate residues. However, Roitt teaches that antibodies contain carbohydrate residues in the variable region. A person of ordinary skill in the art would realize that carbohydrate residues can produce steric modifications in the folding characteristics of polypeptides. Therefore it would have been prima facia obvious to a person of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to include a step in the method taught by the combination of Winter, Riechmann et al. and Queen et al. which determines if the presence of carbohydrate residues occur in the variable region that can affect antigen binding and then include in the antibody sequence the appropriate glycosylation signal, by adding the appropriate consensus sequence. A person of ordinary skill in the art would have been motivated to add the additional step of identifying glycosylation that may affect antigen binding to ensure that the antibody produced will have the appropriate binding affinity. A person of ordinary skill in the art would have been motivated to produce such an method to produce antibodies having diagnostic or therapeutic utility.

29. Applicant is invited to include continuing data at the first page of the specifiation which identifies all related applications and noting their current status.

30. No claim allowed.

31. Papers related to this application may be submitted to Group 180 by facsimile transmission. Papers should be faxed to Group

180 via the PTO Fax Center located in Crystal Mall 1. The faxing of such papers must conform with the notice published in the Official Gazette, 1096 OG 30 (November 15, 1989). The CM1 Fax Center telephone number is (703) 308-4227.

32. Any inquiry concerning this communication or earlier communications from the examiner should be directed to Donald E. Adams whose telephone number is (703) 308-0570. The examiner can normally be reached Monday through Thursday from 7:30 am to 6:00 pm. A message may be left on the examiners voice mail service. If attempts to reach the examiner by telephone are unsuccessful, the examiner's supervisor, Mr. David Lacey can be reached on (703) 308-3535. The fax phone number for Group 180 is (703) 305-3014 or (703) 308-4227. Any inquiry of a general nature or relating to the status of this application should be directed to the Group 180 receptionist whose telephone number is (703) 308-0196.

December 5, 1994

Donald E. Adams, Ph.D.
Patent Examiner
Group 1800

PTO 892 DEA/FCE 1994 U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE NOTICE OF REFERENCES CITED	SERIAL NUMBER 08/146,206	Art Unit 1806	Attachment to Paper Number 12
	APPLICANT(S) : Carter et al.		

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

*		DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME(S)	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

*		DOCUMENT NO.	DATE	COUNTRY	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	PERTINENT DRW	PERTINENT SPEC
	A	0 239 400	09/30/87	EP	Winter	C12N	15/00	-	-
*	B	90/07861	26/07/90	WO	Queen	C12P	21/00	-	-

*		OTHER REFERENCES (INCLUDING AUTHOR, TITLE, DATE, PERTINENT PAGES, ETC.)
	C	Riechmann et al. [Nature 332:323-327 (1988)]
	D	Queen et al. [Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 86:10029-10033 (1989)]
	E	Roitt [Immunology, published 1985, by Gower Medical Publishing Ltd. (London, England) page 5.5]
*	F	Tramontano et al. [J. Mol. Biol. 215:175-182 (1990)]

EXAMINER	DATE	* A COPY OF THIS REFERENCE IS NOT BEING FURNISHED WITH THIS OFFICE ACTION. (SEE MPEP SECTION 707.05(a).
[signature]	12/5/94	PAGE 1 OF 1

[signature] 12/05/01

Form PTO 948 (Rev. 10-93) U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE - Patent and Trademark Office Application No. 146,206

NOTICE OF DRAFTSPERSON'S PATENT DRAWING REVIEW

PTO Draftpersons review all originally filed drawings regardless of whether they are designated as formal or informal. Additionally, patent Examiners will review the drawings for compliance with the regulations. Direct telephone inquiries concerning this review to the Drawing Review Branch, 703-305-8404.

The drawings filed (insert date) 11/17/93, are
A.___ not objected to by the Draftsperson under 37 CFR 1.84 or 1.152.
B. X objected to by the Draftsperson under 37 CFR 1.84 or 1.152 as indicated below. The Examiner will require submission of new, corrected drawings when necessary. Corrected drawings must be submitted according to the instructions on the back of this Notice.

1. DRAWINGS. 37 CFR 1.84(a): Acceptable categories of drawings: Black ink. Color.
   - ___ Not black solid lines. Fig(s)___
   - ___ Color drawings are not acceptable until petition is granted.

2. PHOTOGRAPHS. 37 CFR 1.84(b)
   - ___ Photographs are not acceptable until petition is granted.

3. GRAPHIC FORMS. 37 CFR 1.84 (d)
   - ___ Chemical or mathematical formula not labeled as separate figure. Fig(s)___
   - ___ Group of waveforms not presented as a single figure, using common vertical axis with time extending along horizontal axis. Fig(s)___
   - ___ Individuals waveform not identified with a separate letter designation adjacent to the vertical axis. Fig(s)___

4. TYPE OF PAPER. 37 CFR 1.84(e)
   - ___ Paper not flexible, strong, white, smooth, nonshiny, and durable. Sheet(s)___
   - ___ Erasures, alterations, overwritings, interlineations, cracks, creases, and folds not allowed. Sheet(s)___

5. SIZE OF PAPER. 37 CFR 1.84(f): Acceptable paper sizes:
   21.6 cm. by 35.6 cm. (8 1/2 by 14 inches)
   21.6 cm. by 33.1 cm. (8 1/2 by 13 inches)
   21.6 cm. by 27.9 cm. (8 1/2 by 11 inches)
   21.0 cm. by 29.7 cm. (DIN size A4)
   - ___ All drawing sheets not the same size. Sheet(s)___
   - ___ Drawing sheet not an acceptable size. Sheet(s)___

6. MARGINS. 37 CFR 1.84(g): Acceptable margins:

Paper size	21.6 cm. X 35.6 cm. (8 1/2 X 14 inches)	21.6 cm X 33.1 cm. (8 1/2 X 13 inches)	21 cm. X 27.9 cm. (8 1/2 X 11 inches)	21 cm. X 29.7 cm. (DIN Size A4)
T	5.1 cm. (2")	2.5 cm. (1")	2.5 cm. (1")	2.5cm.
L	.64 cm. (1/4")	.64 cm. (1/4")	.64 cm. (1/4")	2.5 cm.
R	.64 cm. (1/4")	.64 cm. (1/4")	.64 cm. (1/4")	1.5 cm.
B	.64 cm. (1/4")	.64 cm. (1/4")	.64 cm. (1/4")	1.0 cm.

   Margins do not conform to chart above.
   Sheet(s)___
   ___Top (T) ___Left (L) ___Right (R) ___Bottom (B)

7. VIEWS. 37 CFR 1.84(h)
   REMINDER: Specification may require revision to correspond to drawing changes.
   - ___ All views not grouped together. Fig(s)___
   - ___ Views connected by projection lines. Fig(s)___
   - ___ Views contain center lines. Fig(s)___

   Partial views. 37 CFR 1.84(h)(2)
   - ___ Separate sheets not linked edge to edge. Fig(s)___
   - ___ View and enlarged view not labeled separately. Fig(s)___
   - ___ Long view relationship between different parts not clear and unambiguous. 37 CFR 1.84(h)(2)(ii) Fig(s)___

   Sectional views. 37 CFR 1.84(h)(3)
   - ___ Hatching not indicated for sectional portions of an object. Fig(s)___
   - ___ Hatching of regularly spaced oblique parallel lines not spaced sufficiently. Fig(s)___
   - ___ Hatching not at substantial angle to surrounding axes or principal lines. Fig(s)___
   - ___ Cross section not drawn same as view with parts in cross section with regularly spaced parallel oblique strokes. Fig(s)___
   - ___ Hatching of juxtaposed different elements not angled in a different way. Fig(s)___

   Alternate position. 37 CFR 1.84(h)(4)
   - ___ A separate view required for a moved position. Fig(s)___

   Modified forms. 37 CFR 1.84(h)(5)
   - ___ Modified forms of construction must be shown in separate views. Fig(s)___

8. ARRANGEMENT OF VIEWS. 37 CFR 1.84(i)
   - ___ View placed upon another view or within outline of another. Fig(s)___
   - ___ Words do not appear in a horizontal, left-to-right fashion when page is either upright or turned so that the top becomes the right side, except for graphs. Fig(s)___

9. SCALE. 37 CFR 1.84(k)
   - ___ Scale not large enough to show mechanism without crowding when drawing is reduced in size to two-thirds in reproduction. Fig(s)___
   - ___ Indication such as "actual size" or "scale 1/2" not permitted. Fig(s)___
   - ___ Elements of same view not in proportion to each other. Fig(s)___

10. CHARACTER OF LINES, NUMBERS, & LETTERS. 37 CFR 1.84(l)
   - ___ Lines, numbers & letters not uniformly thick and well defined, clean, durable, and black (except for color drawings). Fig(s)___

11. SHADING. 37 CFR 1.84(m)
   - ___ Shading used for other than shape of spherical, cylindrical, and conical elements of an object, or for flat parts. Fig(s)___
   - ___ Solid black shading areas not permitted. Fig(s)___

12. NUMBERS, LETTERS, & REFERENCE CHARACTERS. 37 CFR 1.84(p)
   - ___ Numbers and reference characters not plain and legible. 37 CFR 1.84(p)(1) Fig(s)___
   - ___ Numbers and reference characters used in conjuction with brackets, inverted commas, or enclosed within outlines. 37 CFR 1.84(p)(1) Fig(s)___
   - ___ Numbers and reference characters not oriented in same direction as the view. 37 CFR 1.84(p)(1) Fig(s)___
   - ___ English alphabet not used. 37 CFR 1.84(p)(2) Fig(s)___
   - ___ Numbers, letters, and reference characters do not measure at least .32 cm. (1/8 inch) in height. 37 CFR(p)(3) Fig(s)___

13. LEAD LINES. 37 CFR 1.84(q)
   - ___ Lead lines cross each other. Fig(s)___
   - ___ Lead lines missing. Fig(s)___
   - ___ Lead lines not as short as possible. Fig(s)___

14. NUMBERING OF SHEETS OF DRAWINGS. 37 CFR 1.84(t)
   - X Number appears in top margin. Fig(s) 1/8
   - ___ Number not larger than reference characters. Fig(s)___
   - ___ Sheets not numbered consecutively, and in Arabic numerals, beginning with number 1. Sheet(s)___

15. NUMBER OF VIEWS. 37 CFR 1.84(u)
   - ___ Views not numbered consecutively, and in Arabic numerals, beginning with number 1. Fig(s)___
   - ___ View numbers not preceded by the abbreviation Fig. Fig(s)___
   - ___ Single view contains a view number and the abbreviation Fig.
   - ___ Numbers not larger than reference characters. Fig(s)___

16. CORRECTIONS. 37 CFR 1.84(w)
   - ___ Corrections not durable and permanent. Fig(s)___

17. DESIGN DRAWING. 37 CFR 1.152
   - ___ Surface shading shown not appropriate. Fig(s)___
   - ___ Solid black shading not used for color contrast. Fig(s)___

ATTACHMENT TO PAPER NO. 12 REVIEWER ___ DATE 3/11/94

#13
4/26/95
8C

PATENT DOCKET P0709P1

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re Application of

Carter and Presta

Serial No. 08/146,206

Filed: 17 November 1993

For: METHOD OF MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES

Group Art Unit: 1806

Examiner: ADAMS, D.

CERTIFICATE OF MAILING

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as first class mail in an envelope addressed to: Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, D.C. 20231 on

13 April 1995
(Date of Deposit)

Aida A. Miclat
Name of Depositing Party

Aida A. Miclat
Signature of Depositing Party

13 April 1995
Date of Signature

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT

Honorable Commissioner of Patents
and Trademarks
Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

Applicants submit herewith patents, publications or other information (attached hereto and listed on the attached Form PTO-1449) of which they are aware, which they believe may be material to the examination of this application and in respect of which there may be a duty to disclose in accordance with 37 CFR §1.56.

This Information Disclosure Statement:

(a) [] accompanies the new patent application submitted herewith. 37 CFR §1.97(a).

(b) [] is filed within three months after the filing date of the application or within three months after the date of entry of the national stage of a PCT application as set forth in 37 CFR§1.491.

(c) [] as far as is known to the undersigned, is filed before the mailing date of a first Office action on the merits.

(d) [x] is filed after the first Office Action and more than three months after the application's filing date or PCT national stage date of entry filing but, as far as is known to the undersigned, prior to the mailing date of either a final rejection or a notice of allowance, whichever occurs first, and is accompanied by either the fee ($210) set forth in 37 CFR §1.17(p) **or** a certification as specified in 37 CFR §1.97(e), as checked below. Should any fee be due, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is hereby authorized to charge Deposit Account No. 07-0630 in the amount of $210.00 to cover the cost of this Information Disclosure Statement. Any deficiency or overpayment should be charged or credited to this deposit account. **A duplicate of this sheet is enclosed**.

(e) [] is filed after the mailing date of either a final rejection or a notice of allowance, whichever occurred first, and is accompanied by the fee ($130) set forth in 37 CFR §1.17(i)(1) **and** a certification as specified in 37 CFR §1.97(e), as checked below. **This document is to be considered as a petition requesting consideration of the information disclosure statement.**

[If either of boxes (d) or (e) is checked above, the following "certification" under 37 CFR §1.97(e) may need to be completed.] The undersigned certifies that:

[] Each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication mailed from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of this information disclosure statement.

[] No item of information contained in this information disclosure statement was cited in a communication mailed from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application or, to the knowledge of the undersigned after making reasonable inquiry, was known to any individual designated in 37 CFR §1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of this information disclosure statement.

A list of the patent(s) or publication(s) is set forth on the attached Form PTO-1449 (Modified).

A copy of the items on PTO-1449 is supplied herewith:

[x] each [] none [] only those listed below:

Those patent(s) or publication(s) which are marked with an asterisk (*) in the attached PTO-1449 form are not supplied because they were previously cited by or submitted to the Office in a prior application Serial No. , filed and relied upon in this application for an earlier filing date under 35 USC §120.

A concise explanation of relevance of the items listed on PTO-1449 is:

[x] not given

[] given for each listed item

[] given for only non-English language listed item(s) [Required]

[] in the form of an English language copy of a Search Report from a foreign patent office, issued in a counterpart application, which refers to the relevant portions of the references.

The Examiner is reminded that a "concise explanation of the relevance" of the submitted prior art "may be nothing more than identification of the particular figure or paragraph of the patent or publication which has some relation to the claimed invention," MPEP §609.

While the information and references disclosed in this Information Disclosure Statement may be "material" pursuant to 37 CFR §1.56, it is not intended to constitute an admission that any patent, publication or other information referred to therein is "prior art" for this invention unless specifically designated as such.

In accordance with 37 CFR §1.97(b), the filing of this Information Disclosure Statement shall not be construed to mean that a search has been made or that no other material information as defined in 37 CFR §1.56(a) exists. It is submitted that the Information Disclosure Statement is in compliance with 37 CFR §1.98 and MPEP §609 and the Examiner is respectfully requested to consider the listed references.

A copy of a document pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 10.9(b) is attached as proof of the authorization of the undersigned to prosecute the above-mentioned application. The original of this document is on file in the Office of Enrollment and Discipline.

Respectfully submitted,
GENENTECH, INC.

Date: April 13, 1995

By: _____
Wendy M. Lee

460 Pt. San Bruno Blvd.
So. San Francisco, CA 94080-4990
Phone: (415) 225-1994
Fax: (415) 952-9881

FORM PTO-1449 U.S. Dept. of Commerce Patent and Trademark Office

Atty Docket No.	Serial No.
P0709P1	08/146,206
Applicant: Carter and Presta	
Filing Date: 17 Nov 1993	Group: 1806

LIST OF DISCLOSURES CITED BY APPLICANT

(Use several sheets if necessary)

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials		Document Number	Date	Name	Class	Subclass	Filing Date
VDS	1	4,816,567	28.03.89	Cabilly et al.	530	387.3	

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials		Document Number	Date	Country	Class	Subclass	Translation Yes	Translation No
VDS	2	0 239 400	30.09.87	EPO				
	3	0 620 276	19.10.94	EPO				
	4	WO 89/01783	09.03.89	PCT				
	5	WO 89/06692	27.07.89	PCT				
	6	WO 90/07861	26.07.90	PCT				
	7	WO 91/09967	11.07.91	PCT				
	8	WO 92/22653	23.12.92	PCT				
	9	WO 93/02191	04.02.93	PCT				

OTHER DISCLOSURES (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, etc.)

Examiner Initials		
VDS	10	Amzel and Poljak, "Three-dimensional structure of immunoglobulins" Ann. Rev. Biochem. 48:961-967 (1979)
	11	Bindon et al., "Human monoclonal IgG isotypes differ in complement activating function at the level of C4 as well as C1q" Journal of Experimental Medicine 168(1):127-142 (July 1988)
	12	Boulianne, G. L. et al., "Production of functional chimaeric mouse/human antibody" Nature 312(5995):643-646 (December 1984)
	13	Brown et al., "Anti-Tac-H, a humanized antibody to the interleukin 2 receptor, prolongs primate cardiac allograft survival" Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 88:2663-2667 (1991)
	14	Bruccoleri, "Structure of antibody hypervariable loops reproduced by a conformational search algorithm" Nature (erratum to article in Nature 335(6190):564-568 and) 336:266 (1988)
	15	Bruggemann, M. et al., "Comparison of the effector functions of human immunoglobulins using a matched set of chimeric antibodies" Journal of Experimental Medicine 166:1351-1361 (1987)
	16	Burgess et al., "Possible Dissociation of the Heparin-binding and Mitogenic Activities of Heparin-binding (Acidic Fibroblast) Growth Factor-1 from Its Receptor-binding Activities by Site-directed Mutagenesis of a Single Lysine Residue" Journal of Cell Biology 111:2129-2138 (1990)
	17	Carter et al., "Humanization of an anti-p185^{HER2} antibody for human cancer therapy" Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 89:4285-4289 (1992)
	18	Cheetham, J., "Reshaping the antibody combining site by CDR replacement-tailoting or tinkering to fit?" Protein Engineering 2(3):170-172 (1988)
	19	Chothia and Lesk, "Canonical Structures for the Hypervariable Regions" J. Mol. Biol. 196:901-917 (1987)
	20	Chothia et al., "The predicted structure of immunoglobulin D1.3 and its comparison with the crystal structure" Science 233:755-758 (Aug. 15, 1986)

Examiner	Date Considered
Adams	10/25/95

*Examiner: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609; draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

MI'MI-TAM DAVIS 10/01

USCOMM-DC 80-398.

FORM PTO-1449 | U.S. Dept. of Commerce, Patent and Trademark Office

LIST OF DISCLOSURES CITED BY APPLICANT

(Use several sheets if necessary)

Atty Docket No.	Serial No.
P0709P1	08/146,206
Applicant	
Carter and Presta	
Filing Date	**Group**
17 Nov 1993	~~1806~~ 1816

OTHER DISCLOSURES (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, etc.)

PN	21	Chothia, C. et al., "Conformations of immunoglobulin hypervariable regions" Nature 342(6252):877-883 (1989)
	22	Chothia, Cyrus, "Domain association in immunoglobulin molecules: The packing of variable domains" J. Mol. Biol. 186:651-663 (1985)
	23	Clark et al., "The improved lytic function and in vivo efficacy of monovalent monoclonal CD3 antibodies" European Journal of Immunology 19:381-388 (1989)
	24	Co et al., "Humanized antibodies for antiviral therapy" Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 88:2869-2873 (1991)
	25	Coussens et al., "Tyrosine Kinase Receptor with Extensive Homology to EGF Receptor Shares Chromosomal Location with neu Oncogene" Science 230:1132-1139 (1985)
	26	Daugherty, BL et al., "Polymerase chain reaction facilitates the cloning, CDR-grafting, and rapid expression of a murine monoclonal antibody directed against the CD18 component of leukocyte integrins" Nucleic Acids Research 19(9):2471-2476 (May 11, 1991)
	27	Davies, D. R. et al., "Antibody-Antigen Complexes" Ann. Rev. Biochem. 59:439-473 (1990)
	28	Epp et al., "The molecular structure of a dimer composed of the variable portions of the Bence-Jones protein REI refined at 2.0-A resolution" Biochemistry 14(22):4943-4952 (1975)
	29	Fendly et al., "Characterization of murine monoclonal antibodies reactive to either the human epidermal growth factor receptor or HER2/neu gene product" Cancer Research 50:1550-1558 (1990)
	30	Furey et al., "Structure of a novel Bence-Jones protein (Rhe) fragment at 1.6 A resolution" J. Mol. Biol. 167(3):661-692 (July 5, 1983)
	31	Gorman, SD et al., "Reshaping a therapeutic CD4 antibody" Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 88(10):4181-4185 (May 15, 1991)
	32	Gregory et al., "The solution conformations of the subclasses of human IgG deduced from sedimentation and small angle X-ray scattering studies" Molecular Immunology 24(8):821-829 (August 1987)
	33	Hale et al., "Remission induction in non-hodgkin lymphoma with reshaped human monoclonal antibody campath-1H" Lancet 1:1394-1399 (1988)
	34	Harris and Emery, "Therapeutic antibodies - the coming of age" Tibtech 11:42-44 (February 1993)
	35	Huber et al., "Crystallographic structure studies of an IgG molecule and an Fc fragment" Nature 264:415-420 (December 2, 1976)
	36	Hudziak et al., "p185^{HER2} Monoclonal Antibody Has Antiproliferative Effects In Vitro and Sensitizes Human Breast Tumor Cells to Tumor Necrosis Factor" Molecular & Cellular Biology 9(3):1165-1172 (1989)
	37	Jaffers, G. J. et al., "Monoclonal antibody therapy. Anti-idiotypic and non-anti-idiotypic antibodies to OKT3 arising despite intense immunosuppression" Transplantation 41(5):572-578 (May 1986)
	38	Jones, P. T. et al., "Replacing the complementarity-determining regions in a human antibody with those from a mouse" Nature 321(6069):522-525 (1986)
	39	Junghans et al., "Anti-Tac-H, a humanized antibody to the interleukin 2 receptor with new features for immunotherapy in malignant and immune disorders" Cancer Research 50(5):1495-1502 (Mar 1, 1990)
PN	40	Kabat et al. Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest, Bethesda, MD:National Institutes of Health pps. iii-xxvii, 41-176 (1987)

Examiner: Patricia Hazel | Date Considered: 12/16/96

*Examiner: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609; draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

FORM PTO-1449

U.S. Dept. of Commerce
Patent and Trademark Office

Atty Docket No.	Serial No.
P0709P1	08/146,206
Applicant: Carter and Presta	
Filing Date: 17 Nov 1993	Group: 1806

LIST OF DISCLOSURES CITED BY APPLICANT

(Use several sheets if necessary)

OTHER DISCLOSURES (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, etc.)

	41	King et al., "Amplification of a Novel v-erbB-Related Gene in a Human Mammary Carcinoma" Science 229:974-976 (1985)
	42	Lazar et al., "Transforming Growth Factor α: Mutation of Aspartic Acid 47 and Leucine 48 Results in Different Biological Activities" Molecular & Cellular Biology 8(3):1247-1252 (1988)
	43	Love et al, "Recombinant antibodies possessing novel effector functions" Methods in Enzymology 178:515-527 (1989)
	44	Lupu et al., "Direct interaction of a ligand for the erbB2 oncogene product with the EGF receptor and p185^{erbB2}" Science 249:1552-1555 (1990)
	45	Margni RA and Binaghi RA, "Nonprecipitating asymmetric antibodies" Ann. Rev. Immunol. 6:535-554 (1988)
	46	Margolies et al., "Diversity of light chain variable region sequences among rabbit antibodies elicited by the same antigens." Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 72:2180-84 (Jun 1975)
	47	Marquart et al., "Crystallographic refinement and atomic models of the intact immunoglobulin molecule Kol and its antigen-binding fragment at 3.0 A and 1.0 A resolution" J. Mol. Biol. 141(4):369-391 (Aug 25, 1980)
	48	Mian, IS et al., "Structure, function and properties of antibody binding sites" J. Mol. Biol. 217(1):133-151 (Jan 5, 1991)
	49	Miller, R. et al., "Monoclonal antibody therapeutic trials in seven patients with T-cell lymphoma" Blood 62:988-995 (1983)
	50	Morrison, S. L. et al., "Chimeric human antibody molecules: mouse antigen-binding domains with human constant region domains" Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 81(21):6851-6855 (Nov. 1984)
	51	Neuberger et al., "Recombinant antibodies possessing novel effector functions" Nature 312(5995):604-608 (December 1984)
	52	Neuberger, M. S. et al., "A hapten-specific chimaeric IgE antibody with human physiological effector function" Nature 314(6008):268-270 (March 1985)
	53	Novotny and Haber, "Structural invariants of antigen binding: comparison of immunoglobulin V_L-V_H and V_L-V_L domain dimers" Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 82(14):4592-4596 (July 1985)
	54	Pluckthun, Andreas, "Antibody engineering: advances from the use of escherichia coli expression systems" Biotechnology 9:545-51 (1991)
	55	Queen, M. et al., "A humanized antibody that binds to the interleukin 2 receptor" Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 86:10029-10033 (1989) Dupl.
	56	~~Riechmann, L. et al., "Reshaping human antibodies for therapy" Nature 332:323-327 (1988)~~ Dupl.
	57	~~Roitt et al. Immunology (Gower Medical Publishing Ltd., London, England) pps. 5.5 (1985)~~ Dupl.
	58	Saul et al., "Preliminary refinement and structural analysis of the Fab fragment from human immonoglobulin new at 2.0 A resolution" Journal of Biological Chemistry 253(2):585-597 (January 25, 1978)
	59	Schroff, R. et al., "Human anti-murine immunoglobulin responses in patients receiving monoclonal antibody therapy" Cancer Research 45:879-885 (1985)
	60	Segal et al., "The three-dimensional structure of a phosphorylcholine-binding mouse immunoglobulin Fab and the nature of the antigen binding site" Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 71(11):4298-4302 (Nov 1974)

Examiner	Date Considered
Adams	10/25/95

*Examiner: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609; draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

M. T. Davis 12/05/01

FORM PTO-1449	U.S. Dept. of Commerce Patent and Trademark Office	Atty Docket No. P0709P1	Serial No. 08/146,206
LIST OF DISCLOSURES CITED BY APPLICANT (Use several sheets if necessary)		Applicant Carter and Presta	DEC 20 1995
		Filing Date 17 Nov 1993	Group ~~1806~~ 1816

OTHER DISCLOSURES (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, etc.)

PN	61	Shalaby et al., "Development of humanized bispecific antibodies reactive with cytotoxic lymphocytes and tumor cells overexpressing the HER2 protooncogene" Journal of Experimental Medicine 175(1):217-225 (Jan 1, 1992)
	62	Shepard and Lewis, "Resistance of tumor cells to tumor necrosis factor" J. Clin. Immunol. 8(5):333-395 (1988)
	63	Sheriff et al., "Three-dimensional structure of an antibody-antigen complex" Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 84(22):8075-8079 (Nov. 1987)
	64	Sherman et al., "Haloperidol binding to monoclonal antibodies" Journal of Biological Chemistry 263:4064-4074 (1988)
	65	Silverton et al., "Three-dimensional structure of an intact human immunoglobulin" Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 74:5140-5144 (1977)
	66	Slamon et al., "Human Breast Cancer: Correlation of Relapse and Survival with Amplification of the HER-2/neu Oncogene" Science 235:177-182 (1987)
	67	Slamon et al., "Studies of the HER-2/neu proto-oncogene in human breast and ovarian cancer" Science 244:707-712 (1989)
	68	Snow and Amzel, "Calculating three-dimensional changes in protein structure due to amino-acid substitutions: the variable region of immunoglobulins" Protein: Structure, Function, and Genetics, Alan R. Liss, Inc. Vol. 1:267-279 (1986)
	69	Sox et al., "Attachment of carbohydrate to the variable region of myeloma immunoglubulin light chains" Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 66:975-82 (July 1970)
	70	Spiegelberg et al., "Localization of the carbohydrate within the variable region of light and heavy chains of human γG myeloma proteins" Biochemistry 9:4217-23 (Oct 1970)
	71	Takeda et al., "Construction of chimaeric processed immunoglobulin genes containing mouse variable and human constant region sequences" Nature 314(6010):452-454 (April 1985)
	72	Tao et al., "Role of Carbohydrate in the Structure and Effector Functions Mediated by the H uman IgG Constant Region" J. Immunol. 143(8):2595-2601 (1989)
	73	Tramontano et al., "Framework residue 71 is a major determinant of the position and conformation of the second hypervariable region in the VH domains of immunoglobulins" J-Mol-Biol 215(1):175-182 (Sep 5, 1990)
	74	Verhoeyen, M. et al., "Reshaping human antibodies: grafting an antilysozyme activity" Science 239(4847):1534-1536 (Mar 25, 1988)
	75	Waldmann, T., "Monoclonal antibodies in diagnosis and therapy" Science 252:1657-1662 (1991)
	76	Wallick et al., "Glycosylation of a VH residue of a monoclonal antibody against alpha (1----6) dextran increases its affinity for antigen" Journal of Experimental Medicine 168(3):1099-1109 (Sep 1988)
	77	Winter and Milstein, "Man-made antibodies" Nature 349(6307):293-299 (Jan 24, 1991)
PN	78	Yamamoto et al., "Similarity of protein encoded by the human c-erb-B-2 gene to epidermal growth factor receptor" Nature 319:230-34 (1986)

Examiner	Date Considered
Patricia Hunt	12/16/96

*Examiner: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609; draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

1802

Receipt

PATENT DOCKET 709P1

14

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re Application of

Paul J. Carter et al.

Serial No. 08/146,206

Filed: 17 November 1993

For: METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES

Group Art Unit: 1806

Examiner: D. Adams

CERTIFICATE OF MAILING

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as first class mail in an envelope addressed to: Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, D.C. 20231 on

April 10 1995
(Date of Deposit)

Elisa R. Hamby
Name of Depositing Party

Signature of Depositing Party

4/10/95
Date of Signature

REQUEST FOR A CORRECTED FILING RECEIPT

Honorable Commissioner of Patents
and Trademarks
Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

Attached is a copy of the Official Filing Receipt received from the PTO in the above application for which issuance of a corrected filing receipt is respectfully requested. Please make the correction as follows: Under "CONTINUING DATA AS CLAIMED BY APPLICANT-", please delete "07/715,222 06/14/91 PAT D 335,559" and insert --07/715,272 06/14/91 ABD--.

The correction is not due to any error by applicant and no fee is believed to be due. However, in the event that the Patent Office determines that fees are due in connection with the filing of this document, we hereby authorize the Commissioner to charge such fees to our Deposit Account No. 07-0630.

A copy of a document pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 10.9(b) is attached as proof of the authorization of the undersigned to prosecute the above-mentioned application. The original of this document is on file in the Office of Enrollment and Discipline.

Respectfully submitted,

GENENTECH, INC.

Date: April 10, 1995

By: _____
Wendy M. Lee

460 Pt. San Bruno Blvd.
So. San Francisco, CA 94080-4990
Phone: (415) 225-1994
Fax: (415) 952-9881

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
BEFORE THE OFFICE OF ENROLLMENT AND DISCIPLINE

LIMITED RECOGNITION UNDER 37 CFR § 10.9(b)

Wendy M. Lee is hereby given limited recognition under 37 CFR § 10.9(b) as an employee of Genentech, Inc. to prepare and prosecute patent applications and to represent patent applicants wherein Genentech, Inc. is the assigneed of record of the entire interest. This limited recognition shall expire on the date appearing below, or when whichever of the following events first occurs prior to the date appearing below: (i) Wendy M. Lee ceases to lawfully reside in the United States, (ii) Wendy M. Lee's employment with Genentech, Inc. ceases or is terminated, or (iii) if Wendy M. Lee ceases to remain or reside in the United States on a H-1 visa.

This document constitutes proof of such recognition. The original of this document is on file in the Office of Enrollment and Discipline of the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office.

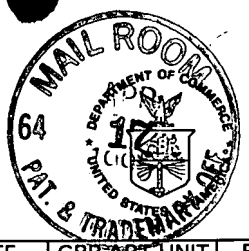
EXPIRES: DECEMBER 9, 1995

Cameron Weiffenbach, Director
Office of Enrollment and Discipline

PTO-103X
(Rev. 7-93)

FILING RECEIPT

CORRECTED



UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Patent and Trademark Office
ASSISTANT SECRETARY AND COMMISSIONER
OF PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS
Washington, D.C. 20231

WL

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING DATE	GRP ART UNIT	FIL FEE REC'D	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	DRWGS	TOT CL	IND CL
08/146,206	11/17/93	1806	$1,592.00	709P1	9	18	9

JANET E. HASAK
GENENTECH, INC.
460 POINT SAN BRUNO BOULEVARD
SOUTH SAN FRANCISCO, CA 94080-4990

Receipt is acknowledged of this patent application. It will be considered in its order and you will be notified as to the results of the examination. Be sure to provide the U.S. APPLICATION NUMBER, FILING DATE, NAME OF APPLICANT, and TITLE OF INVENTION when inquiring about this application. Fees transmitted by check or draft are subject to collection. Please verify the accuracy of the data presented on this receipt. If an error is noted on this Filing Receipt, please write to the Application Processing Division's Customer Correction Branch within 10 days of receipt. Please provide a copy of the Filing Receipt with the changes noted thereon.

Applicant(s) PAUL J. CARTER, SAN FRANCISCO, CA; LEONARD G. PRESTA, SAN FRANCISCO, CA.

CONTINUING DATA AS CLAIMED BY APPLICANT-
THIS APPLN IS A 371 OF PCT/US92/05126 06/15/92
WHICH IS A CIP OF ~~07/715,222 06/14/91 PAT D 335,559~~
07/715,272 06/14/91 ABD

FOREIGN/PCT APPLICATIONS-PCT PCT/US92/05126 06/15/92

TITLE
METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES

PRELIMINARY CLASS: 530

PCT WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
International Bureau

INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification 5 :
C12N 15/13, C12P 21/08
C07K 13/00, C12N 5/10
G06F 15/00

A1

(11) International Publication Number: WO 92/22653

(43) International Publication Date: 23 December 1992 (23.12.92)

(21) International Application Number: PCT/US92/05126

(22) International Filing Date: 15 June 1992 (15.06.92)

(30) Priority data:
715,272 14 June 1991 (14.06.91) US

(60) Parent Application or Grant
(63) Related by Continuation
US 715,272 (CIP)
Filed on 14 June 1991 (14.06.91)

(71) Applicant *(for all designated States except US)*: GENENTECH, INC. [US/US]; 460 Point San Bruno Boulevard, South San Francisco, CA 94080 (US).

(72) Inventors; and
(75) Inventors/Applicants *(for US only)* : CARTER, Paul, J. [GB/US]; 2074 18th Avenue, San Francisco, CA 94116 (US). PRESTA, Leonard, G. [US/US]; 1900 Gough Street, #206, San Francisco, CA 94109 (US).

(74) Agents: ADLER, Carolyn, R. et al.; Genentech, Inc., 460 Point San Bruno Boulevard, South San Francisco, CA 94080 (US).

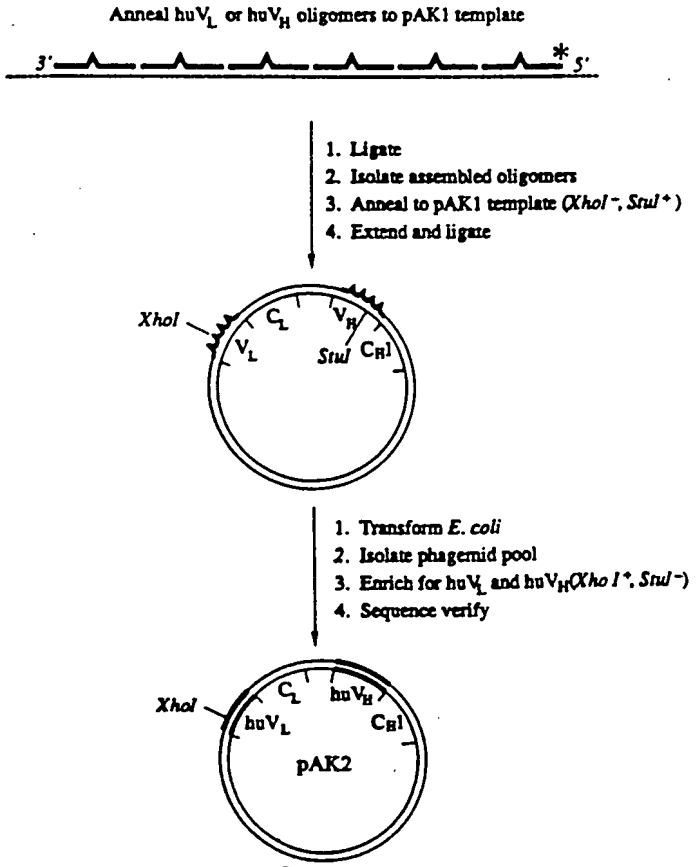
(81) Designated States: AT (European patent), AU, BE (European patent), CA, CH (European patent), DE (European patent), DK (European patent), ES (European patent), FR (European patent), GB (European patent), GR (European patent), IT (European patent), JP, LU (European patent), MC (European patent), NL (European patent), SE (European patent), US.

Published
With international search report.
Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.

(54) Title: METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES

(57) Abstract

Variant immunoglobulins, particularly humanized antibody polypeptides are provided, along with methods for their preparation and use. Consensus immunoglobulin sequences and structural models are also provided.



1806

#16

PATENT DOCKET 709P1

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In Application of

Paul J. Carter et al.

Serial No. 08/146,206

Filed: 17 November 1993

For: METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES

Group Art Unit: 1806

Examiner: D. Adams

1802

CERTIFICATE OF MAILING

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as first class mail in an envelope addressed to: Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, D.C. 20231 on

June 9, 1995
(Date of Deposit)

Wendy Lee
Name of Depositing Party

Signature of Depositing Party

June 9, 1995
Date of Signature

AMENDMENT TRANSMITTAL

Honorable Commissioner of Patents
and Trademarks
Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

Transmitted herewith is an amendment in the above-identified application.

The fee has been calculated as shown below.

	Claims Remaining After Amendment		Highest No. Previously Paid For	Present Extra	Rate	Additional Fee(s)
Total	24	Minus	23	= 1	x 22 =	$ 22.00
Indep.	6	Minus	10	= 0	x 76 =	$ 0
___ First Presentation of Multiple Dependent Claim					+ 240 =	$ 0
					TOTAL	**$ 22.00**

____ No additional fee is required.

__X__ The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge Deposit Account No. 07-0630 in the amount of $22.00. **A duplicate copy of this transmittal is enclosed.**

__X__ Petition for Extension of Time is enclosed.

The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge any additional fees required under 37 CFR 1.16 and 1.17, or credit overpayment to Deposit Account No. 07-0630. **A duplicate copy of this sheet is enclosed.**

A copy of a document pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 10.9(b) is attached as proof of the authorization of the undersigned to prosecute the above-mentioned application. The original of this document is on file in the Office of Enrollment and Discipline.

Respectfully submitted,
GENENTECH, INC.

01 FC:180 102 07-0630 07/12/95 08146206
22.00CH 709P1

Date: June 9, 1995

By: _____
Wendy M. Lee

460 Pt. San Bruno Blvd.
So. San Francisco, CA 94080-4990
Phone: (415) 225-1994
Fax: (415) 952-9881

PATENT DOCKET 709P1

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re Application of

Paul J. Carter et al.

Serial No. 08/146,206

Filed: 17 November 1993

For: METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES

Group Art Unit: 1806

Examiner: D. Adams

#15

CERTIFICATE OF MAILING

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as first class mail in an envelope addressed to: Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, D.C. 20231 on

June 9, 1995
(Date of Deposit)

Wendy Lee
Name of Depositing Party

Signature of Depositing Party

June 9, 1995
Date of Signature

RECEIVED
AUG 7 1995

PETITION AND FEE FOR EXTENSION OF TIME (37 CFR 1.136(a))

Honorable Commissioner of Patents
and Trademarks
Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

Applicant petitions the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks to extend the time for response to the Office Action dated 12/9/94 for three month(s) from 3/9/95 to 6/9/95. The extended time for response does not exceed the statutory period.

Please charge Deposit Account No. 07-0630 in the amount of $870.00 to cover the cost of the extension. Any deficiency or overpayment should be charged or credited to this deposit account. A duplicate of this sheet is enclosed.

A copy of a document pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 10.9(b) is attached as proof of the authorization of the undersigned to prosecute the above-mentioned application. The original of this document is on file in the Office of Enrollment and Discipline.

Respectfully submitted,

GENENTECH, INC.

Date: June 9, 1995

By: _____
Wendy M. Lee

460 Pt. San Bruno Blvd.
So. San Francisco, CA 94080-4990
Phone: (415) 225-1994
Fax: (415) 952-9881

250 TL 07-0630 07/12/95 08146206
25181 117 870.00CH 709P1

PATENT DOCKET 709P1

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re Application of

Paul J. Carter et al.

Serial No. 08/146,206

Filed: 17 November 1993

For: METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES

Group Art Unit: 1806

Examiner: D. Adams

CERTIFICATE OF MAILING
I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as first class mail in an envelope addressed to: Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, D.C. 20231 on
June 9, 1995
(Date of Deposit)
Wendy Lee
Name of Depositing Party
Wendy Lee
Signature of Depositing Party
June 9, 1995
Date of Signature

AMENDMENT UNDER 37 C.F.R. §1.111

Honorable Commissioner of Patents
and Trademarks
Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

This amendment is responsive to the Office Action dated 12/9/94. Attached is a petition and petition fee for a three-month extension of time making this response timely filed on or before 6/9/95. Please amend the application as follows:

IN THE SPECIFICATION:

On page 1, beneath the title and before the subheading "Field of the Invention", please insert the following:

--Cross References

This application is a continuation-in-part of U.S. Application Serial No. 07/715,272 filed 14 June 1991 (abandoned) which application is incorporated herein by reference and to which application priority is claimed under 35 USC §120.--;

On page 65, line 5, change "Relative" to read --Relative cell proliferation--;
line 6, delete "cell";
line 8, delete "proliferation‡";
line 11, delete "407" and insert --4.7 101--;

line 12, delete "466" and insert	--4.4	66--;
line 13, delete "0.80" and insert	--0.82	56--;
line 14, delete "148" and insert	--1.1	48--;
line 15, delete "0.22" and insert	--0.22	51--;
line 16, delete "0.62" and insert	--0.62	53--;
line 17, delete "0.50" and insert	--0.10	54--; and
line 18, delete "0.30" and insert	--0.30	37--.

IN THE CLAIMS:

Please cancel claims 13 and 14 without prejudice.

1. (Amended) A method for making a humanized antibody comprising amino acid sequences of a non-human, import antibody and a human antibody, comprising the steps of:

[(a)] obtaining the amino acid sequences of at least a portion of an import variable domain and of a consensus human variable domain;

[(b)] identifying [Complementarity] Complementary Determining Region (CDR) amino acid sequences in the import variable domain and the consensus human [amino] variable domain [sequences];

[(c)] substituting an import CDR amino acid sequence for the corresponding consensus human CDR amino acid sequence;

[(d)] aligning the amino acid sequences of a Framework Region (FR) of the import [antibody] variable domain and [the] a corresponding FR of the consensus [antibody] human variable domain;

[(e)] identifying import [antibody] FR residues in the aligned FR sequences that are non-homologous to the corresponding consensus [antibody] FR residues;

[(f)] determining if the non-homologous import [amino acid] FR residue is [reasonably] expected to have at least one of the following effects:

[(1)] non-covalently binds antigen directly,

[(2)] interacts with a CDR; or

[(3)] participates in the V_L - V_H interface by affecting the proximity or orientation of the V_L and V_H regions with respect to one another; and

[(g)] for any non-homologous import [antibody amino acid] FR residue which is [reasonably] expected to have at least one of these effects, substituting that residue for the corresponding amino acid residue in the consensus [antibody] FR [sequence].

2. (Amended) The method of claim 1, having an additional step of determining [if] whether any such non-homologous import residue[s are] is exposed on the surface of the consensus human variable domain or buried within it, and if the non-homologous import residue is exposed, retaining the corresponding consensus residue.

3. (Amended) The method of claim 1 or 19, having the additional steps of searching the import variable domain sequence for glycosylation sites, determining if any such glycosylation site is [reasonably] expected to affect the antigen binding or affinity of the antibody, and if so, substituting the glycosylation site into the consensus [sequence] human variable domain.

4. (Amended) The method of claim 1 or 19, having the additional steps of searching the consensus human variable domain sequence for glycosylation sites which are not present at the corresponding amino acid in the import variable domain sequence, and if [the] any such glycosylation site is not present in the import variable domain sequence, substituting the import amino acid residue[s] for the amino acid residue[s] comprising the consensus glycosylation site.

5. (Amended) The method of claim 1 or 19, having [an] the additional steps if [which comprises] aligning the import [antibody] FR sequence and consensus [antibody] FR sequence[s], identifying import [antibody] FR residues which are non-homologous [with] to the aligned consensus FR [sequence] residues, and for each such non-homologous import [antibody] FR residue, determining if the corresponding consensus [antibody] residue represents a residue which is highly conserved across all species at that site, and if it is so conserved, preparing a humanized antibody which comprises the consensus [antibody amino acid] residue at that site.

6. (Amended) The method of claim 1, wherein the corresponding consensus FR [antibody] residues substituted in step (g) are selected from the group consisting of 4L, 35L, [36L,] 38L, 43L, 44L, 46L, 58L, [62L, 63L,] 64L, 65L, 66L, 67L, 68L, 69L, 70L, 71L, 73L, 85L, [87L,] 98L, 2H, 4H, 24H, 36H, [37H,] 39H, 43H, 45H, 49H, [58H, 60H, 67H, 68H,] 69H, 70H, 73H, 74H, 75H, 76H, and 78H[, 91H, 92H, 93H, and 103H].

7. (Amended) A method comprising providing at least a portion of an import, non-human [antibody] variable domain amino acid sequence having a Complementary Determining Region (CDR) and a Framework Region (FR), obtaining the amino acid sequence of at least a portion of a consensus human [antibody] variable domain of a human immunoglobulin subgroup having a CDR and a FR, substituting the non-human CDR for the human CDR in the consensus human

[antibody] variable domain, and [then] substituting a[n] non-human amino acid residue for the consensus amino acid residue at at least one of the following sites:
4L, 35L, [36L,] 38L, 43L, 44L, 46L, 58L, [62L, 63L,] 64L, 65L, 66L, 67L, 68L, 69L, 70L, 71L, 73L, 85L, [87L,] 98L, 2H, 4H, 24H, 36H, [37H,] 39H, 43H, 45H, 49H, [58H, 60H, 67H, 68H,] 69H, 70H, 73H, 74H, 75H, 76H, and 78H[, 91H, 92H, 93H, and 103H].

In claim 8, line 2, please replace "antibody" with --variable domain--.
In claim 9, line 1, please delete "or 7".

10. (Amended) A humanized antibody variable domain having a non-human Complementary Determining Region (CDR) incorporated into a consensus human variable domain [a human antibody variable domain], wherein [the improvement comprises substituting an] a human amino acid residue [for the human residue] has been substituted by a non-human amino acid residue at a site selected from the group consisting of:
4L, 35L, [36L,] 38L, 43L, 44L, 46L, 58L, [62L, 63L,] 64L, 65L, 66L, 67L, 68L, 69L, 70L, 71L, 73L, 85L, [87L,] 98L, 2H, 4H, 24H, 36H, [37H,] 39H, 43H, 45H, 49H, [58H, 60H, 67H, 68H,] 69H, 70H, 73H, 74H, 75H, 76H, and 78H[, 91H, 92H, 93H, and 103H].

In claim 12, line 1, please replace "FR" with --Framework Region (FR)--.

15. (Amended) A method for engineering a humanized antibody comprising introducing amino acid residues from a[n] non-human, import [antibody] variable domain into [an amino acid sequence representing a] consensus [of mammalian antibody] human variable domain [sequences] of a human immunoglobulin subgroup.

19. (Amended) A method for making a humanized antibody comprising amino acid sequences of a non-human, import antibody and a human antibody, comprising the steps of:

[a][.] obtaining the amino acid sequences of at least a portion of an import variable domain and of a consensus human variable domain;

[b][.] identifying [Complementarity] Complementary Determining Region (CDR) amino acid sequences in the import variable domain and the consensus human [amino] variable domain [sequences];

[c][.] substituting an import CDR amino acid sequence for the corresponding consensus human CDR amino acid sequence;

(d)[.] aligning the amino acid sequences of a Framework Region (FR) of the import [antibody] variable domain and [the] a corresponding FR of the consensus [antibody] human variable domain;

(e)[.] identifying import [antibody] FR residues in the aligned FR sequences that are non-homologous to the corresponding consensus [antibody] FR residues;

(f)[.] determining if the non-homologous import [amino acid] FR residue is [reasonably] expected to have at least one of the following effects:

(1)[.] non-covalently binds antigen directly,

(2)[.] interacts with a CDR; or

(3)[.] participates in the V_L - V_H interface by affecting the proximity or orientation of the V_L and V_H regions with respect to one another;

(g)[.] for any non-homologous import [antibody amino acid] FR residue which is [reasonably] expected to have at least one of these effects, substituting that residue for the corresponding amino acid residue in the consensus [antibody] FR [sequence]; and

(h)[.] for any non-homologous import antibody amino acid residue, determining [if] whether any such non-homologous import residue is exposed on the surface of the consensus human variable domain or buried within it, and if the non-homologous import residue is exposed, retaining the corresponding consensus residue.

Please add the following claims:

--20. The method of claim 1 wherein step (g) is followed by a step wherein the humanized antibody is prepared which has a variable domain having amino acid sequences determined in steps (a)-(g)--

--21. The method of claim 1 wherein the consensus human variable domain is of a human immunoglobulin subgroup.--

--22. The method of claim 19 wherein the consensus human variable domain is of a human immunoglobulin subgroup.--

--23. A humanized antibody comprising a consensus human variable domain of a human immunoglobulin subgroup wherein the amino acid residues forming the Complementary Determining Regions (CDRs) thereof comprise non-human import antibody amino acid residues.--

--24. The humanized antibody of claim 23 further comprising a Framework Region (FR) residue of the non-human import antibody, wherein the FR residue either:

(a) non-covalently binds antigen directly;

(b) interacts with a CDR;

(c) comprises a glycosylation site which affects the antigen binding or affinity of the antibody; or

(d) participates in the V_L - V_H interface by affecting the proximity or orientation of the V_L and V_H regions with respect to one another.--

--25. The humanized antibody of claim 24 comprising more than one FR residue of the non-human import antibody.--

--26. The humanized antibody of claim 25 comprising from about 1 to about 7 FR residues of the non-human import antibody.--

REMARKS

The specification has been amended to correct obvious typographical errors in Table 3 on page 65. It is clear that the last two columns of Table 3 were inadvertently superimposed and the amendment to the specification serves merely to correct these errors. Please refer to Table 1 of Carter *et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.,* **89,** (1992), of record, which shows the correct Kd and Relative Cell Proliferation values of the variants described in Table 3 of the instant application. Applicants respectfully request that the specification be amended to correct the typographical errors discussed above.

The claims have been revised and additional claims added with specification support for the claim revisions being found at least as follows:

Claim	Wording	Specification Support
1, step (f)(3) 19, step (f)(3)	"by affecting....one another"	Page 11, lines 37-38
7, 15, 23	"of a human immunoglobulin subgroup"	Page 8, lines 27-29 Page 14, lines 3-4
21, 22	Entire Claim	
10, 23	"consensus human variable domain"	Claim 1 originally filed
20	Entire Claim	Page 1, line 6

23	"wherein the....import antibody amino acid residues"	Page 9, lines 32-38
24, 25	Entire Claim	Claims 1 and 3 originally filed
26	Entire Claim	See below

Claim 26 refers to the number of non-human import FR residues substituted into the humanized antibodies described in the examples (*i.e.* from about 1 to about 7 residues). In Example 1, 1-7 residues in the FR region were replaced with non-human import residues (see Table 3 on page 65). Murine residues are shown in three letter amino acid code (see lines 20-21 on page 65). Example 3 refers to replacement of 4 of the consensus FR residues with murine import residues (see Fig 5). Replacement residues are indicated with a "#" and residues in the CDRs are indicated by a line and/or carets.

The other claim revisions are clerical in nature. Following entry of this amendment, claims 1-12, 15 and 19-26 will be pending in this case.

Applicants note that the restriction requirement has been made final. Accordingly, claims 13 and 14 have been cancelled without prejudice to file a continuing application directed thereto.

Applicants note that claims 1-12 and 15 are currently under consideration. It should be noted that independent claim 19 (and claims 3, 4 and 5 which depend thereon) are also in this case, having been introduced in the amendment (dated June 12, 1993) to the PCT application on which this application is based. See the International Preliminary Examination Report dated September 20, 1993. Applicants ask that this claim also be considered in the prosecution of the instant application.

Formality Matters

The Examiner asserts that the declaration is defective because it does not state that the person making the oath or declaration in a continuation-in-part application filed under the conditions specified in 35 USC §120 which discloses and claims subject matter in addition to that disclosed in the prior copending application acknowledged the duty to disclose material information as defined in 37 CFR §1.56(a) which occurred between the filing date of the prior application and the national or PCT international filing date of the continuation-in-part application.

Applicants refer to the Combined Declaration and Power of Attorney submitted November 17, 1993. Since the declaration meets all the requirements of 37 CFR §1.63, applicants submit that a new declaration pursuant to 37 CFR §1.67(a) [see also MPEP 602.01 and 602.02] is not required. In particular, the last paragraph on page 1 of the declaration meets the requirements of 37 CFR §1.63(d). Accordingly, applicants request that the objection to the declaration be reconsidered and withdrawn.

The Examiner has objected to the drawings. Applicants ask that this matter be held in abeyance until the application is allowed.

The specification has been updated to refer to continuing data as proposed under item #29 in the Office Action.

The Rejection Under 35 USC §112, First Paragraph

The specification has been objected to and claims 1-12 and 15 rejected under 35 USC §112, first paragraph as allegedly failing to adequately teach how to use the claimed antibody or antibody produced by the claimed methods. The Examiner acknowledges that the exemplary antibody 4D5 does have a diagnostic utility for the detection of $p185^{HER2}$. However, the Examiner is of the opinion that it is unclear whether any other antibody will have a diagnostic or therapeutic utility. The Examiner believes that determining which other antibodies are useful would be an unpredictable event and would require undue experimentation for an ordinarily skilled person.

Applicants submit that the specification does enable the instantly claimed invention. This application discloses and claims a unique method for antibody humanization which can be used to humanize any antibody of interest. The instantly claimed humanization technique has been successfully used to humanize several different non-human antibodies including anti-HER2 (see Example 1); anti-CD3 (see Example 3); anti-CD18 (see Example 4); and anti-IgE (see Presta *et al.*, *J. Immunol.* **151**:2623-2632 [1993], copy attached). These antibodies had known diagnostic and/or therapeutic uses at the priority date of the instant application. For example, humanized anti-HER2 could be used for clinical intervention in and imaging of carcinomas in which $p185^{HER2}$ is overexpressed (see page 4, lines 20-28 of the application); humanized anti-CD3 antibodies could be used to detect CD3 in biological samples (*e.g.* to detect $CD3^+$ CTL; see page 69, line 22 of the application) or for making bispecific antibodies such as the anti-HER2/anti-CD3 bispecific antibody for tumor immunotherapy (see page 70, lines 23-38 of the application); anti-CD18 antibodies could be used for detecting the CD18 antigen in biological specimens and for indications such as reducing inflammation associated with meningitis or encephalitis (see U.S. Patent 5,147,637, copy attached), for example; anti-IgE could be used for detecting IgE and for treating allergy as described in Presta *et al.*, *supra*. In addition to these antibodies, the application refers to many other antibodies available at the priority date which were known to have diagnostic and/or therapeutic uses. These antibodies presented potential candidates for humanization using the procedures disclosed and claimed. Examples are provided in the background section of the application. See, for example, Kabat *et al.*, *Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest*, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, (1987); U.S. patent No. 4,816,567; Morrison *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **81**:6851-6855 (1984); Boulianne *et al.*, *Nature* **312**:643-646 (1984); Neuberger *et al.*, *Nature* **314**:268-270 (1985); Brüggemann *et al.*, *J. Exp. Med.* **166**:1351-1361 (1987); Riechmann *et al.*, *Nature* **332**:323-327 (1988); Love *et al.*, *Methods in Enzymology* **178**:515-527 (1989); Bindon *et al.*, *J. Exp. Med.* **168**:127-142 (1988); Jaffers *et al.*, *Transplantation* **41**:572-578 (1986); Jones *et al.*, *Nature* **321**:522-525 (1986); Verhoeyen, M. *et al.*, *Science* **239**:1534-1536

(1988); Hale *et al.*, *Lancet* **i**:1394-1399 (1988); Queen *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **86**:10029-10033 (1989); Co *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **88**:2869-2873 (1991); Gorman *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **88**:4181-4185 (1991); Daugherty *et al.*, *Nucleic Acids Research* **19(9)**:2471-2476 (1991); Brown *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **88**:2663-2667 (1991); and Junghans *et al.*, *Cancer Research* **50**:1495-1502 (1990), all of record. Therefore, any of the antibodies described in these references could have been chosen to be humanized using the techniques described in the instant application. In addition, an antibody to the antigens described in these references or other antigens of interest could have been generated using the techniques for making antibodies described on pages 27-29 of the application, for example. Therapeutic and diagnostic uses for the humanized antibodies were also taught on, *e.g.*, pages 50-55 of the application.

In addition to the numerous examples of antibodies which were specifically disclosed in the application, the skilled practitioner at the priority date would have had many, many other antibodies with established uses (including diagnostic and therapeutic uses) to choose from. To demonstrate this, several review articles are attached which show that antibodies which were used (a) as probes for oncogene products; (b) as tools in genetic studies on carbohydrate blood group antigens; (c) for diagnosis and therapy of lymphoproliferative diseases; (d) in the diagnosis and treatment of bacterial infections; (e) in the diagnosis and prognosis of breast cancer; (f) in the flow cytometric analysis of benign and malignant cells; and (g) as proliferation markers (*e.g.* Ki-67) for immunohistological diagnostic and prognostic evaluation of human malignancies, were available at the priority date which could have been humanized using the instantly claimed method. See Niman, *Immunodiagnosis of Cancer*, Second Edition, pp. 189-204 (1990); Watkins *et al.*, *Journal of Immunogenetics* **17**:259-276 (1990); Campana *et al.*, *The Turkish Journal of Pediatrics* **32**:143-151 (1990); Verhoef and Torensma, *Eur. J. Clin. Microbiol. Infect. Dis.* **9(4)**:247-250 (1990); Ellis *et al.*, *Pathology Annual* **25**:193-235 (1990); Beck *et al.*, *Cancer Biology* **1**:181-188 (1990); and Gerdes, *Cancer Biology* **1**:199-206 (1990), copies attached. Once the method of humanization disclosed in the instant application was discovered, it would have been routine to select any one of these antibodies and humanize them using the disclosed procedures. Therefore, applicants submit that it would have been clear to the skilled artisan that many antibodies other than anti-HER2 were available which had diagnostic and/or therapeutic utilities. Applicants further submit that determining which other antibodies would have been useful at the priority date would not have been an unpredictable event and would not have required undue experimentation for an ordinarily skilled person.

Accordingly, applicants ask that this rejection under 35 USC §112, second paragraph be reconsidered and withdrawn.

The Rejection Under 35 USC §103 - Winter, Queen *et al.* and Riechmann *et al.*

Claims 1, 2, 4-12 and 15 are rejected under 35 USC §103 as being unpatentable over EP239,400 (Winter); Riechmann *et al.* Nature: **332**: 323-327 (1988); and Queen *et al.* PNAS, USA **86**: 10029-10033 (1989). Applicants traverse this rejection as it may apply to the claims as amended herein.

EP239,400 describes a procedure for partial antibody "humanization" wherein the FR residues of the heavy chain of the engineered antibody are provided by the framework region of an individual human antibody V_H. In particular, the heavy chain framework region of the humanized B1-8 antibody (*i.e.* HuV_{NP}) described in Example 1 and the humanized anti-lysozyme antibody D1.3 described in Example 2 was derived from the human myeloma heavy chain NEWM (see page 17, lines 1-2 and lines 9-10 on page 26). The $NEWV_H$ framework region was chosen because the crystallographic structure thereof was known. See page 17, lines 2-3 of EP239,400. The light chains of the B1-8 and D1•3 antibodies were never humanized. Furthermore, only the CDRs were transferred; none of the non-human FR residues were incorporated into the engineered molecule. EP239,400 briefly mentions further work with the antibody CAMPATH-1 (see pages 30-31), but fails to describe in detail how this antibody was humanized. The detailed description of the "CAMPATH-1" work appears to be described in Riechmann *et al.* Using the same strategy as disclosed in EP239,400, Riechmann and his colleagues made a humanized heavy-chain variable domain which had the framework regions of human NEW alternating with the CDRs of rat YTH 34.5HL anti-CAMPATH-1 antibody. Thus, the same heavy chain framework region as disclosed in EP239,400 was used once again. The rationale for this was that the crystallographic structure of NEW was available (see page 325, second to last paragraph of Riechmann *et al.*). For humanization of the light chain of rat YTH 34.5HL, the human REI light chain variable domain was used, as the human NEW light chain region could not be used (because there is a deletion at the beginning of the third framework region of NEW; see page 325, second to last paragraph of Riechmann *et al.*). Also, a crystallographic structure for REI was available. Thus, Riechmann *et al.* used FR residues from a single antibody for humanizing a non-human antibody variable domain. Riechmann *et al.* describe mutating one or two FR residues in order "to restore the packing of the loop" (see page 326, column 1).

Queen *et al.* describe the methods they employed for humanizing their anti-Tac monoclonal antibody which binds to the p55 chain of the human interleukin 2 receptor. As mentioned in the abstract of this paper, the "human framework regions were chosen to maximize homology with the anti-Tac antibody sequence". Queen *et al.* reasoned that the more homologous the human antibody was to the original anti-Tac antibody, the less likely would combining the anti-Tac CDRs with the human FR be to introduce distortions into the CDRs. See page 10031, column 2, paragraph 2 of Queen *et al.* Queen *et al.* further reiterate this in the summary on page 10033 where they state that "the human framework was chosen to be as homologous as possible to the original mouse antibody to reduce any

deformation of the mouse CDRs". Thus, based on a comparison of the anti-Tac heavy chain sequence to all human heavy chain sequences in the National Biomedical Research Foundation Protein Identification Resource database, the heavy chain V region of the human Eu antibody was selected. Because no one human light chain V region was especially homologous to the anti-Tac light chain, the Eu light chain was also selected to provide the framework residues for the light chain of the humanized antibody. Accordingly, the framework regions of the humanized antibody described by Queen *et al.* were derived from a single antibody. Queen *et al.* transferred a number of the murine FR residues into the humanized antibody (two in the V_L and nine in the V_H; see Fig. 2 of this reference). These transferred residues were thought to be close enough to the CDRs to either influence their conformation or interact directly with antigen (see page 10031, column 2, paragraph 3). It was thought that this transfer of FR residues would better preserve the precise structure of the CDRs at the cost of possibly making the humanized antibody slightly less "human". Queen *et al.* also noted that a given human variable domain will contain exceptional FR amino acids which are atypical of other human V regions. The human Eu antibody had seven such residues in the heavy chain and two in the light chain. Because the murine antibody had a residue much more typical of human sequences, the murine residues were retained at these sites rather than the Eu residue.

The instantly claimed invention differs from the teachings of each of the above-mentioned references in that it provides a method for humanization and humanized antibodies wherein the framework regions of the humanized antibodies are essentially formed by a "consensus human variable domain", *i.e.*, an amino acid sequence which comprises the most frequently occurring amino acid residues at each location in all human immunoglobulins of any particular subclass or subunit structure (see page 13, lines 20-22 of the application). Preferably, the consensus is from one of the "human immunoglobulin subgroups" described by Kabat *et al.*, *Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest*, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda MD (1987) (*e.g.*, V_L κ subgroup I and V_H subgroup III). See page 14, first paragraph of the application. The instant application demonstrates, for the first time, that a number of non-human antibodies can be humanized using such a consensus human variable domain to provide the framework regions of the antibody. Applicants submit that the use of such a consensus sequence for humanizing non-human antibodies was not disclosed or alluded to by the cited references. Accordingly, a *prima facie* case of obviousness has not been established by the Office.

In addition, the prior art taught away from the claimed invention. EP239,400 and Riechmann *et al.* taught that a framework region of an individual antibody should be used for humanization, especially where a crystallographic structure of the chosen antibody was available. On the contrary, crystal structures of consensus human variable domains as claimed in the instant application were not available. Therefore, the method for humanization claimed in the above application diverged from that taught by EP239,400 and Riechmann *et al.*

Queen *et al.* also taught that the FR residues of the humanized antibody should be provided by an individual antibody (*i.e.* the Eu antibody). Furthermore, Queen *et al.* taught that the sequence used for humanization should be as homologous as possible to the non-human sequence to be humanized in order to reduce the likelihood of introducing distortions into the CDRs. Therefore, according to the teachings of Queen *et al.* framework region sequences needed to be tailored to each non-human antibody to be humanized. Because Queen *et al.* used the human Eu antibody sequence, they found that they needed to replace "atypical" residues from the human sequence with the corresponding murine residues (where the murine residues were more typical). See page 10032, column 1, paragraph 1 of Queen *et al.* The approach adopted by Queen *et al.* was also followed by Co *et al.*, PNAS USA, 88:2869-2873 (1991), of record. It is apparent that Co *et al.* felt it was necessary to follow the strategy of Queen *et al.* if one considers the statements made on 2871 (column 1) of their paper. In particular, Co *et al.* say "To retain high binding affinity in the humanized antibodies, the general procedures of Queen *et al.*(15) were followed. First, a human antibody variable domain with maximal homology to the mouse antibody is selected to provide the framework sequence for humanization of the mouse antibody. Normally the heavy chain and light chain from the same human antibody are chosen so as to reduce the possibility of incompatibility in the assembly of the two chains". The humanization technique of Queen *et al.* and Co *et al.* has now been coined the "best-fit" method for humanization insofar as it relies on selecting an individual human antibody which is as homologous in sequence as possible to the non-human sequence which is to be humanized. Furthermore, these references teach that the heavy chain and light chain used for humanization should be derived from the same human antibody.

On the other hand, the instantly claimed invention constitutes a bold new approach to humanization that does not rely on a high degree of sequence homology between the human and non-human sequences and does not require the existence of a crystallographic structure of the human antibody; the framework regions of the antibodies humanized using the instantly claimed techniques are consensus human variable domain sequences. Applicants submit that the skilled practitioner would have had no motivation to use consensus sequences to form the framework regions of humanized antibodies at the priority date, since the prior art taught that the framework regions should be provided by individual human antibody sequences. Furthermore, the skilled artisan would have been motivated not to use a consensus human variable domain, as the Queen *et al.* and Co *et al.* references taught that the framework region sequences should be chosen based on their sequence homology to the non-human antibody. The instantly claimed invention shows that, contrary to what would have been expected, the claimed consensus sequences can be used for humanization of many different non-human antibodies. This is a significant finding for at least the following two reasons.

First, one must consider why antibodies are humanized. Antibody humanization provides a means for reducing immunogenicity, tailoring effector functions and increasing serum half-life. The

instantly claimed invention provides an improvement in relation to the first of these, *i.e.,* reducing immunogenicity. By using a consensus sequence, which is a sequence comprising the most commonly occurring amino acid at each site in the heavy or light chain, the likelihood that an "atypical" amino acid residue may be present in the framework of the humanized antibody is reduced. Such atypical framework region residues are thought to be detrimental because the human immune system may recognize these as foreign. Thus, the instantly claimed invention obviates the need to replace atypical human residues as taught by Queen *et al.* Therefore, the instantly claimed invention also constitutes a "minimalistic" approach wherein as few non-human residues as possible are incorporated into the humanized antibody, thus reducing the potential immunogenicity of the humanized antibody (see 75, lines 9-11 of the instant application).

The other advantage of the instantly claimed invention is that applicants have shown that a selected V_H consensus sequence and selected V_L consensus sequence can be used to humanize many different non-human antibodies including anti-HER2 (see Example 1); anti-CD3 (see Example 3); anti-CD18 (see Example 4); and anti-IgE (see Presta *et al., supra*). In particular, applicants have seen that humanized anti-HER2 and humanized anti-IgE do not lead to detectable immunogenic responses upon administration to humans. Thus, the claimed method is clearly useful for the production of humanized antibodies with reduced immunogenicity. The techniques advocated by the prior art, especially Queen *et al.* and Co *et al.,* would not allow for this flexibility, since for each new non-human antibody to be humanized, a human antibody sequence with high homology thereto must be used.

To further emphasize the differences between the approaches of the cited references (where FRs from individual human antibodies are used) and the consensus approach which is instantly claimed, applicants refer to the following references. In particular, Sims *et al., J. Immunol.* **151(4)**:2296-2308 (1993), copy attached, used the "best-fit" method to humanize their anti-CD18 antibody. See column 2, paragraph 3 on page 2302. Kolbinger *et al.* further contrast the differences between the individual antibody approach and the consensus approach which is claimed in the above application. See Kolbinger *et al., Protein Engineering* **6**:971-980 (1983) (copy attached). As mentioned in the abstract of Kolbinger *et al.* "Two approaches to the selection of human FRs were tested: (i) selection from human consensus sequences and (ii) selection from individual human antibodies". Kolbinger *et al.* used the consensus sequences for human κ V_L subgroup III and human V_H subgroup I (see Figures 2 and 3) for one version of a humanized antibody. The other humanized antibody was made using the "best-fit" method (see page 977, column 1). In the best-fit method, the V_L of the human antibody KAF and the V_H of the human antibody HAY were used for humanization (see Figures 2 and 3 of Kolbinger *et al.*). Thus, those skilled in the art have acknowledged that the techniques of the prior art and the technique of the instant applicant are certainly different. Accordingly, applicants believe that the invention recited in the claims at issue is clearly non-obvious over the references and the rejection should therefore be reconsidered and withdrawn.

Not only do the cited references fail to disclose or suggest the use of the consensus human antibody variable domain for humanization, but they also fail to address other aspects of the instantly claimed invention. In particular, the references fail to describe steps (f) and (g) of claims 1 and 19 of the instant application. These steps instruct the practitioner concerning selection of human FR residues to be replaced with corresponding non-human residues. In particular, non-homologous non-human FR amino acid residue(s) which are expected to non-covalently bind antigen directly, interact with a CDR, or participate in the V_L - V_H interface by affecting the proximity or orientation of the V_L and V_H regions with respect to one another are introduced into the consensus FR. The cited references fail to enable these steps. In particular, EP239,400 does not elaborate in sufficient detail how one would go about selecting non-human FR residues to be incorporated into the humanized antibody. Significantly, no non-human FR residues were transferred in the examples of EP239,400. While Riechmann *et al.* made one and two FR residue mutations to "restore the packing of the loop", this reference fails to describe each of the types of non-homologous residue identified in items (1)-(3) of step (f) of claims 1 and 19 of the instant application. Queen *et al.* also fail to describe the transfer of non-homologous residues which participate in the V_L - V_H interface by affecting the proximity or orientation of the V_L and V_H regions with respect to one another (see step (f)(3) of claims 1 and 19 of the instant application). Hence, the invention recited in claims 1 and 19 is clearly not obvious over the references.

The instantly claimed invention has other novel and non-obvious features. For example, claim 2 and step (h) of claim 19 of the instant application involve retaining consensus residues, where the corresponding non-homologous import residues are exposed of the surface of the consensus human variable domain. The cited references fail to describe anywhere such a step. Claim 4 involves replacing consensus glycosylation sites which are not present in the import sequence with the corresponding non-human residue. The references are silent as to such a step. Similarly, the references fail to describe the additional step of claim 5 of the instant application. Also, the FR residues which can be substituted and are listed in claims 6, 7 and 10 as revised herein are not disclosed or alluded to in the cited references. Thus, applicants submit that the invention recited in the claims of the instant application is clearly non-obvious over the cited references.

Accordingly, applicants request that the above section 103 rejection be reconsidered and withdrawn.

The Rejection Under 35 USC §103 - *In re* Durden

Claims 1, 2, 4-12 and 15 are rejected under 35 USC §103 as being unpatentable over EP239,400 (Winter); Riechmann *et al.* Nature: **332**: 323-327 (1988); and Queen *et al.* PNAS, USA **86**: 10029-10033 (1989) in view of In re Durden 226 USPQ 359 (Fed. Cir. 1985).

The Examiner states that the claimed methods for producing humanized antibodies and humanized antibodies do not appear to differ from what was disclosed in the references. For the

reasons given in the previous section, applicants submit that the instantly claimed methods for humanization and the humanized antibodies are clearly different from what was disclosed in the cited reference, especially with respect to the consensus human variable domain forming the FR of the humanized antibody. Therefore, applicants request that this rejection be reconsidered and withdrawn.

The Rejection Under 35 USC §103 - Claim 3

Claim 3 is rejected under 35 USC §103 as being unpatentable over EP 239,400 (Winter); Riechmann *et al.* Nature: **332**: 323-327 (1988); and Queen *et al.* PNAS, USA **86**: 10029-10033 (1989) as applied to claims 1, 2, 4-12 and 15 and further in view Roitt *et al.*, Immunology Gower Medical Publishing Ltd., London, England, pg. 5.5 (1985). It is the Examiner's position that, since Roitt *et al.* allegedly teaches that antibodies contain carbohydrate residues in the variable region, a person skilled in the art would realize that carbohydrate residues can produce stearic modifications in the folding characteristics of polypeptides. The Examiner concludes that it would have been *prima facie* obvious to carry out the step recited in claim 3.

Applicants submit that the claim 3 is clearly not obvious in light of the cited references. The three primary references have been discussed above. Roitt *et al.* merely shows that IgA1 immunoglobulins may possibly have carbohydrate units in their variable domains. No such carbohydrate or oligosaccharide units are depicted in the diagrams of IgD and IgE variable domains in this reference. This reference is not concerned with antibody humanization, much less the use of a consensus human variable domain for humanization or how to deal with glycosylation sites in humanization. Since claim 3 depends on claim 1 which specifies the use of a consensus human variable domain, and since neither the primary references nor Roitt *et al.* disclose or allude to the use of such a consensus sequence, claim 3 must also be nonobvious over the references. Furthermore, the primary references and Roitt *et al.* fail to address how one would deal with glycosylation sites in the context of humanization. In fact, 4D5 referred to in Example 1 is fairly unusual in that it has a glycosylation site in its variable region (*i.e.* residue number 65 of the light chain). Thus, as far as applicants are aware, the instant application teaches, for the first time, how to deal with glycosylation sites in antibody humanization.

Accordingly, applicants conclude that claim 3 is clearly not obvious in light of the references cited and therefore ask that the §103 rejection be withdrawn.

A copy of a document pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 10.9(b) is attached as proof of the authorization of the undersigned to prosecute the above-mentioned application. The original of this document is on file in the Office of Enrollment and Discipline.

Respectfully submitted,
GENENTECH, INC.

Date: June 9, 1995 By: _____
Wendy M. Lee

460 Pt. San Bruno Blvd.
So. San Francisco, CA 94080-4990
Phone: (415) 225-1994
Fax: (415) 952-9881

Enclosures

U.S. Patent No. 5,147,637
Presta *et al., J. Immunol.* **151**:2623-2632 (1993)
Niman, *Immunodiagnosis of Cancer*, Second Edition, pp. 189-204 (1990)
Watkins *et al., Journal of Immunogenetics* **17**:259-276 (1990)
Campana *et al., The Turkish Journal of Pediatrics* **32**:143-151 (1990)
Verhoef and Torensma, *Eur. J. Clin. Microbiol. Infect. Dis.* **9(4)**:247-250 (1990)
Ellis *et al., Pathology Annual* **25**:193-235 (1990)
Beck *et al., Cancer Biology* **1**:181-188 (1990)
Gerdes, *Cancer Biology* 1:199-206 (1990)
Sims *et al., J. Immunol.* **151(4)**:2296-2308 (1993)
Kolbinger *et al., Protein Engineering* **6**:971-980 (1983)

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
BEFORE THE OFFICE OF ENROLLMENT AND DISCIPLINE

LIMITED RECOGNITION UNDER 37 CFR § 10.9(b)

Wendy M. Lee is hereby given limited recognition under 37 CFR § 10.9(b) as an employee of Genentech, Inc. to prepare and prosecute patent applications and to represent patent applicants wherein Genentech, Inc. is the assigneed of record of the entire interest. This limited recognition shall expire on the date appearing below, or when whichever of the following events first occurs prior to the date appearing below: (i) Wendy M. Lee ceases to lawfully reside in the United States, (ii) Wendy M. Lee's employment with Genentech, Inc. ceases or is terminated, or (iii) if Wendy M. Lee ceases to remain or reside in the United States on a H-1 visa.

This document constitutes proof of such recognition. The original of this document is on file in the Office of Enrollment and Discipline of the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office.

EXPIRES: DECEMBER 9, 1995

Cameron Weiffenbach, Director
Office of Enrollment and Discipline

PATENT DOCKET 709P1

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re Application of

Paul J. Carter et al.

Serial No. 08/146,206

Filed: 17 November 1993

For: METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES

Group Art Unit: 1806

Examiner: D. Adams

CERTIFICATE OF MAILING
I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as first class mail in an envelope addressed to: Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, D.C. 20231 on
8/1/95
(Date of Deposit)
Duane Alexander Vick
Name of Depositing Party
Duane Alexander Vick
Signature of Depositing Party
8/1/95
Date of Signature

SUPPLEMENTAL INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT

BOX DD
Honorable Commissioner of Patents
and Trademarks
Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

Applicants submit herewith patents, publications or other information (attached hereto and listed on the attached Form PTO-1449) of which they are aware, which they believe may be material to the examination of this application and in respect of which there may be a duty to disclose in accordance with 37 CFR §1.56.

RECEIVED
AUG 1 1995
GROUP 1800

This Information Disclosure Statement:

(a) [] accompanies the new patent application submitted herewith. 37 CFR §1.97(a).

(b) [] is filed within three months after the filing date of the application or within three months after the date of entry of the national stage of a PCT application as set forth in 37 CFR§1.491.

(c) [] as far as is known to the undersigned, is filed before the mailing date of a first Office action on the merits.

(d) [X] is filed after the first Office Action and more than three months after the application's filing date or PCT national stage date of entry filing but, as far as is known to the undersigned, prior to the mailing date of either a final rejection or a notice of allowance, whichever occurs first, and is accompanied by either the fee ($210) set forth in 37 CFR §1.17(p) **or** a certification as specified in 37 CFR §1.97(e), as checked below. Should any fee be due, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is hereby authorized to charge Deposit Account No. 07-0630 in the amount of $210.00 to cover the cost of this

Information Disclosure Statement. Any deficiency or overpayment should be charged or credited to this deposit account. **A duplicate of this sheet is enclosed.**

(e) [] is filed after the mailing date of either a final rejection or a notice of allowance, whichever occurred first, and is accompanied by the fee ($130) set forth in 37 CFR §1.17(i)(1) **and** a certification as specified in 37 CFR §1.97(e), as checked below. **This document is to be considered as a petition requesting consideration of the information disclosure statement.** The U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is hereby authorized to charge Deposit Account No. 07-0630 in the amount of $130.00 to cover the cost of this Information Disclosure Statement. Any deficiency or overpayment should be charged or credited to this deposit account. **A duplicate of this sheet is enclosed.**

[If either of boxes (d) or (e) is checked above, the following "certification" under 37 CFR §1.97(e) may need to be completed.] The undersigned certifies that:

[] Each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication mailed from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of this information disclosure statement.

[] No item of information contained in this information disclosure statement was cited in a communication mailed from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application or, to the knowledge of the undersigned after making reasonable inquiry, was known to any individual designated in 37 CFR §1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of this information disclosure statement.

A list of the patent(s) or publication(s) is set forth on the attached Form PTO-1449 (Modified).

A copy of the items on PTO-1449 is supplied herewith:

[X] each [] none [] only those listed below:

Those patent(s) or publication(s) which are marked with an asterisk (*) in the attached PTO-1449 form are not supplied because they were previously cited by or submitted to the Office in a prior application Serial No. , filed and relied upon in this application for an earlier filing date under 35 USC §120.

A concise explanation of relevance of the items listed on PTO-1449 is:

[X] not given

[] given for each listed item

[] given for only non-English language listed item(s) [Required]

[] in the form of an English language copy of a Search Report from a foreign patent office, issued in a counterpart application, which refers to the relevant portions of the references.

The Examiner is reminded that a "concise explanation of the relevance" of the submitted prior art "may be nothing more than identification of the particular figure or paragraph of the patent or publication which has some relation to the claimed invention," MPEP §609.

While the information and references disclosed in this Information Disclosure Statement may be "material" pursuant to 37 CFR §1.56, it is not intended to constitute an admission that any patent, publication or other information referred to therein is "prior art" for this invention unless specifically designated as such.

In accordance with 37 CFR §1.97(g), the filing of this Information Disclosure Statement shall not be construed to mean that a search has been made or that no other material information as defined in 37 CFR §1.56(a) exists. It is submitted that the Information Disclosure Statement is in compliance with 37 CFR §1.98 and MPEP §609 and the Examiner is respectfully requested to consider the listed references.

A copy of a document pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 10.9(b) is attached as proof of the authorization of the undersigned to prosecute the above-mentioned application. The original of this document is on file in the Office of Enrollment and Discipline.

Respectfully submitted,
GENENTECH, INC.

Date: August 1, 1995 By: _____
Wendy M. Lee

460 Pt. San Bruno Blvd.
So. San Francisco, CA 94080-4990
Phone: (415) 225-1994
Fax: (415) 952-9881

FORM PTO-1449

U.S. Dept. of Commerce
Patent and Trademark Office

Atty Docket No.	Serial No.
P0709P1	08/146,206
Applicant	
Carter et al.	
Filing Date	**Group**
17 Nov 1993	1806

LIST OF DISCLOSURES CITED BY APPLICANT

(Use several sheets if necessary)

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials		Document Number	Date	Country	Class	Subclass	Translation Yes	Translation No
MDC	79	WO 92/04381	19.03.92	PCT				
	80	WO 92/05274	02.04.92	PCT				
	81	WO 92/15683	17.09.92	PCT				

Examiner: David E. Adams

Date Considered: 10/25/95

*Examiner: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609; draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

M. T. DAVIS 12/05/01

USCOMM-DC 80-398.

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER OF PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS
Washington, D.C. 20231

SERIAL NUMBER	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.

EXAMINER	
ART UNIT	PAPER NUMBER
	18

DATE MAILED: 10/27/95

This is a communication from the examiner in charge of your application.
COMMISSIONER OF PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS

☒ This application has been examined ☐ Responsive to communication filed on _____ ☒ This action is made final.

A shortened statutory period for response to this action is set to expire 3 month(s), 0 days from the date of this letter.
Failure to respond within the period for response will cause the application to become abandoned. 35 U.S.C. 133

Part I THE FOLLOWING ATTACHMENT(S) ARE PART OF THIS ACTION:

1. ☐ Notice of References Cited by Examiner, PTO-892.
2. ☐ Notice of Draftsman's Patent Drawing Review, PTO-948.
3. ☒ Notice of Art Cited by Applicant, PTO-1449.
4. ☐ Notice of Informal Patent Application, PTO-152.
5. ☐ Information on How to Effect Drawing Changes, PTO-1474.
6. ☐ _____.

Part II SUMMARY OF ACTION

1. ☒ Claims 1-12, 15 & 19-25 are pending in the application.

   Of the above, claims _____ are withdrawn from consideration.

2. ☒ Claims 13, 14 & 16-18 have been cancelled.

3. ☐ Claims _____ are allowed.

4. ☒ Claims 1-12, 15 & 19-25 are rejected.

5. ☐ Claims _____ are objected to.

6. ☐ Claims _____ are subject to restriction or election requirement.

7. ☒ This application has been filed with informal drawings under 37 C.F.R. 1.85 which are acceptable for examination purposes.

8. ☐ Formal drawings are required in response to this Office action.

9. ☐ The corrected or substitute drawings have been received on _____. Under 37 C.F.R. 1.84 these drawings are ☐ acceptable; ☐ not acceptable (see explanation or Notice of Draftsman's Patent Drawing Review, PTO-948).

10. ☐ The proposed additional or substitute sheet(s) of drawings, filed on _____. has (have) been ☐ approved by the examiner; ☐ disapproved by the examiner (see explanation).

11. ☐ The proposed drawing correction, filed _____, has been ☐ approved; ☐ disapproved (see explanation).

12. ☐ Acknowledgement is made of the claim for priority under 35 U.S.C. 119. The certified copy has ☐ been received ☐ not been received ☐ been filed in parent application, serial no. _____ ; filed on _____.

13. ☐ Since this application apppears to be in condition for allowance except for formal matters, prosecution as to the merits is closed in accordance with the practice under Ex parte Quayle, 1935 C.D. 11; 453 O.G. 213.

14. ☐ Other

EXAMINER'S ACTION

PTOL-326 (Rev. 2/93)

15. Claims 16-18 have been cancelled.

16. Claims 13-16 have been cancelled.

17. Applicant attempted to amend a previously non-existent claim, Claim 19. This amendment was not entered into the record. Newly added claims 20-25 were renumbered 19-25.

18. The dependency of the renumbered claims has been changed as follows:

(a) renumbered claim 23, depends from renumbered claim 22;
(b) renumbered claim 24, depends from renumbered claim 23;
(c) renumbered claim 25, depends from renumbered claim 24.

19. Claims 19-25 (renumbered) have been added.

20. Claims 1-12, 15 and 19-25 are currently under consideration.

21. The amendments to page 65 were not entered. The comments referring to these corrections at page 6 of the response are unclear with regard to these amendments. The cited phrases at the page and lines do not exist.

22. This application has been filed with informal drawings which are acceptable for examination purposes only. Formal drawings will be required when the application is allowed. Applicant's request to hold this requirement in abeyance until the application is allowed is acknowledged.

23. Claims 19-21 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. § 112, second paragraph, as being indefinite for failing to particularly point out and distinctly claim the subject matter which applicant regards as the invention. Claims 19-21 are substantial duplicates of claim 1. There appears to be no difference in scope between these claims, see MPEP 706.03(k).

24. The following is a quotation of 35 U.S.C. § 103 which forms the basis for all obviousness rejections set forth in this Office action:

> A patent may not be obtained though the invention is not identically disclosed or described as set forth in section 102 of this title, if the differences between the subject matter sought to be patented and the prior art are such that the subject matter as a whole would have been obvious at the time the invention was made to a person having ordinary skill in the art to which said subject matter pertains. Patentability shall not be negatived by the manner in which the invention was made.

Subject matter developed by another person, which qualifies as prior art only under subsection (f) or (g) of section 102 of this title, shall not preclude patentability under this section where the subject matter and the claimed invention were, at the time the invention was made, owned by the same person or subject to an obligation of assignment to the same person.

25. This application currently names joint inventors. In considering patentability of the claims under 35 U.S.C. § 103, the examiner presumes that the subject matter of the various claims was commonly owned at the time any inventions covered therein were made absent any evidence to the contrary. Applicant is advised of the obligation under 37 C.F.R. § 1.56 to point out the inventor and invention dates of each claim that was not commonly owned at the time a later invention was made in order for the examiner to consider the applicability of potential 35 U.S.C. § 102(f) or (g) prior art under 35 U.S.C. § 103.

26. Claims 1, 2, 4-12, 15, and renumbered claims 19-22 and 24-25 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. § 103 as being unpatentable over Winter [EP 0239400], Riechmann et al. [Nature 332:323-327 (1988)] and Queen et al. [Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 86:10029-10033 (1989)]. Briefly the claims are drawn to a method for producing humanized antibodies and humanized antibodies. Winter, teaches the production of altered, chimeric, antibodies by replacing the complementarily determining regions (CDRs), see abstract. Winter, teaches the requirements for CDR fusions, see page 6 to page 8, line 29. Particularly, page 8, lines 11-18, where Winter, teaches that "merely by replacing one or more CDRs with complementary CDRs may not always result in a functional altered antibody..... it will be well within the competence of the man skilled in the art, either by carrying out routine experimentation or by trail and error testing to obtain a functional altered antibody. Note at page 8, last full paragraph that Winter states that framework region replacement and sequence changing may be necessary to obtain a functional humanized antibody. On page 9, lines 13-16, Winter suggests that the antibodies would be of importance for use in human therapy. Winter, teaches a method of producing the antibody, see page 10, paragraph 3 to page 15, paragraph 2. Consistent with Winter, Riechmann et al. teach a method of reshaping human antibodies for therapy by CDR grafting, see whole document and Queen et al. teach the humanization of antibodies by CDR grafting, see entire document. Riechmann et al. teach altering the sequence of the antibody to restore packing or to increase binding affinity, see page 326, first column, first full paragraph. Queen et al. teach the use of computer modeling to assist in the production of humanized antibodies, specifically to predict which amino acids to change thereby effecting molecular interactions, note that of

the amino acids predicted to change include those identified by applicant in claims 7 and 10. A person of ordinary skill in the art would have realized that dependent upon the framework region selected and the sequence of the CDR regions amino acid changes would need to be made and they would depend upon the precise amino acid interactions of the polypeptide. The combination of Winter, Riechmann et al. and Queen et al. teach a comprehensive method for producing humanized antibodies which include the steps outlined in applicant's claims. Therefore, it would have been prima facia obvious to a person of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to take the combined teachings of Winter, Riechmann et al. and Queen et al. to produce a method of making a humanized antibody and to have a humanized antibody for either diagnostic or therapeutic use.

> *Applicant argues that the claimed invention is distinct from that taught by the above combination of references because a consensus sequence is used and further modifications are not necessary. Applicant further argues that the combination of references do not teach a humanized antibody with reduced immunogenicity.*

Regarding the consensus sequence, the combination of references teach the human framework regions having a significantly high degree of sequence homology (conservative regions). Queen et al. in particular point to Kabat as demonstrating that this was known in the art well in advance of applicant's filing date, see reference 38, cited by Queen et al. In essence there is no functional/structural distinction from what applicant has claimed and that taught by the combination of references. Ex parte C, 27 U.S.P.Q.2d 1492 (BPAI 1993). Applicants recitation of Co et al. is unclear, it was not used in the prior art rejection. Applicant then points to several other references concluding that the techniques of the prior art and the technique of the instant application are "certainly different". However, the minor differences between the prior art and the claimed invention are obvious differences. Modifications in the framework regions which affect the proximity or orientation of the V_L-V_H interface regions is the same as substituting that FR residue from the import regions that is involved in the effects set forth in paragraph (f) of claim 1. The combination of references clearly teach reduced immunogenicity associated with the humanized antibody. See e.g. Riechmann et al. page 323, column 2, lines 5-8. Applicant's comments have been fully considered and were as a whole not found persuasive.

27. Claims 1, 2, 4-12 and 15, and renumbered claims 19-22 and 24-25 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. § 103 as being unpatentable over Winter [EP 0239400], Riechmann et al. [Nature 332:323-327 (1988)] and Queen et al. [Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 86:10029-10033

(1989)] in view of In re Durden 226 U.S.P.Q. 359 (Fed. Cir. 1985). Briefly the claims are drawn to a method for producing humanized antibodies and humanized antibodies. As discussed above the combination of Winter, Riechmann et al. and Queen et al. teach humanized antibodies and methods for their production. Applicant's claimed invention does not appear to differ from what has previously known in the art.

Applicant cites the above comments in their response to this rejection.

Applicant's comments were fully considered as described above and were not found persuasive, to the extent that they apply to this rejection.

28. Claim 3 and renumbered claim 23 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. § 103 as being unpatentable over Winter [EP 0239400], Riechmann et al. [Nature 332:323-327 (1988)] and Queen et al. [Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 86:10029-10033 (1989)] as applied to claims 1, 2, 4-12 and 15 and further in view of Roitt [Immunology, published 1985, by Gower Medical Publishing Ltd. (London, England) page 5.5]. Briefly the claim is drawn to a method for producing humanized antibodies having the additional steps of searching the import variable domain sequence for glycosylation sites, determining if any such glycosylation site is reasonable expected to affect the antigen binding or affinity of the antibody and if so substituting the glycosylation site into the consensus sequence. As discussed above the combination of Winter, Riechmann et al. and Queen et al. teach humanized antibodies and methods of producing humanized antibodies. The combination of Winter, Riechmann et al. and Queen et al. do not teach the importance of carbohydrate residues. However, Roitt teaches that antibodies contain carbohydrate residues in the variable region. A person of ordinary skill in the art would realize that carbohydrate residues can produce steric modifications in the folding characteristics of polypeptides. Therefore it would have been prima facia obvious to a person of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to include a step in the method taught by the combination of Winter, Riechmann et al. and Queen et al. which determines if the presence of carbohydrate residues occur in the variable region that can affect antigen binding and then include in the antibody sequence the appropriate glycosylation signal, by adding the appropriate consensus sequence. A person of ordinary skill in the art would have been motivated to add the additional step of identifying glycosylation that may affect antigen binding to ensure that the antibody produced will have the appropriate binding affinity. A person of ordinary skill in the art would have been motivated to produce such an method to produce antibodies having diagnostic or therapeutic utility.

The bulk of applicant's argument is that the references relied on in the above rejection do not render the invention obvious and Roitt adds nothing to these references to overcome the deficiency.

From the above discussion, the references used render the claimed invention obvious. Roitt fulfills the deficiency of the references discussed above to the extent that Roitt teaches antibodies contain carbohydrate residues in the variable region. A person of ordinary skill in the art would realize that carbohydrate residues can produce steric modifications in the folding characteristics of polypeptides.

29. Applicant's deposit account has been charged for the information disclosure statements. References 2, 6, 55-57 and 73 were lined through since they were previously made of record in this application. All other references cited on applicant's 1449 form were not received by the Office and therefore were not considered.

30. No claim allowed.

31. Applicant's amendment necessitated the new grounds of rejection. Accordingly, **THIS ACTION IS MADE FINAL.** See M.P.E.P. § 706.07(a). Applicant is reminded of the extension of time policy as set forth in 37 C.F.R. § 1.136(a).

A SHORTENED STATUTORY PERIOD FOR RESPONSE TO THIS FINAL ACTION IS SET TO EXPIRE THREE MONTHS FROM THE DATE OF THIS ACTION. IN THE EVENT A FIRST RESPONSE IS FILED WITHIN TWO MONTHS OF THE MAILING DATE OF THIS FINAL ACTION AND THE ADVISORY ACTION IS NOT MAILED UNTIL AFTER THE END OF THE THREE-MONTH SHORTENED STATUTORY PERIOD, THEN THE SHORTENED STATUTORY PERIOD WILL EXPIRE ON THE DATE THE ADVISORY ACTION IS MAILED, AND ANY EXTENSION FEE PURSUANT TO 37 C.F.R. § 1.136(a) WILL BE CALCULATED FROM THE MAILING DATE OF THE ADVISORY ACTION. IN NO EVENT WILL THE STATUTORY PERIOD FOR RESPONSE EXPIRE LATER THAN SIX MONTHS FROM THE DATE OF THIS FINAL ACTION.

32. Papers related to this application may be submitted to Group 180 by facsimile transmission. Papers should be faxed to Group 180 via the PTO Fax Center located in Crystal Mall 1. The faxing of such papers must conform with the notice published in the Official Gazette, 1096 OG 30 (November 15, 1989). The CM1 Fax Center telephone number is (703) 308-4227.

33. Any inquiry concerning this communication or earlier communications from the examiner should be directed to Donald E. Adams whose telephone number is (703) 308-0570. The examiner can normally be reached Monday through Thursday from 7:30 to 6:00. A

message may be left on the examiners voice mail service. If attempts to reach the examiner by telephone are unsuccessful, the examiner's supervisor, Ms. Margaret Moskowitz Parr can be reached at (703) 308-2554. The fax phone number for Group 1806 is (703) 305-7401. Any inquiry of a general nature or relating to the status of this application should be directed to the Group 180 receptionist whose telephone number is (703) 308-0196.

October 25, 1995

Donald E. Adams, Ph.D.
Primary Examiner
Group 1800

Patent Docket P0709P1

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re Application of **Carter et al.** Serial No.: 08/146,206 Filed: November 17, 1993 For: **METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES**	Group Art Unit: 1816 1851 Examiner: D. Adams 1801 CERTIFICATE OF HAND DELIVERY I hereby certify that this correspondence is being delivered to Examiner D. Adams of the United States Patents and Trademarks, Washington, D.C. 20231 on December 8, 1995 Signature Printed Name:

ASSOCIATE POWER OF ATTORNEY (37 CFR 1.34)

RECEIVED
DEC 08 1995
GROUP 1800

Honorable Commissioner of Patents
and Trademarks
Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

Please recognize as Associate Attorney in this case:

Wendy M. Lee*

Please direct all communications relative to said pending patent application to the following address:

Genentech, Inc.
460 Point San Bruno Boulevard
South San Francisco, CA 94080
Telephone: (415) 225-1994

*A copy of a document pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 10.9(b) is attached as proof of the authorization of the undersigned to prosecute the above-mentioned application. The original of this document is on file in the Office of Enrollment and Discipline.

Respectfully submitted,
GENENTECH, INC.

Date: December 7, 1995

By: Janet E. Hasak
Janet E. Hasak
Reg. No. 28,616

460 Pt. San Bruno Blvd.
So. San Francisco, CA 94080-4990
Phone: (415) 225-1896
Fax: (415) 952-9881

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Patent and Trademark Office
ASSISTANT SECRETARY AND COMMISSIONER
OF PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS
Washington, D.C. 20231

LIMITED RECOGNITION UNDER 37 CFR § 10.9(b)

Wendy M. Lee is hereby given limited recognition under 37 CFR § 10.9(b) as an employee of Genentech, Inc., to prepare and prosecute patent applications and to represent patent applicants wherein Genentech, Inc., is the assignee of record of the entire interest. This limited recognition shall expire on the date appearing below, or when whichever of the following events first occurs prior to July 15, 1996: (i) Wendy M. Lee ceases to lawfully reside in the United States, (ii) Wendy M. Lee's employment with Genentech, Inc., ceases or is terminated, or (iii) Wendy M. Lee ceases to remain or reside in the United States on a H-1B visa.

This document constitutes proof of such recognition. The original of this document is on file in the Office of Enrollment and Discipline of the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office.

Expires: July 15, 1996

Karen L. Bovard, Director
Office of Enrollment and Discipline

#19
Tina Plunkett
12/26/95

Patent Docket P0709P1

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re Application of **Carter et al.** Serial No.: 08/146,206 Filed: November 17, 1993 For: **METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES**	Group Art Unit: 1816 Examiner: D. Adams CERTIFICATE OF HAND DELIVERY I hereby certify that this correspondence is being delivered to Examiner D. Adams, examining group 1816, of the United States Patents and Trademarks, Washington, D.C. 20231 on December ___, 1995 Signature Printed Name:

MAILED
DEC 26 1995
GROUP 1800

TRANSMITTAL LETTER

Honorable Commissioner of Patents
and Trademarks
Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

Applicants submit herewith, courtesy copies of the previously filed Information Disclosure Statement, PTO-1449 with 78 references and a copy of the date stamped postcard indicating receipt of these documents and references by the United States Patent and Trademark Office on April 17, 1995.

In view of the outstanding FINAL office action, Applicants provide these references by hand delivery to expedite their consideration by the Examiner. While the fee for filing these documents has already been paid, should there be any additional fees associated with the deposit of these documents with the Examiner, the Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge deposit account 07-0630 for said fees.

A copy of a document pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 10.9(b) is attached as proof of the authorization of the undersigned to prosecute the above-mentioned application. The original of this document is on file in the Office of Enrollment and Discipline.

Respectfully submitted,
GENENTECH, INC.

Date: December 7, 1995

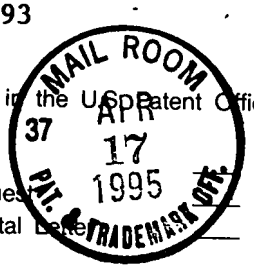
By: _____
Wendy M. Lee

460 Pt. San Bruno Blvd.
So. San Francisco, CA 94080-4990
Phone: (415) 225-1994
Fax: (415) 952-9881

In re Application of: Carter and Presta
Serial No. 08/1 ,206
Filed on 17 N. ember 1993
Mailed on 13 April 1995

Docket No. P0709P1
By: W ly M. Lee
Reg.

J.T.



The following has been received in the U.S. Patent Office on the date stamped:

___	Amendment/Response	___	U.S. Patent Application
___	Extension of Time Request	___	Rule 60 ___ Rule 62
___	Communication/Transmittal Letter	___	Declaration/ Power of Attorney
___	Notice of Appeal	___	Assignment
___	Issue Fee Transmittal Form	___	Drawings: ___ Sheets
X	Information Disclosure Statement	___	___ Informal ___ Formal
X	Form 1449 with 78 References	___	Sequence Listing & Diskette
X	Certificate of Mailing	___	PCT Patent Application
___	Express Mail No. _____		

X Other Limited Recognition Under 37 CFR 10.9(b)

PATENT DOCKET P0709P1

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

#19 +Dec

In re Application of

Carter and Presta

Serial No. 08/146,206

Filed: 17 November 1993

For: METHOD OF MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES

Group Art Unit: 1806

Examiner: ADAMS, D.

CERTIFICATE OF MAILING

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as first class mail in an envelope addressed to: Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, D.C. 20231 on

13 April 1995
(Date of Deposit)

Aida A. Miclat
Name of Depositing Party

Aida A. Miclat
Signature of Depositing Party

13 April 1995
Date of Signature

MAILED

DEC 26 1995

GROUP 1800

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT

Honorable Commissioner of Patents
and Trademarks
Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

Applicants submit herewith patents, publications or other information (attached hereto and listed on the attached Form PTO-1449) of which they are aware, which they believe may be material to the examination of this application and in respect of which there may be a duty to disclose in accordance with 37 CFR §1.56.

This Information Disclosure Statement:

(a) [] accompanies the new patent application submitted herewith. 37 CFR §1.97(a).

(b) [] is filed within three months after the filing date of the application or within three months after the date of entry of the national stage of a PCT application as set forth in 37 CFR§1.491.

(c) [] as far as is known to the undersigned, is filed before the mailing date of a first Office action on the merits.

(d) [x] is filed after the first Office Action and more than three months after the application's filing date or PCT national stage date of entry filing but, as far as is known to the undersigned, prior to the mailing date of either a final rejection or a notice of allowance, whichever occurs first, and is accompanied by either the fee ($210) set forth in 37 CFR §1.17(p) or a certification as specified in 37 CFR §1.97(e), as checked below. Should any fee be due, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is hereby authorized to charge Deposit Account No. 07-0630 in the amount of $210.00 to cover the cost of this Information Disclosure Statement. Any deficiency or overpayment should be charged or credited to this deposit account. **A duplicate of this sheet is enclosed**.

(e) [] is filed after the mailing date of either a final rejection or a notice of allowance, whichever occurred first, and is accompanied by the fee ($130) set forth in 37 CFR §1.17(i)(1) and a certification as specified in 37 CFR §1.97(e), as checked below. **This document is to be considered as a petition requesting consideration of the information disclosure statement.**

[If either of boxes (d) or (e) is checked above, the following "certification" under 37 CFR §1.97(e) may need to be completed.] The undersigned certifies that:

[] Each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication mailed from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of this information disclosure statement.

[] No item of information contained in this information disclosure statement was cited in a communication mailed from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application or, to the knowledge of the undersigned after making reasonable inquiry, was known to any individual designated in 37 CFR §1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of this information disclosure statement.

A list of the patent(s) or publication(s) is set forth on the attached Form PTO-1449 (Modified).

A copy of the items on PTO-1449 is supplied herewith:

[x] each [] none [] only those listed below:

Those patent(s) or publication(s) which are marked with an asterisk (*) in the attached PTO-1449 form are not supplied because they were previously cited by or submitted to the Office in a prior application Serial No. , filed and relied upon in this application for an earlier filing date under 35 USC §120.

A concise explanation of relevance of the items listed on PTO-1449 is:

[x] not given

[] given for each listed item

[] given for only non-English language listed item(s) [Required]

[] in the form of an English language copy of a Search Report from a foreign patent office, issued in a counterpart application, which refers to the relevant portions of the references.

The Examiner is reminded that a "concise explanation of the relevance" of the submitted prior art "may be nothing more than identification of the particular figure or paragraph of the patent or publication which has some relation to the claimed invention," MPEP §609.

While the information and references disclosed in this Information Disclosure Statement may be "material" pursuant to 37 CFR §1.56, it is not intended to constitute an admission that any patent, publication or other information referred to therein is "prior art" for this invention unless specifically designated as such.

In accordance with 37 CFR §1.97(b), the filing of this Information Disclosure Statement shall not be construed to mean that a search has been made or that no other material information as defined in 37 CFR §1.56(a) exists. It is submitted that the Information Disclosure Statement is in compliance with 37 CFR §1.98 and MPEP §609 and the Examiner is respectfully requested to consider the listed references.

A copy of a document pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 10.9(b) is attached as proof of the authorization of the undersigned to prosecute the above-mentioned application. The original of this document is on file in the Office of Enrollment and Discipline.

Respectfully submitted,
GENENTECH, INC.

Date: April 13, 1995

By: _____
Wendy M. Lee

460 Pt. San Bruno Blvd.
So. San Francisco, CA 94080-4990
Phone: (415) 225-1994
Fax: (415) 952-9881

GP 1816

#23 C. Griffin 4/24/96

Patent Docket P0709P1

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re Application of **Carter et al.** Serial No.: 08/146,206 Filed: November 17, 1993 For: **METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES**	Group Art Unit: 1816 Examiner: D. Adams CERTIFICATE OF MAILING I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as first class mail in an envelope addressed to: Assistant Commissioner of Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231 on March 27, 1996 Susan Tafoya

NOTICE OF APPEAL

Box AF
Assistant Commissioner of Patents
Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

Applicant hereby appeals to the Board of Appeals and Interferences from the decision dated October 27, 1995, of the Primary Examiner finally rejecting claims 1-12, 15 and 19-25.

The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge Deposit Account No. 07-0630 in the amount of $290 to cover the fees for this appeal and to charge the deposit account for any further fees in regard to this patent application. A duplicate copy of this Notice is enclosed for this purpose.

A copy of a document pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 10.9(b) is attached as proof of the authorization of the undersigned to prosecute the above-mentioned application. The original of this document is on file in the Office of Enrollment and Discipline.

Respectfully submitted,
GENENTECH, INC.

Date: March 27, 1996

By: _____
Wendy M. Lee

460 Pt. San Bruno Blvd.
So. San Francisco, CA 94080-4990
Phone: (415) 225-1994
Fax: (415) 952-9881

Corres. and Mail
BOX AF

#22

Patent Docket P0709P1 4/24/96

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re Application of **Carter et al.** Serial No.: 08/146,206 Filed: November 17, 1993 For: **METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES**	Group Art Unit: 1816 Examiner: D. Adams CERTIFICATE OF MAILING I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as first class mail in an envelope addressed to: Assistant Commissioner of Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231 on March 27, 1996 Susan Tafoya

RECEIVED APR 11 1996

PETITION AND FEE FOR TWO MONTH EXTENSION OF TIME
(37 CFR 1.136(a))

Box AF
Assistant Commissioner of Patents
Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

Applicant petitions the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks to extend the time for response to the Final Office Action dated October 27, 1995 for two (2) months, from January 27, 1996 to March 27, 1996. The extended time for response does not exceed the statutory period.

Please charge Deposit Account No. 07-0630 in the amount of $380.00 to cover the cost of the extension. Any deficiency or overpayment should be charged or credited to this deposit account. A duplicate of this sheet is enclosed.

A copy of a document pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 10.9(b) is attached as proof of the authorization of the undersigned to prosecute the above-mentioned application. The original of this document is on file in the Office of Enrollment and Discipline.

Respectfully submitted,
GENENTECH, INC.

Date: March 27, 1996

By: _____
Wendy M. Lee

460 Pt. San Bruno Blvd.
So. San Francisco, CA 94080-4990
Phone: (415) 225-1994
Fax: (415) 952-9881

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Patent and Trademark Office
ASSISTANT SECRETARY AND COMMISSIONER
OF PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS
Washington, D.C. 20231

LIMITED RECOGNITION UNDER 37 CFR § 10.9(b)

Wendy M. Lee is hereby given limited recognition under 37 CFR § 10.9(b) as an employee of Genentech, Inc., to prepare and prosecute patent applications and to represent patent applicants wherein Genentech, Inc., is the assignee of record of the entire interest. This limited recognition shall expire on the date appearing below, or when whichever of the following events first occurs prior to July 15, 1996: (i) Wendy M. Lee ceases to lawfully reside in the United States, (ii) Wendy M. Lee's employment with Genentech, Inc., ceases or is terminated, or (iii) Wendy M. Lee ceases to remain or reside in the United States on a H-1B visa.

This document constitutes proof of such recognition. The original of this document is on file in the Office of Enrollment and Discipline of the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office.

Expires: July 15, 1996

Karen L. Bovard, Director
Office of Enrollment and Discipline

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER OF PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS
Washington, D.C. 20231

SERIAL NUMBER	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED APPLICANT	ATTORNEY DOCKETT NO.

EXAMINER	
ART UNIT	PAPER NUMBER
	21

DATE MAILED:

EXAMINER INTERVIEW SUMMARY RECORD

All participants (applicant, applicant's representative, PTO personnel):

(1) Ms Wendy M. Lee (3) _____

(2) Donald E Adams (4) _____

Date of Interview 4/8/96

Type: ☐ Telephonic ☒ Personal (copy is given to ☐ applicant ☒ applicant's representative).

Exhibit shown or demonstration conducted: ☐ Yes ☐ No. If yes, brief description: N/A

Agreement ☐ was reached with respect to some or all of the claims in question. ☒ was not reached.

Claims discussed: All generally

Identification of prior art discussed: All cited Art.

Description of the general nature of what was agreed to if an agreement was reached, or any other comments: discussed problems w/spec-identified a difference in format between PTO & Generated copies. Discussed Kabat Consensus Sequence & How The method taught by prior art refs teach away from using A Consensus Sequence. Suggested adding claim 19 originally not entered as a new claim #26 & Correcting all previous dependency on claim 19 To claim 26

(A fuller description, if necessary, and a copy of the amendments, if available, which the examiner agreed would render the claims allowable must be attached. Also, where no copy of the amendments which would render the claims allowable is available, a summary thereof must be attached.)

☐ 1. It is not necessary for applicant to provide a separate record of the substance of the interview.

Unless the paragraph below has been checked to indicate to the contrary, A FORMAL WRITTEN RESPONSE TO THE LAST OFFICE ACTION IS NOT WAIVED AND MUST INCLUDE THE SUBSTANCE OF THE INTERVIEW (e.g., items 1-7 on the reverse side of this form). If a response to the last Office action has already been filed, then applicant is given one month from this interview date to provide a statement of the substance of the interview.

☐ 2. Since the examiner's interview summary above (including any attachments) reflects a complete response to each of the objections, rejections and requirements that may be present in the last Office action, and since the claims are now allowable, this completed form is considered to fulfill the response requirements of the last Office action. Applicant is not relieved from providing a separate record of the substance of the interview unless box 1 above is also checked.

Donald E Adams
Examiner's Signature

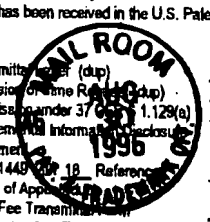
PTOL-413 (REV. 2 -93)

ORIGINAL FOR INSERTION IN RIGHT HAND FLAP OF FILE WRAPPER

In re Application of: Paul J. Carter et al.
Serial No.: 08/146,206
Filed On: 17 November 1993
Mailed On: 27 August 1996

Docket No.: P0709P1
By: Wendy M. Lee
Reg. No.: P-40,378

The following has been received in the U.S. Patent Office on the date stamped:



X	Transmittal Letter (dup)	___	Notice To File Missing Parts (dup)
X	Extension of Time Request (dup)	___	Declaration/Power of Atty
X	Submission under 37 CFR 1.129(a)	___	Assignment
X	Supplemental Information Disclosure Statement	___	Recordation Form
X	Form 1449/PTO 1__ References	___	Drawings: __ Sheets ___ Informal ___ Formal
___	Notice of Appeal	___	Certificate re: Sequence Listing
___	Issue Fee Transmittal	___	Sequence Listing & Diskette
X	Certificate of Mailing	___	Fees: $__
___	Certificate of Express Mailing Express Mail Label No.:	___	Other:

Patent Docket P0709P1

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re Application of Paul J. Carter et al. Serial No.: 08/146,206 Filed: November 17, 1993 For: METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES	Group Art Unit: 1816 Examiner: D. Adams CERTIFICATE OF MAILING I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service with sufficient postage as first class mail in an envelope addressed to: Assistant Commissioner of Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231 on August 27, 1996 Duane Alexander Vick Duane Alexander Vick

SUBMISSION UNDER 37 CFR §1.129(a)

Assistant Commissioner of Patents
Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

The accompanying papers are being filed in response to the Office Action mailed October 27, 1995 issuing a final rejection of the claims pending in the application. On March 27, 1996, Applicants filed a Notice of Appeal. Submitted herewith is a three month extension of time for making this submission.

The present submission, in the form of a Supplemental Information Disclosure Statement, is being submitted under Section 1.129(a) along with the fee set forth in Section 1.17(r).

Respectfully submitted,
GENENTECH, INC.

Date: August 27, 1996

By: _____
Wendy M. Lee
Reg. No. P-40,378

460 Pt. San Bruno Blvd.
So. San Francisco, CA 94080 4990
Phone: (415) 225-1994
Fax: (415) 952-9881

Patent Docket P0709P1

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re Application of Paul J. Carter et al. Serial No.: 08/146,206 Filed: November 17, 1993 For: METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES	Group Art Unit: 1816 Examiner: D. Adams CERTIFICATE OF MAILING I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service with sufficient postage as first class mail in an envelope addressed to: Assistant Commissioner of Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231 on August 27, 1996 Duane Alexander Vick Duane Alexander Vick

SUPPLEMENTAL INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT

Assistant Commissioner of Patents
Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

Applicants submit herewith patents, publications or other information (attached hereto and listed on the attached Form PTO-1449) of which they are aware, which they believe may be material to the examination of this application and in respect of which there may be a duty to disclose in accordance with 37 CFR §1.56.

This Information Disclosure Statement:

(a) [] accompanies the new patent application submitted herewith. 37 CFR §1.97(a).

(b) [] is filed within three months after the filing date of the application or within three months after the date of entry of the national stage of a PCT application as set forth in 37 CFR§1.491.

(c) [] as far as is known to the undersigned, is filed before the mailing date of a first Office action on the merits.

(d) [] is filed after the first Office Action and more than three months after the application's filing date or PCT national stage date of entry filing but, as far as is known to the undersigned, prior to the mailing date of either a final rejection or a notice of allowance, whichever occurs first, and is accompanied by either the fee ($220) set forth in 37 CFR §1.17(p) or a certification as specified in 37 CFR §1.97(e), as checked below. Should any fee be due, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is hereby authorized to charge Deposit Account No. 07-0630 in the amount of $220.00 to cover the cost of this Information Disclosure Statement. Any deficiency or overpayment should be charged or credited to this deposit account. **A duplicate of this sheet is enclosed.**

Revised (10/20/95)

(c) [] is filed after the mailing date of either a final rejection or a notice of allowance, whichever occurred first, and is accompanied by the fee ($130) set forth in 37 CFR §1.17(i)(1) and a certification as specified in 37 CFR §1.97(e), as checked below. **This document is to be considered as a petition requesting consideration of the information disclosure statement.** The U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is hereby authorized to charge Deposit Account No. 07-0630 in the amount of $130.00 to cover the cost of this Information Disclosure Statement. Any deficiency or overpayment should be charged or credited to this deposit account. **A duplicate of this sheet is enclosed.**

(d) [X] is filed after the mailing date of a final rejection, but a request to withdraw the finality thereof under 37 CFR § 1.129(a) is submitted herewith. The U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is hereby authorized to charge Deposit Account No. 07-0630 to cover the cost of this Information Disclosure Statement in the event that any fees are due. **A duplicate of this sheet is enclosed.**

[If either of boxes (d) or (e) is checked above, the following "certification" under 37 CFR §1.97(e) may need to be completed.] The undersigned certifies that:

[] Each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication mailed from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of this information disclosure statement.

[] No item of information contained in this information disclosure statement was cited in a communication mailed from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application or, to the knowledge of the undersigned after making reasonable inquiry, was known to any individual designated in 37 CFR §1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of this information disclosure statement.

A list of the patent(s) or publication(s) is set forth on the attached Form PTO-1449 (Modified).

A copy of the items on PTO-1449 is supplied herewith:

[X] each [] none [] only those listed below:

Those patent(s) or publication(s) which are marked with an asterisk (*) in the attached PTO-1449 form are not supplied because they were previously cited by or submitted to the Office in a prior application Serial No. 07/715,272, filed 14 June 1991 and relied upon in this application for an earlier filing date under 35 USC §120.

A concise explanation of relevance of the items listed on PTO-1449 is:

[X] not given

[] given for each listed item

[] given for only non-English language listed item(s) [Required]

[] in the form of an English language copy of a Search Report from a foreign patent office, issued in a counterpart application, which refers to the relevant portions of the references.

Revised (10/20/95)

The Examiner is reminded that a "concise explanation of the relevance" of the submitted prior art "may be nothing more than identification of the particular figure or paragraph of the patent or publication which has some relation to the claimed invention," MPEP §609.

While the information and references disclosed in this Information Disclosure Statement may be "material" pursuant to 37 CFR §1.56, it is not intended to constitute an admission that any patent, publication or other information referred to therein is "prior art" for this invention unless specifically designated as such.

In accordance with 37 CFR §1.97(g), the filing of this Information Disclosure Statement shall not be construed to mean that a search has been made or that no other material information as defined in 37 CFR §1.56(a) exists. It is submitted that the Information Disclosure Statement is in compliance with 37 CFR §1.98 and MPEP §609 and the Examiner is respectfully requested to consider the listed references.

Respectfully submitted,
GENENTECH, INC.

Date: August 27, 1996

By: _____
Wendy M. Lee
Reg. No. P-40,378

460 Pt. San Bruno Blvd.
So. San Francisco, CA 94080-4990
Phone: (415) 225-1994
Fax: (415) 952-9881

Patent Docket P0709P1

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re Application of Paul J. Carter et al. Serial No.: 08/146,206 Filed: November 17, 1993 For: METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES	Group Art Unit: 1816 Examiner: D. Adams CERTIFICATE OF MAILING I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service with sufficient postage as first class mail in an envelope addressed to: Assistant Commissioner of Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231 on August 27, 1996 Duane Alexander Vick Duane Alexander Vick

PETITION AND FEE FOR THREE MONTH EXTENSION OF TIME
(37 CFR 1.136(a))

Assistant Commissioner of Patents
Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

Applicant petitions the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks to extend the time for response to the Notice of Appeal dated 3/27/96 for 3 month(s) from 5/27/96 to 8/27/96. The extended time for response does not exceed the statutory period.

Please charge Deposit Account No. 07-0630 in the amount of $ 900.00 to cover the cost of the extension. Any deficiency or overpayment should be charged or credited to this deposit account. A duplicate of this sheet is enclosed.

Respectfully submitted,
GENENTECH, INC.

Date: August 27, 1996

By: _____
Wendy M. Lee
Reg. No. P-40,378

460 Pt. San Bruno Blvd.
So. San Francisco, CA 94080-4990
Phone: (415) 225-1994
Fax: (415) 952-9881

Revised (10/17/96)

GP 1816
#29
Plunkett
9/14/96

Patent Docket P0709P1

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re Application of Paul J. Carter et al. Serial No.: 08/146,206 Filed: November 17, 1993 For: METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES	Group Art Unit: 1816 Examiner: D. Adams RECEIVED SEP 10 1996 GROUP 1800 CERTIFICATE OF MAILING I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service with sufficient postage as first class mail in an envelope addressed to: Assistant Commissioner of Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231 on August 27, 1996 Duane Alexander Vick Duane Alexander Vick

SUPPLEMENTAL INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT

Assistant Commissioner of Patents
Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

Applicants submit herewith patents, publications or other information (attached hereto and listed on the attached Form PTO-1449) of which they are aware, which they believe may be material to the examination of this application and in respect of which there may be a duty to disclose in accordance with 37 CFR §1.56.

This Information Disclosure Statement:

(a) [] accompanies the new patent application submitted herewith. 37 CFR §1.97(a).

(b) [] is filed within three months after the filing date of the application or within three months after the date of entry of the national stage of a PCT application as set forth in 37 CFR§1.491.

(c) [] as far as is known to the undersigned, is filed before the mailing date of a first Office action on the merits.

(d) [] is filed after the first Office Action and more than three months after the application's filing date or PCT national stage date of entry filing but, as far as is known to the undersigned, prior to the mailing date of either a final rejection or a notice of allowance, whichever occurs first, and is accompanied by either the fee ($220) set forth in 37 CFR §1.17(p) **or** a certification as specified in 37 CFR §1.97(e), as checked below. Should any fee be due, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is hereby authorized to charge Deposit Account No. 07-0630 in the amount of $220.00 to cover the cost of this Information Disclosure Statement. Any deficiency or overpayment should be charged or credited to this deposit account. **A duplicate of this sheet is enclosed.**

Revised (10/20/95)

(e) [] is filed after the mailing date of either a final rejection or a notice of allowance, whichever occurred first, and is accompanied by the fee ($130) set forth in 37 CFR §1.17(i)(1) **and** a certification as specified in 37 CFR §1.97(e), as checked below. **This document is to be considered as a petition requesting consideration of the information disclosure statement.** The U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is hereby authorized to charge Deposit Account No. 07-0630 in the amount of $130.00 to cover the cost of this Information Disclosure Statement. Any deficiency or overpayment should be charged or credited to this deposit account. **A duplicate of this sheet is enclosed.**

(f) [X] is filed after the mailing date of a final rejection, but a request to withdraw the finality thereof under 37 CFR § 1.129(a) is submitted herewith. The U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is hereby authorized to charge Deposit Account No. 07-0630 to cover the cost of this Information Disclosure Statement in the event that any fees are due. **A duplicate of this sheet is enclosed.**

[If either of boxes (d) or (e) is checked above, the following "certification" under 37 CFR §1.97(e) may need to be completed.] The undersigned certifies that:

[] Each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication mailed from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of this information disclosure statement.

[] No item of information contained in this information disclosure statement was cited in a communication mailed from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application or, to the knowledge of the undersigned after making reasonable inquiry, was known to any individual designated in 37 CFR §1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of this information disclosure statement.

A list of the patent(s) or publication(s) is set forth on the attached Form PTO-1449 (Modified).

A copy of the items on PTO-1449 is supplied herewith:

[X] each [] none [] only those listed below:

Those patent(s) or publication(s) which are marked with an asterisk (*) in the attached PTO-1449 form are not supplied because they were previously cited by or submitted to the Office in a prior application Serial No. 07/715,272, filed 14 June 1991 and relied upon in this application for an earlier filing date under 35 USC §120.

A concise explanation of relevance of the items listed on PTO-1449 is:

[X] not given

[] given for each listed item

[] given for only non-English language listed item(s) [Required]

[] in the form of an English language copy of a Search Report from a foreign patent office, issued in a counterpart application, which refers to the relevant portions of the references.

Revised (10/20/95)

The Examiner is reminded that a "concise explanation of the relevance" of the submitted prior art "may be nothing more than identification of the particular figure or paragraph of the patent or publication which has some relation to the claimed invention," MPEP §609.

While the information and references disclosed in this Information Disclosure Statement may be "material" pursuant to 37 CFR §1.56, it is not intended to constitute an admission that any patent, publication or other information referred to therein is "prior art" for this invention unless specifically designated as such.

In accordance with 37 CFR §1.97(g), the filing of this Information Disclosure Statement shall not be construed to mean that a search has been made or that no other material information as defined in 37 CFR §1.56(a) exists. It is submitted that the Information Disclosure Statement is in compliance with 37 CFR §1.98 and MPEP §609 and the Examiner is respectfully requested to consider the listed references.

Respectfully submitted,
GENENTECH, INC.

Date: August 27, 1996 By: _____
Wendy M. Lee
Reg. No. P-40,378

460 Pt. San Bruno Blvd.
So. San Francisco, CA 94080-4990
Phone: (415) 225-1994
Fax: (415) 952-9881

Patent Docket P0709P1

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re Application of Paul J. Carter et al. Serial No.: 08/146,206 Filed: November 17, 1993 For: METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES	Group Art Unit: 1816 Examiner: D. Adams CERTIFICATE OF MAILING I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service with sufficient postage as first class mail in an envelope addressed to: Assistant Commissioner of Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231 on August 27, 1996 Duane Alexander Vick Duane Alexander Vick

PETITION AND FEE FOR THREE MONTH EXTENSION OF TIME
(37 CFR 1.136(a))

Assistant Commissioner of Patents
Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

Applicant petitions the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks to extend the time for response to the Notice of Appeal dated 3/27/96 for 3 month(s) from 5/27/96 to 8/27/96. The extended time for response does not exceed the statutory period.

Please charge Deposit Account No. 07-0630 in the amount of $ 900.00 to cover the cost of the extension. Any deficiency or overpayment should be charged or credited to this deposit account. A duplicate of this sheet is enclosed.

Respectfully submitted,
GENENTECH, INC.

Date: August 27, 1996

By: _____
Wendy M. Lee
Reg. No. P-40,378

460 Pt. San Bruno Blvd.
So. San Francisco, CA 94080-4990
Phone: (415) 225-1994
Fax: (415) 952-9881

AG70175 09712/96 08146206 07-0630 070 117 900.00CH

#26

FAX TRANSMISSION

GENENTECH, INC.
460 PT. SAN BRUNO BLVD.
SOUTH SAN FRANCISCO, CA 94080-4990
415-225-1994
FAX: 415-952-9881

OFFICIAL

26

To:	**Examiner Chris Eisenschenk** **Group 1816** Tel: (703) 308-0452 U.S. Patent and Trademark Office Washington, D.C. 20231	**Date:**	December 3, 1996
Fax #:	703-308-4242	**Pages:**	9 , including this cover sheet.
From:	Wendy M. Lee		
Subject:	U.S. Serial No. 08/146,206 Our Docket No. P0709P1		

COMMENTS:

PLEASE DELIVER THESE DOCUMENTS DIRECTLY TO EXAMINER EISENSCHENK.

DEC 03 1996

12/03/1996